2009 Audi A4 Cabriolet

Owner's Manual



Introduction

Thank you for choosing an Audi A4 Cabriolet - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi A4 Cabriolet incorporates the newest technology as well as numerous features designed for your comfort, convenience and safety. We recommend you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you can quickly become acquainted with your Audi.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we also give you many useful tips and information concerning your safety and that of your passengers, how to care for your vehicle and maintain your vehicle's value.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi A4 Cabriolet and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

Table of contents

Vehicle literature 5

About this Owner's Manual 6



Controls and equipment 9

Instruments and controls 11
- General illustration 11

Instruments and warning/indicator lights 12
- Instruments 12
- Warning/indicator lights 18

Driver information display 24
- Introduction 24
- On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD) 27
- Auto-Check Control 28
- Speed warning system 35
- Trip computer 37
- Menu display 39
- Tire pressure monitoring system .. 41

Opening and closing 47
- Keys 47
- Power locking system 50
- Keyless entry remote control 51
- Doors, power locks 53
- Rear lid 55
- Anti-theft alarm system 57
- Power windows 59

Power top 61
- Normal operation 61
- Wind deflector 66
- Operate the power top manually . 68

Clear vision 76
- Lights 76
- Interior lights 84
- Vision 84
- Wiper and washer system 85
- Mirrors 88
- Digital compass 90

Seats and storage 92
- General recommendations 92
- Manual seats 93
- Power seats 96
- Center armrest 100
- Rear seats 101
- Seat memory 101
- Luggage compartment 103
- Cupholder 104
- Ashtrays 104
- Cigarette lighter/socket 105
- Storage 107

Warm and cold 110
- Climate controls 110
- Electrically heated front seats ... 116
- Electrically heated rear seats 117

On the road 118
- Steering 118
- Ignition lock and ignition switch . 119
- Starting and stopping the engine 120
- Parking brake 121
- Acoustic park assist 122
- Cruise control 123

Transmission 126
- tiptronic® (6-speed automatic transmission) 126
- multitronic® 131

HomeLink® 139
- Universal remote control 139



Safety first 145

Driving Safely 146
- General notes 146
- Proper occupant seating positions 148
- Driver and passenger side footwell 152
- Pedal area 152
- Stowing luggage 153
- Reporting Safety Defects 155
- Automatic rollover protection system 156

Safety belts 159
- General notes 159
- Why safety belts? 160
- Safety belts 163
- Safety belt pretensioners 166

Airbag system 168
Important things to know 168
Front airbags 172
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 179
Knee airbags 184
Side airbags 187
Child Safety 190
Important things to know 190
Child safety seats 195
Installing a child safety seat 200
Additional Information 203
Lower anchorages and tether for children (LATCH) 205



Vehicle operation 211

Intelligent technology 212
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules 212
Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) 212
Braking 215
Servotronic® - advanced power steering system 217
Driving with your quattro® 218
Driving and environment 219
The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards 219
Catalytic converter 220
Avoid damaging the vehicle 221
Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution 221
Trailer towing 224
Driving with a trailer 224
Trailer towing tips 226



Vehicle care 229

Cleaning and protection 230
General information 230
Care of exterior 230
Care of interior 238
Fuel supply and filling your fuel tank 244
Gasoline 244
Fuel tank 245
Checking and filling 249
Engine hood 249
Engine compartment 251
Engine oil 252
Engine cooling system 257
Brake fluid 260
Battery 261
Windshield/headlight washer reservoir 266
Tires and wheels 267
Tires 267



Do-it-yourself service ... 289

What do I do now? 290
Trunk escape handle 290
Jack, tools and spare wheel 290
Wheel change 293
Fuses and bulbs 300
Fuses 300
Bulbs 302
Emergency situations 304
General 304
Starting by pushing or towing 304
Starting with jumper cables 304
Use of jumper cables 305
Emergency towing with commercial tow truck 306
Lifting vehicle 308



Technical data 311

General information 312
Explanation of technical data 312
Vehicle identification 312
Weights 313
Dimensions 313

Data 314
200 hp, 2.0 liter 4-cyl. turbo engine 314
255 hp, 3.2 liter 6-cyl. engine 315
Consumer Information 316
Warranty coverages 316
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 316
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 316
Maintenance 316
Additional accessories, modifications and parts replacement 318
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems 320



Alphabetical index 323

Vehicle literature

In addition to this Owner's Manual, your Audi comes with a Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Moreover, depending on the model and the equipment, there may be additional instruction booklets delivered with your vehicle (for example, Operating Instructions for your Sound System, Navigation System etc.).

If you are missing one of these publications, or if you believe that the information is not complete, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

The Warranty & Maintenance booklet

explains how you can keep your Audi in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly and contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Audi. Always have the booklet with you when you take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer for service. Your Audi Service Adviser will record each scheduled service and can answer any questions you may have regarding how to maintain your vehicle.

In Canada,

the vehicle literature is also available in French. To obtain a copy, contact your dealer or write to:

Au Canada, on peut se procurer un exemplaire en français de ce document auprès du concessionnaire ou de:

Volkswagen Canada, Inc.
Client Assistance
Assistance a la Clientele
777 Bayly Street, West,
Ajax, Ontario L1S 7G7

If you sell your Audi

all literature should be left in the vehicle to make the Warranty terms as well as all operating, safety and maintenance information available to the next owner.

If you change your address or if you bought this Audi used

be sure to send in a "Notice of Address Change" / "Notice of Used Car Purchase" post card. This card can be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet or obtained from your authorized Audi dealer.

It is in your own interest that we are able to contact you should the need arise. ■

About this Owner's Manual

This owner's manual contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for the use of your vehicle.

Make sure that this owner's manual is always located in the vehicle. This is especially important if you allow other people to drive the vehicle, or if you sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the editorial deadline date. Some of the equipment described here will only be available at a later date, or only in specific markets.

Some sections in this owner's manual do not apply to all vehicles. In that case, the **range of applicability** is given at the beginning of the section, e. g. “Applies to vehicles: with Audi Parking System”. In addition, optional equipment is indicated by an asterisk “*”.

The details in the **illustrations** may be different from those in your vehicle, and are intended to be viewed as a basic guide.

You will find a **table of contents** at the beginning of this book, which displays all topics described in this manual in order of appearance. You will find an alphabetical **index** at the end of this book.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “back”, are relative to the direction of travel.

* optional equipment

▶ This section continues on the next page.

■ Indicates the **end of a section**.

® Registered trademarks are identified with a ®. If this symbol is missing, it is no guarantee that the terms can be used freely.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a “WARNING!” within a section. For indication with a page number, the corresponding “WARNING!” can be found outside of the section.

⚠ WARNING

Text with this symbol contains important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol draws your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features. ■





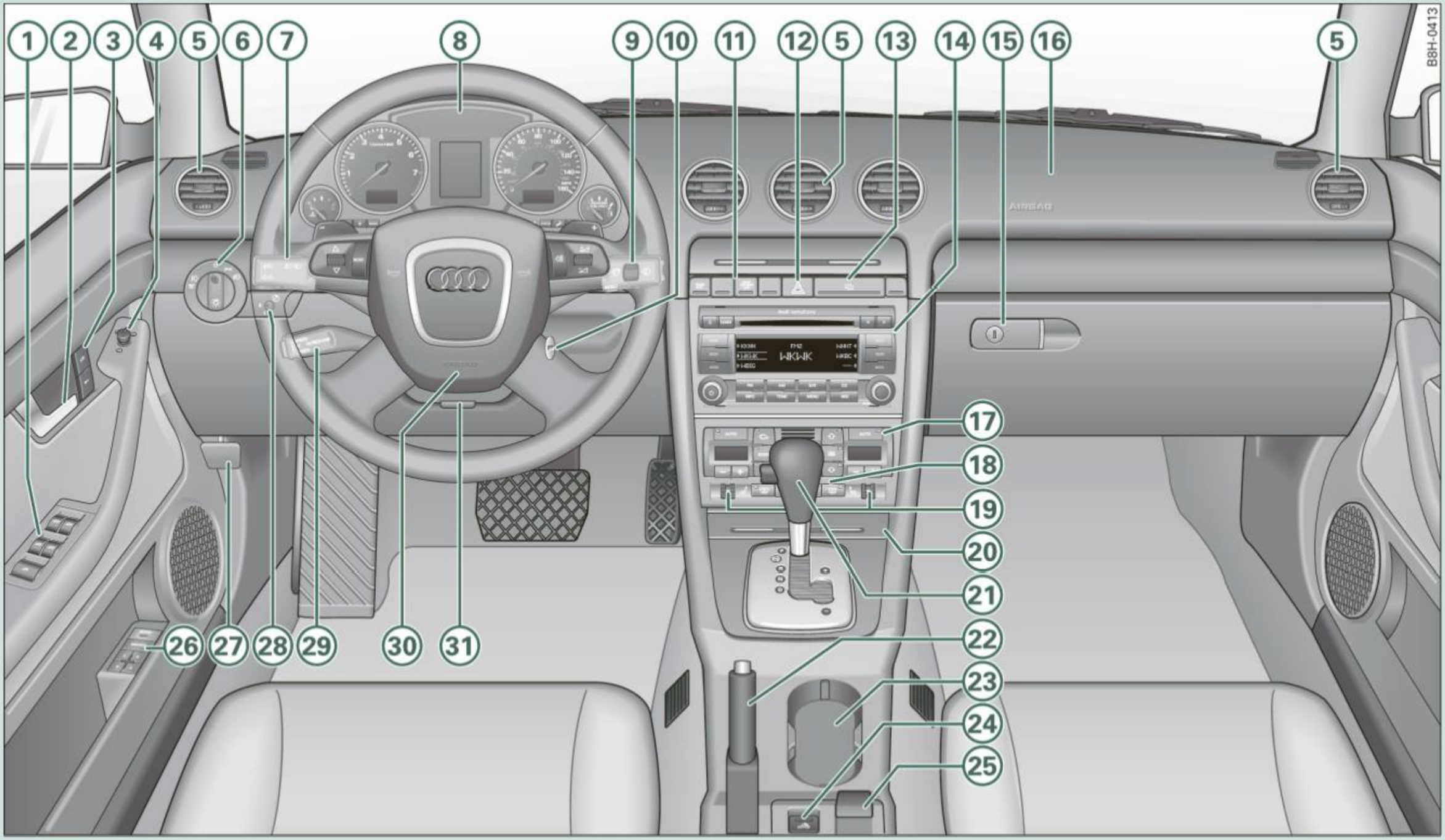


Fig. 1 Some of the equipment or features shown in the general illustration may be standard equipment on your vehicle or may be optional equipment depending on your model. Always ask your authorized Audi dealer if you have a question about your vehicle.

Instructions and controls

General illustration

① Power window switches 59
② Door handle
③ Power locking switch 54
④ Adjuster control for outside mirrors 89
⑤ Air outlets 115
⑥ Light switch 76
⑦ Turn signal and high beam 83
⑧ Instrument cluster 12
⑨ Switches for
– Windshield wiper/washer 85
– Driver information display 36, 37
– Operation trip computer 38
– Adjusting and storing the tire pressure* 43
⑩ Steering lock/ignition/starter switch 119
⑪ Depending on options:
– Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) switch 212
– Warning light for deactivated front passenger airbag
⑫ Emergency flasher 82
⑬ Storage compartment for small objects 108
⑭ Sound System
⑮ Glove compartment (lockable) 107
⑯ Front passenger airbag 172
⑰ Climate controls 111
⑱ Rear window defogger switch 116
⑲ Switch for seat heating 116
⑳ Ashtray 104
㉑ Selector lever (automatic transmission) 131
㉒ Parking brake lever 121
㉓ Cupholder 104
㉔ Power top switch 61
㉕ Power outlet 106
㉖ Memory buttons (driver seat) 101
㉗ Release lever for the engine hood 249
㉘ Coming home/leaving home activation 80
㉙ Cruise control 123
㉚ Steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver airbag 172
㉛ Adjustable steering column 118

Tips

A separate brochure is provided for your factory-installed audio system and/or the Audi Navigation System. ■

Instruments and warning/indicator lights

Instruments

Instrument cluster and controls

The instrument cluster is your central source of information.

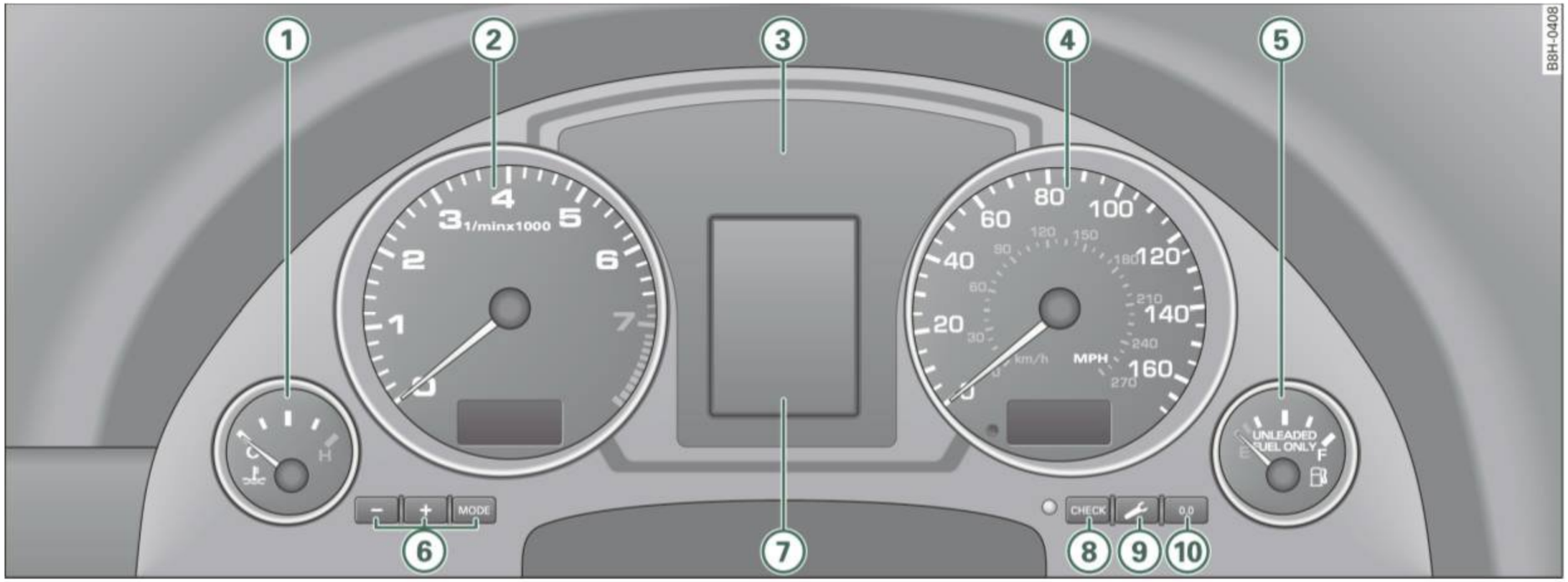


Fig. 2 Overview of the instrument cluster

(1) Coolant temperature gauge 13
(2) Tachometer with time and date display 13, 14
(3) Warning/indicator lights 18
(4) Speedometer with odometer 15
(5) Fuel gauge 16
(6) Buttons to set the:
– Clock and date display 14
– Instrument cluster illumination 15
(7) Driver information system 24
(8) CHECK system button 16
(9) Reset button for Service indicator 17
(10) Reset button for trip odometer ..... 18 ▶

The instrument cluster illuminates whenever you switch on the ignition with the **vehicle headlights off**. The instrument cluster illumination dims automatically as the daylight begins to fade away. It goes out completely when the outside light is very dim. The reason for this is to remind you to turn on the headlights when the light conditions become poor. ■

Engine coolant temperature gauge

The engine coolant gauge ⇒ *page 12,* fig. 2 (1) only works when the ignition is on. To prevent damage to your engine, please note the following important points:

Engine cold

As long as the needle remains at the left end of the gauge, the engine still has not reached its operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, heavy engine loads and heavy throttle.

Normal temperature

When the engine has reached its operating temperature, the needle will move into the middle of the gauge and remain there. If the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures, the needle may turn further to the right. This is no cause for concern as long as the warning light in the instrument cluster does not illuminate.

When the warning light starts to flash, this can mean one of two things: either the coolant *temperature* is too high, or the coolant *level* is too low ⇒ *page 31*.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always observe the warning in ⇒ *page 242,* "Engine compartment" before opening the engine hood and checking the engine coolant level.**
- **Never open the engine hood if you see or hear steam, or if you see engine coolant dripping from the engine compartment. You could burn yourself. Let the engine cool off first so that you cannot hear or see any steam or engine coolant.**

Note

- Mounting additional lights or accessories in front of the air inlets reduces the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures or high engine load, the engine could overheat.
- The front spoiler has been designed to properly distribute the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged, this could reduce the cooling effect and the engine could then overheat. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for assistance. ■

Tachometer (engine rev counter)

The tachometer indicates the engine RPM (revolutions per minutes).

The tachometer (2) ⇒ *page 12,* fig. 2 is the left one of the two large clock-type displays.

The engine turns at a speed *1,000 times* the single digit in the display, e.g. if the needle points at the "2", the engine turns at 2,000 RPM.

If the engine RPMs drop below 1,500, you should downshift to the next lower gear. The red area at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine RPMs after the break-in period. Before reaching this area, you should either shift into the next higher gear or ease your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note

The tachometer needle should not move into the red range. If it does, then only for a very short period of time. You could damage your engine by driving at high RPM! ▶

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early saves fuels and reduces engine noise. ■

Digital clock with date display

Your vehicle is equipped with either a quartz clock or a digital clock.



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster with the digital clock

Setting the hour

– Press the "MODE" button; the hour display starts to flash.

– Press the "+" button to turn the hour forward.

– Press the "-" button to turn the hour back.

Setting the minute

– Press the "MODE" button repeatedly until the minute display starts to flash.

– Press the "+" button to turn the minutes forward.

– Press the "-" button to turn the minutes back.

Setting the date (day, month and year)

– Press the "MODE" button often until the date display starts to flash.

– Press the "+" button or the "-" button to set the day.

– Press the "MODE" button again; the month display starts to flash.

– Press the "+" or the "-" button to set the month.

– Press the "MODE" button again; the year display starts to flash.

– Press the "+" or "-" button to set the year.

Switching off the date display

– Press the "MODE" button repeatedly until the complete date display starts to flash.

– Press the "-" button; the date display switches off.

Switching on the date display

– Press the "MODE" button repeatedly until the complete date display starts to flash.

– Press the "+" button; the date display will reappear.

When the date display stops flashing, this means the time and date have been successfully stored.

When the ignition is switched off, the odometer reading and the digital clock with date display can be switched on for a few seconds by pressing the CHECK button ⇒ *page 12,* fig. 2 (8). ■

Instrument cluster illumination

It is possible to adjust the instrument cluster illumination.



Fig. 4 Instrument cluster illumination

– Press the “+” button to increase the brightness.

– Press the “-” button to dim the brightness.

A light sensor in the instrument cluster controls the illumination for the instrument cluster, the center console and the displays.

The illumination for the instrument cluster lights up whenever you switch on the ignition with the **vehicle headlights off**. As the daylight fades, the instrument cluster illumination likewise dims automatically and will go out completely when the outside light is very low. This feature is meant to remind you to switch on the headlights when the outside light conditions become poor. ■

Speedometer with odometer

The speedometer shows you the vehicle speed, and the odometer shows you how many miles (kilometers) you have driven.



Fig. 5 Odometer display inside speedometer

The odometer and trip odometer are located inside the speedometer.

- USA models – Miles
- Canada models – Kilometers

Lower odometer

The lower odometer shows the total number of miles (kilometers) driven.

Upper odometer (trip odometer)

The upper odometer shows the total number of miles (kilometers) driven since you last reset the odometer to zero. You can use this odometer when you want to keep track of how many miles (kilometers) you have driven for a single trip or errand. The last digit indicates 1/10 of a mile (100 meters). You can set the trip odometer back to zero by pressing the reset button ⇒ fig. 5. ▶

Malfunction message

If there is a malfunction somewhere in the instrument cluster, **dEF** will appear in the trip odometer and will stay on. Contact your authorized Audi dealer to have the problem corrected.

Immobilizer

Each time you switch on the ignition, the data stored in the vehicle key are electronically scanned to verify that key data and vehicle data match. If a non-coded or a defective vehicle key is used, the word **SAFE** will appear and remain lit in the upper (trip) odometer display. If this happens, the vehicle cannot be started ⇒ *page 49*. ■

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge works only when the ignition is on.

When the needle reaches the red area, the warning light in the instrument cluster will illuminate ⇒ *page 33*. This means you have approximately 2.4 gallons (9 liters) of fuel left in the tank. **Time to refuel!**

The total tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in ⇒ *page 314*.

Note

Never run the tank completely dry! An irregular supply of fuel can cause engine misfiring and fuel could enter into the exhaust system. The catalytic converter could then overheat and be damaged. ■

CHECK button

You can perform different functions with this button.



Fig. 6 CHECK button in the instrument cluster

The CHECK button performs the following functions:

Switching on the clock and odometer

With the ignition is switched off, the odometer and digital clock with date display can be switched on for a few seconds by pressing the CHECK button ⇒ fig. 6.

Starting the Auto-Check sequence

The Auto-Check system ⇒ *page 28* consistently monitors certain individual functions and components of the vehicle when the ignition is turned on and when the vehicle is moving.

With the ignition switched on, you can start the " Auto-Check sequence" by pressing the CHECK button. You can perform an Auto-Check sequence both when the vehicle is at a standstill and the ignition is switched on or when the vehicle is moving not faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Calling up the driver information

When a first priority symbol starts to flash ⇒ *page 28* or when a defective light bulb ⇒ *page 35*, has been detected, you can press the CHECK button to display the driver information. For example:

Switch off engine and check oil level ▶

The information disappears after approximately 5 seconds.

Setting the speed warning

By pressing the CHECK button you can set speed warning 1 ⇒ *page 36* **while the vehicle is moving.**

Speed warning 2* ⇒ *page 36* can only be set with the **ignition switched off.** ■

Service interval display

The service interval display reminds you when your next service is due.

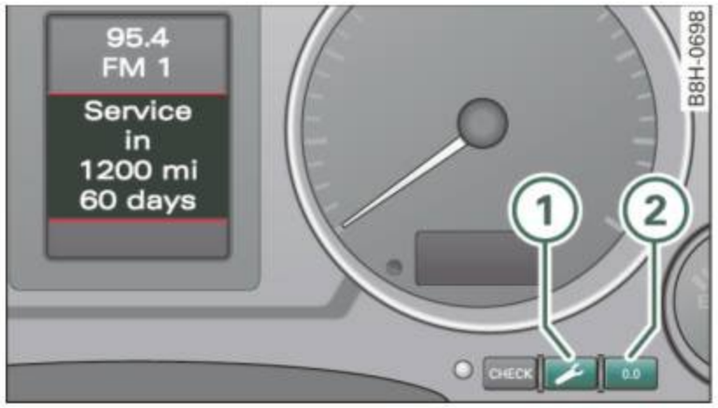


Fig. 7 Service interval display in the instrument cluster

Display remaining distance

With the ignition on, briefly push button (1) to display the distance remaining (miles/kilometers) until the next service is due. You can recall the service countdown with the engine in idle or while driving at a slow speed up to 3 mph (5 km/h). The remaining distance will be updated every 300 miles (500 km):

On a new vehicle, or immediately after a service has been performed, the following message will be displayed:

Service in ---- mi (km) --- days

For the the first 300 miles (500 km) of driving after a service, the display will keep showing dashes. This is NOT *a malfunction. Rather, the system needs the mileage to (re-)adjust to your driving style. Only then can it start generating and updating figures for the distance and days until the next scheduled service.*

Service reminder

As soon as less than 1,200 miles (2,000 kilometers) of driving are left before the next due service, the following message will be displayed when you switch on the ignition:

Service in 1,200 mi (2,000 km) --- days

After about five seconds the display switches back. Each time you switch on the ignition, the distance will be updated until the next service date is reached.

Service due

If service is due immediately, **Service!** will appear in the display immediately after switching on the ignition. The display switches back after about five seconds.

Resetting the display

Your authorized Audi dealer will reset the display after performing the scheduled service. If the service is not performed by an authorized Audi dealer, the display must then be reset as follows:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Press and hold the Service button (1) ⇒ fig. 7, then switch on the ignition. One of the following messages appears in the display: **Service in ---- miles** or **Service!**.
- Press the reset button (2) until either of the the following messages appears in the display: **Service in ---- miles --- days** or **Service!**

After about five seconds the display switches back.

Tips

- Do not reset the display between service intervals. Doing so will result in an incorrect display. ▶

- The service display information will remain intact even if the battery is disconnected.
- If a priority 1 malfunction is detected (red symbol), you cannot display the distance remaining. ■

Reset button

The "0.0" button ⇒ *page 17,* fig. 7 (2) performs the following functions:

Resetting the trip odometer

The upper odometer (trip odometer) ⇒ *page 15* can be reset back to zero by pressing the reset button.

Resetting the service interval

The service interval display ⇒ *page 17* can be reset by pressing the reset button (first select the "reset" mode in the service indicator display). ■

Warning/indicator lights

Overview

The warning/indicator lights indicate different functions or a possible malfunction.

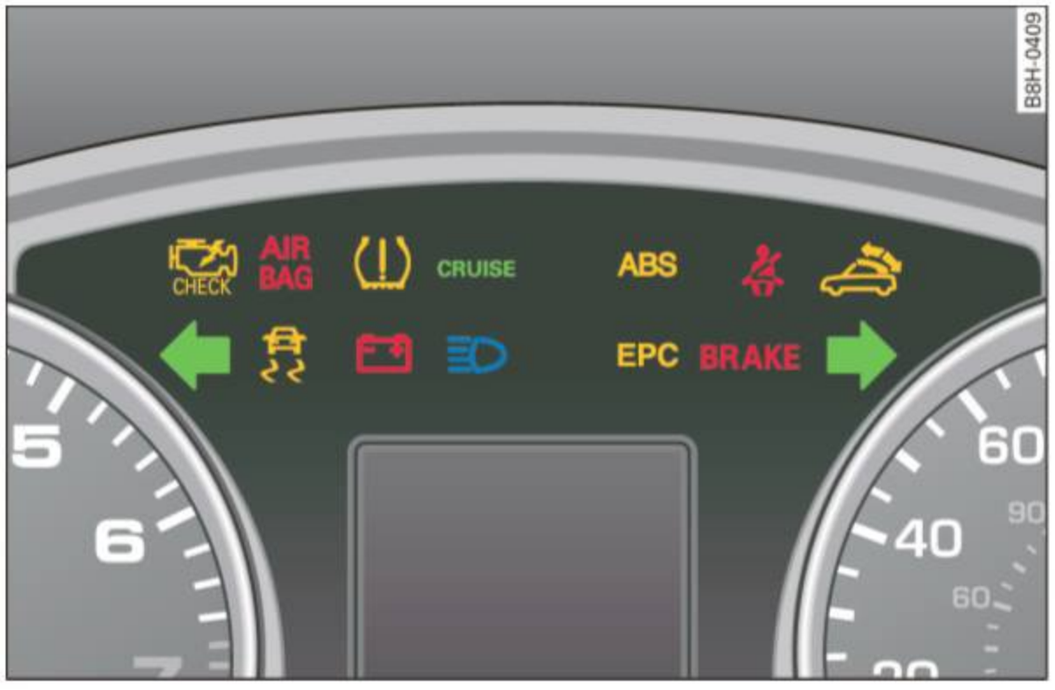


Fig. 8 Instrument cluster: complete set of warning/indicator symbols (USA-models)

Your vehicle is equipped with several important warning and indicator lights to help you monitor the continued reliable operation of your vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

CHECK	**USA models:** Malfunction Indicator lamp (MIL)	⇒ *page 19*
	Canada models: Malfunction Indictor Lamp (MIL)	⇒ *page 19*
AIR BAG	Airbag system	⇒ *page 20*

	Tire pressure monitoring system*	⇒ *page 20*
CRUISE	**USA models:** Cruise control activated	⇒ *page 20*
	Canada models: Cruise control activated	⇒ *page 20*
ABS	**USA models:** Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	⇒ *page 20*
	Canada models: Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	⇒ *page 20*
	Safety belt	⇒ *page 21*
	Power top operation	⇒ *page 21*
	Left turn signal	⇒ *page 21*
	Electronic stabilization program (ESP)	⇒ *page 22*
	Generator	⇒ *page 22*
	High beam	⇒ *page 22*
EPC	Electronic power control	⇒ *page 22*
BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake system, parking brake set	⇒ *page 23*
	Canada models: Brake system, parking brake set	⇒ *page 23*
	Right turn signal	⇒ *page 21*

WARNING

- **Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.**
- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher ⇒ *page 82*.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood ⇒ *page 242*, "Engine compartment".**

Tips

Many functions are monitored by the Auto-Check system ⇒ *page 28*. Malfunctions or faults will be identified either with a red symbol (priority 1 – Danger!) or with a yellow symbol (priority 2 – Warning). ■

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) CHECK (USA models)/ (Canada models)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system. The symbol CHECK lights up when the ignition is turned on and will turn off after the engine has started and has settled at constant idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

The warning light illuminates when there is a malfunction in the engine electronic system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

For more information ⇒ *page 27*. ■

Airbag system AIR BAG

This warning/indicator light monitors the airbag and the tensioner systems.

The AIR BAG warning light illuminates for a few seconds each time you switch on the ignition.

If the AIR BAG warning light does not go out, or if it illuminates while you are driving, or if it starts to flash, then there is a malfunction somewhere in the system. If the light does not illuminate when you switch on the ignition, this also means there is a malfunction.

WARNING

If you have a malfunction in the airbag system, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately. Otherwise the airbag or the belt tensioner may not work properly in an accident. ■

Tire pressure monitoring system - telltale indicator lamp

The warning/indicator light appears in the event of a significant loss of air pressure.

The warning/indicator light illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is turned on as function check and then goes out.

If the symbol appears, pressure is too low in at least one tire.

When the system detects a malfunction, the warning/indicator light will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle starts up as long as the malfunction exists. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

For more information ⇒ *page 43*. ■

Cruise control CRUISE (USA models)/ (Canada models)

The CRUISE warning/indicator light illuminates when the cruise control is activated. ■

Anti-lock brake system ABS (USA models)/ (Canada models)

This warning/indicator light monitors the ABS and the electronic differential lock (EDL).

The ABS warning light will come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light will go out after an automatic check sequence is completed.

There is a malfunction in the ABS when:

- the warning/indicator light does not illuminate when you switch on the ignition.
- the warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds.
- the warning/indicator light illuminates while driving.

Without the electronic assistance of the ABS, the brake system will still respond and brake the car. Have the brake system checked and restored to its full performance by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible. For more information regarding the ABS see ⇒ *page 216*.

Since any malfunction of the ABS also affects the ESP, that system's warning symbol ⇒ page 22 will light up along with the ABS/ (Canada models) *warning light.*

Unspecific malfunction in the brake system

If *both* the brake warning light ⇒ *page 23* and the ABS warning light illuminate when the parking brake is released, the likely cause is a *serious* malfunction in the brake system beyond an inoperative ABS ⇒ ⚠.

If an unspecific defect in the brake system is indicated, the entire brake system is likely to be affected and you *must* expect degraded brake response and performance.

Since any malfunction of the ABS *also effects the* ESP*, that system's warning symbol* ⇒ *page 22 will light up along with the* ABS/ (Canada models) *warning light.*

Malfunction in the electronic differential lock (EDL)

The two systems EDL and ABS interact. For this reason the ABS warning light/ (Canada models) will come on to indicate a malfunction in the EDL system ⇒ *page 213*. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

- **If the ABS/ (Canada models) warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the brakes operating without ABS support. You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your Audi dealer as soon as possible.**
- ***USA models:* If both the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on at the same time, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.**
- ***Canada models:* If both the brake warning light and the ABS warning light come on at the same time, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application. ■**

Power top

The warning/indicator light monitors the power top function.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when you switch on the ignition for about 2 seconds as a check and then goes out. The warning/indicator light has the following functions:

- The light illuminates when the power top opens or closes.
- The light also illuminates if one of the requirements for power top operation is not met when the switch is operated. In this case the instrument cluster display also shows a corresponding message ⇒ *page 64*, "Messages in the instrument cluster display".
- The light illuminates when the power top is opened or closed *incompletely*. ■

Safety belts

This warning/indicator light reminds you to put on your safety belt.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on to remind the driver and (on USA models only) any front passenger to put on the safety belt. Additionally, an acoustic warning (gong) will also sound.

For more Information ⇒ *page 159*, "Safety belt warning light ". ■

Turn signals

The indicator light flashes when you use either turn signal.

Whenever you use the left or the right turn signal, the indicator light flashes. When you use the emergency flasher, both indicator lights flash. ▶

If one of the turn signal light bulbs burn out, the turn signal will flash twice as fast as normal. ■

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)

The warning/indicator light monitors the electronic stabilization program.

The warning/indicator light has the following functions:

- it flashes while you are driving, when the ESP is working.
- it illuminates when you switch on the ignition for approximately 2 seconds as a function check.
- it illuminates when there is a malfunction in the ESP.
- it illuminates after the battery has been disconnected.
- it illuminates continuously when the ESP is switched off.
- it illuminates if there is a malfunction in the ABS, since the ESP is part of the ABS system.

If the ESP warning/indicator light illuminates and stays on after you have started the engine, this may mean that the control system has temporarily switched off the ESP. If this is case, you can reactivate the ESP by switching the ignition off and then on again. The warning/indicator light should go out to show that the system is fully functional again.

If the battery terminals were disconnected and re-connected, the vehicle was jump started or the battery is very weak, the ESP sensor system goes through a learning process for the first few yards. During this time, the indicator light illuminates. It goes out as soon as the learning process is complete.

For more information about the ESP ⇒ *page 22*. ■

Generator

This warning/indicator light detects a malfunction in the generator or in the vehicle's electrical system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when you switch on the ignition and must go out after the engine has started.

If the warning/indicator light illuminates while you are driving, you should contact your authorized Audi dealer. Since the vehicle battery is discharging, you should switch off any unnecessary electrical consumers (for example, the air conditioner).

Note

If the warning/indicator light (malfunction in the engine cooling system) in the instrument cluster should illuminate ⇒ *page 31*, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine. The coolant pump is not working - this can cause engine damage! ■

High beam

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the high beams are on or when you use the headlight flasher. For more information about using the high beams, see ⇒ *page 83*. ■

Electronic power control EPC

This warning/indicator light monitors the electronic power control.

The EPC warning/indicator light (Electronic Power Control) illuminates when you switch on the ignition as a function check. ▶

Tips

If this warning/indicator light illuminates while you are driving, then there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. ■

Brake system BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models)

This warning/indicator light illuminates when the brake fluid level is too low or when there is a malfunction in the ABS, or when the parking brake is set.

The light illuminates when the ignition is turned on. It goes out after the engine has been started and the parking brake is fully released. This indicates that the brake warning light is functioning properly.

If the brake warning light does not light up when the engine is cranking or the parking brake is applied, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system. In this case, contact your Audi dealer.

(USA models): If the warning light BRAKE and the warning light illuminate together, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected ⇒ *page 33*.

When the light comes on, an audible warning signal is also given.

Parking brake set

The BRAKE or (Canada) warning/indicator light illuminates when the parking brake is set ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

• *USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.

• *Canada models:* If the brake warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.

• If the brake warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds and the parking brake released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility and have the brake system inspected.

• Always keep in mind that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Do not rely on strained brakes to respond with maximum stopping power in critical situations. You must allow for increased braking distances. The extra distance used up by fading brakes could lead to an accident. ■

Driver information display

Introduction

General notes

The driver information display inside the instrument cluster provides you, the driver, with much useful information.



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: center display

The driver information system updates important information in the center display in clear view of the driver. In an easy to understand format, the display tells you how your vehicle is functioning **at the current moment**. For example, the display can tell you how many miles (kilometres) you can still drive until it is time to bring your vehicle to your authorized Audi dealer for a scheduled Maintenance Service. This feature helps preventing costly repairs. It is just one of many different items of information available for recall. The display also gives you a "status report" whenever the **sound and navigation** systems are being used. The operation of Audi Navigation System* is described in a separate booklet.

The Driver Information System provides the following functions:

Sound system display	⇒ *page 25*
Outside air temperature	⇒ *page 25*
Door open indicator	⇒ *page 26*
Selector lever position Tiptronic®	⇒ *page 127*
Selector lever position multitronic™	⇒ *page 133*
Speed limiter	⇒ *page 34*
Auto Check system	⇒ *page 28*
Driver information	⇒ *page 29*
Messages: power top operation	⇒ *page 64*
Parking brake warning	⇒ *page 30*
Service interval display	⇒ *page 17*
Headlight/tail light malfunction	⇒ *page 35*
On-board computer	⇒ *page 37*

Tips

- If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the various display contents will appear only after you have moved the selector lever into **R**, **D** or **S**.
- In the event of a malfuction either a red or yellow icon appears in the display. Red symbols indicate **Danger** ⇒ *page 30*. Yellow symbols indicate a **Warning** ⇒ *page 32*. ■

Sound system display



Fig. 10 Display: sound system

If priority 1 or priority 2 faults are not shown by the Auto Check Control, the name of the radio station you are tuned to or the frequency and the reception range are shown in the upper area of the display.

When the CD is in use, the title of the track being played is shown. The number of the CD (CD1 to CD6) currently being played is also shown. ■

Outside temperature display



Fig. 11 Display: outside temperature

The outside temperature will be displayed when you switch on the ignition ⇒ fig. 11. If your vehicle has an Automatic transmission, the outside temperature will appear in the display only after you have moved the selector lever into a gear (for example, when you shift into "**D**").

The snowflake symbol also appears when the outside temperature is between 41 °F (+5 °C) and 23 °F (-5 °C). This is to warn you, the driver, to be extra cautious because the road surfaces may be **icy**. If the vehicle is at a standstill, or if you are driving at a very low speed, the temperature shown in the display might be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature. This is caused by the heat being radiated from the engine.

Remember, if your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning and you change the display from °F (Fahrenheit) to °C (Centigrade), then the outside temperature will automatically be displayed in °C (Centigrade) ⇒ *page 113*.

WARNING

- **Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display to determine if a road surface is icy or not. Keep in mind that road surfaces, especially bridges and overpasses, could be ice covered and slippery even at an outside temperature above 41 °F (+5 °C).**
- **Always remember, even if the "snowflake" symbol (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.**
- **Always reduce your speed and drive with special care in cold weather conditions when the chance of encountering icy road surfaces increases.**

Tips

When using the navigation system feature "Destination", the outside temperature is also displayed. ■

Miles (kilometers) to empty

The miles (kilometers) to empty indication is a valuable aid to schedule the refueling stops on a trip.



Fig. 12 Display: miles (kilometers) to empty

This feature shows you the *estimated* range in miles (km) ⇒ fig. 12 until the tank runs dry. This feature calculates how far you could drive with the amount of fuel left in your fuel tank while driving under the current driving conditions. The remaining distance is recalculated every 6 miles (10 km).

While calculating the miles (km) to empty, the system also calculates your fuel consumption over the last 18 miles (30 km). Remember: - the more economically you drive, the further you can go. ■

Open door or trunk lid warning



Fig. 13 Display: open door or trunk warning

With the ignition switched on, the open-door-or-lid warning illuminates when at least *one* door, or the engine hood or the trunk lid is not closed. The symbol also shows you *which* door(s) or lid is not closed. The illustration shows that both the driver's and the right rear door are not closed ⇒ fig. 13.

If the engine hood or trunk lid are not closed, the display will flash. As soon as all the doors and lids are properly closed, the warning goes out.

You can switch off the open-door-or-lid warning display by briefly pressing the On Board computer control buttons ⇒ *page 38*. The open door or trunk warning will, however, illuminate again as soon as there is a change in the position of the doors, engine hood or trunk lid. ■

Fuel filler cap not closed properly



Fig. 14 Center display: fuel filler cap open

A message **CLOSE FUEL TANK CAP !** in the driver information display will come on if the fuel filler cap is not properly closed. If the message comes on, please perform the following steps upon reaching your next destination.

With the ignition turned off, open the fuel filler flap and remove the fuel cap. Next, reinstall the fuel cap being sure to twist the fuel filler cap clockwise until you hear a definite "click." Press the fuel filler flap closed until it locks into place (and is flush with the car body).

After switching on the ignition, the message may remain lit even though the fuel filler cap is properly closed. This is normal and there is no reason to take your vehicle for service.

If, however, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) CHECK comes on, always drive to your nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked.

For more information ⇒ *page 246,* “Refuelling”. ■

On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD)

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) CHECK (USA models)/ (Canada models)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) CHECK in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 18,* fig. 8 is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

If the light does not go out after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light starts flashing, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇒ *page 28,* “Electronic speed limiter”.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL lamp to illuminate ⇒ *page 246.* ■

On-Board Diagnostics

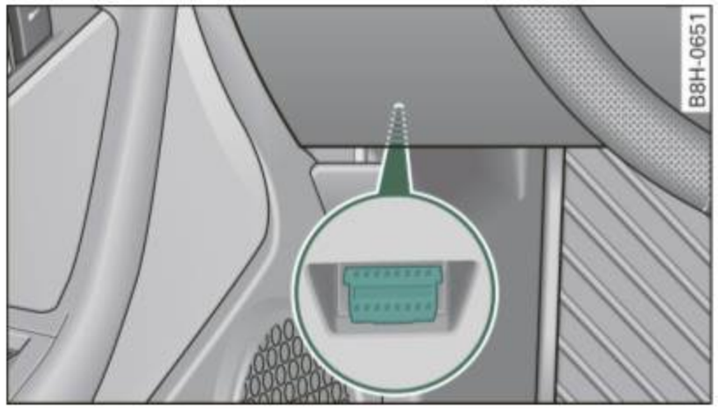


Fig. 15 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each controlled component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL lamp may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refuelling, pull off the road and stop the vehicle, then check that the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇒ *page 246*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the engine hood release lever ⇒ fig. 15.

Your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair. ■

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇒ *page 279*, "New tires and replacing tires and wheels".

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle roadspeed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed. ■

Auto-Check Control

Introduction

The Auto-Check control monitors the function of certain vehicle features and components. It simply makes sure these features and components are working properly. The Auto-Check control works as long as the ignition is on, as well as whenever the vehicle is driven.

If a component is malfunctioning or if the need for an urgent repair has been detected, this will appear in the instrument cluster display. You will also hear an audible warning tone. The displays are color coded in either red or yellow depending on their level of priority. ▶

A red symbol means **Danger**, a yellow symbol indicates **Warning**. In certain situations, information message for the driver appear in addition to the red and yellow symbols.

Function test: automatic transmission

The Auto-Check Control will automatically perform a test each time you switch on the ignition. With the selector lever in **P** or **N**, the following message appears in the display:

When stationary apply footbrake while selecting gear.

When you a select a different gear (for example: **R**, **D**, etc.), the message will disappear and the Auto-Check function is displayed.

If there is a malfunction, then the malfunction message will appear about 15 seconds after the you start the vehicle. At the same time you will hear a warning tone. ■

Driver information messages

Driver information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display in addition to the red and yellow symbols.



Fig. 16 Instrument cluster: CHECK button

For example, if the transmission selector lever is not in the P position when the engine is turned off, the following message appears:

Please move selector lever to position P

The ignition key can only be removed with the selector in this position. This and other messages are brought up if a function cannot be carried out.

Driver messages and red symbols

If a red symbol appears in the display, a driver message can be shown by pressing the CHECK button.

For example, the symbol for a problem with engine oil pressure appears in the display. If you then press the CHECK button, the following driver message appears in the display:

Switch off engine and check oil level

The driver message in the display goes out after about 5 seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the CHECK button.

Driver messages and yellow symbols

If a yellow symbol appears in the display, a driver message is also displayed automatically.

For example, the symbol appears in the display, indicating low windshield washer fluid level. The following message also appears:

Please top up washer fluid

The driver message disappears after a few seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the CHECK button.

Tips

- The following two messages, **Handbrake is applied** and **When stationary apply footbrake while selecting gear**, cannot be switched on again. These messages will remain in the display until you release the parking brake or until you move the selector lever into a gear.
- When the safeguard function of the power top is activated, or if there is a malfunction, a message will appear in the display ⇒ *page 64*. ■

Parking brake warning

– Release the parking brake.

If you should drive off with the parking brake still engaged, a warning tone will sound to remind you to release the parking brake. Also, the following message will appear in the display:

Handbrake is applied

The parking brake warning is activated when you drive longer than 3 seconds and faster than 3 mph (5 km/h). ■

Red symbols

A red symbol means DANGER.



Fig. 17 Display: engine coolant level warning (priority 1)

– Pull of the road and stop the vehicle.

– Turn off the engine.

– Check the malfunctioning system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

The red symbols mean:

BRAKE	**USA models:** Malfunction in the brake system	⇒ *page 30*
(!)	**Canada models:** Malfunction in the brake system	⇒ *page 30*
COOLANT	Engine coolant level too low/ engine coolant temperature too high	⇒ *page 31*
OIL PRESSURE	Engine oil pressure too low	⇒ *page 32*

Red symbols indicate a priority 1 malfunction - Danger!

When a red symbol appears, a warning tone will sound consecutively *three* times. The symbol continues to flash until the malfunction has been repaired. If there are *more than one* priority 1 malfunctions, the symbols appear one after the other for about two seconds. ■

Brake system malfunction BRAKE (USA models)/ (!) (Canada models)

A malfunction in the brake system must be repaired as soon as possible.

When BRAKE/ (!) (Canada models) appears in the display and flashes, this means there is a malfunction in the brake system. In addition to the symbol, one of the following two messages also appears in the display:

Stop vehicle, check brake fluid and hydraulic fluid levels

Warning! Fault in ABS brake system. Contact workshop!

– Pull of the road and stop the vehicle.

– Check the brake fluid level ⇒ *page 260*. ▶

USA models: if there is a malfunction in the ABS system, the ABS warning/indicator light illuminates along with the BRAKE system malfunction warning/indicator light ⇒ ⚠.

Canada models: if there is a malfunction in the ABS system, the (ABS) warning/indicator light illuminates together with the (!) brake system malfunction warning/indicator light ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always observe the warnings in ⇒ *page 242,* "Engine compartment", before opening the engine hood and checking the brake fluid.**
- **Driving with low brake fluid is a safety hazard! Stop the car and get professional assistance.**
- **If the brake system warning/indicator light illuminates together with the ABS warning/indicator light, then the ABS system is malfunctioning. The rear wheels could quickly lock up when you apply the brakes. This could lead to loss of control and your vehicle could slide! Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected. ■**

Engine cooling system malfunction

A malfunction in the engine cooling system must be repaired as soon as possible.

When the symbol in the display flashes, then either the engine coolant *temperature* is too high, or the coolant *level* is too low. In addition to the symbol, the following message also appears in the display:

Switch off engine, check coolant level

– Pull off the road and stop the vehicle.

– Turn off the engine.

– Check coolant level ⇒ *page 258.*

– Add coolant if necessary ⇒ *page 259.*

– Continue driving only after the engine coolant warning/indicator light goes out.

– Contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance if necessary.

If the engine coolant level is correct, then the radiator fan may be the cause of the malfunction.

If the generator warning/indicator light should also illuminate ⇒ *page 22,* then the fan belt may be damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **If your vehicle should break down for mechanical or other reasons, park at a safe distance from moving traffic, turn off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ *page 82,* "Emergency flasher ⚠".**
- **Never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment - you risk being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.**
- **The engine compartment of any vehicle is a dangerous area. Before you perform any work in the engine compartment, turn of the engine and allow it to cool. Follow the warning stickers ⇒ *page 242,* "Engine compartment".**

Note

Do not continue driving if the symbol illuminates. There is a malfunction in the engine cooling system – you could damage your engine. ■

Engine oil pressure malfunction

The red engine oil pressure warning symbol requires immediate service or repair. Driving with a low-oil-pressure indication is likely to inflict severe damage to the engine.

If the symbol appears in the display and blinks, the oil pressure is too low. An additional driver message can also be displayed by pressing the CHECK button:

Switch off engine and check oil level

Immediate actions

– Pull off the road.

– Stop the vehicle.

– Turn off the engine.

– **Check the engine oil level** *with the dipstick ⇒ page 254.*

Dipstick readings checks too low

– Top off oil to the proper level ⇒ *page 255.*

– Make sure that the oil pressure warning symbol appears no longer in the display before you start driving again.

Dipstick reading checks OK

– If the oil pressure warning symbol starts flashing again even though the engine oil level checks OK on the dipstick, **do not continue driving and do not let the engine run in idle.** Instead, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

Tips

• The engine oil pressure symbol is not an indicator for a low engine oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.

• The yellow oil level warning indication requires oil refill or workshop service without delay. Do not wait until the red oil pressure warning starts to flash before you respond to the low oil level warning. By then, your engine may already have suffered serious damage. ■

Yellow symbols

A yellow symbol means WARNING.



Fig. 18 Display: low fuel level warning (priority 2)

Yellow symbols mean:

	Low fuel level	⇒ *page 33*
	Check engine oil level	⇒ *page 33*
	Engine oil sensor malfunction	⇒ *page 33*

	Light/rain* sensor defective	⇒ *page 33*
	Worn brake pads	⇒ *page 33*
	USA models: Speed warning 1	⇒ *page 34*
	Canada models: Speed warning 1	⇒ *page 34*
	Dynamic headlight range control* defective	⇒ *page 34*
	Adaptive Light* defective	⇒ *page 34*
	Windshield washer fluid level low	⇒ *page 34*
	USA models: Speed warning 2	⇒ *page 34*
	Canada models: Speed warning 2	⇒ *page 34*
	Battery voltage too high or too low	⇒ *page 34*
	Defective light bulb	⇒ *page 35*
	Tire pressure monitoring system* Loss of air pressure	⇒ *page 43*
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system* System not available	⇒ *page 46*

Yellow symbols indicate a priority 2 malfunction - Warning!

When a yellow symbol appears, a warning tone will sound *once*. Check the displayed function as soon as possible. If *more than one* priority 2 malfunction is detected, all symbols will appear one after the other for about two seconds. ■

Fuel supply too low

When the symbol illuminates, this means there is about 2 to 2.5 gallons (8 to 10 litres) of fuel left in the fuel tank. Time to refuel! ⇒ *page 245.* ■

Engine oil level

When the symbol illuminates, check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇒ *page 254.* Add oil if necessary ⇒ *page 255.* ■

Engine oil sensor defective

If the symbol illuminates, contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the oil sensor inspected. Until you have this done, check the oil level each time you refuel just to be on the safe side ⇒ *page 254.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with Lighting package

Light/rain* sensor defective

Automatic headlights/automatic wipers defective

If the symbol illuminates, the light/rain sensor has failed. For safety reasons the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. In the case of a defect in the rain sensor, the windshield wiper lever functions are still available. Have the light/rain sensor checked as soon as possible at a dealership. ■

Worn brake pads

Brake pads! ▶

If the warning light illuminates, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected. On USA models the warning light comes on together with the warning light **BRAKE**. Both sets of brake pads on an axle must always be replaced at the same time.

WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- **If the warning light and the warning light BRAKE[1] with the message Brake pads! comes on in the instrument cluster display, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads checked or replaced if necessary. ■**

Speed warning 1 (USA models)/ (Canada models)

If the symbol illuminates, this means you are driving faster than the set vehicle speed. Slow down! ⇒ *page 35.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with dynamic headlight range adjustment

Headlight range control defective

If the symbol illuminates, the dynamic headlight range control is no longer working properly. Have the system checked and repaired at your Audi dealer. ■

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive light

Adaptive Light defective

When this symbol illuminates, it means that Adaptive Light is defective. Go to an authorized dealership to have the headlights or the control unit for the Adaptive Light repaired. ■

Windshield washer fluid level too low

If the symbol illuminates, add windshield washer fluid to the washer system and also for the headlight washer system*⇒ *page 266.* ■

Speed warning 2 (USA models)/ (Canada models)

If the symbol illuminates, this means you have driven faster than the second set vehicle speed. Slow down! ⇒ *page 35.* ■

Battery voltage low

If the symbol illuminates, contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the following components inspected:

- drive belt
- generator
- battery charge

Also see if the generator warning/indicator light illuminates ⇒ *page 22.* ■

[1] **BRAKE**: USA models only

Defective light bulb warning

The defective light bulb warning tells you when a vehicle light bulb has become defective.

If a defective bulb has been detected by the system or a light bulb burns out, the symbol with a message appears in the display to tell you which bulb is burnt out and where it is located. For example:

Rear left turn signal

After 5 seconds, the message disappears. If you want to recall the message into the display, press the CHECK button.

There are three reasons why the defective bulb message would appear in the display:

- the light bulb has burnt out ⇒ *page 302*.
- the fuse is "blown" ⇒ *page 300,* "Replacing a fuse".
- the wire connection to the light bulb is defective.

Have the bulb replaced or the connection repaired by your authorized Audi Service department.

WARNING

- **Light bulbs are pressurized and could explode while they are being changed causing serious personal injury.**
- **Work with due care when handling the high-voltage section of gas discharge (xenon) lamps*. Failing to do so could result in death or serious injury!** ■

Speed warning system

Overview

The speed warning system helps you to keep your driving speed below a set speed limit.



Fig. 19 Display: speed warning system

The speed warning system warns the driver if he exceeds a previously stored maximum speed. A warning tone will sound as soon as the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 miles per hour (3 km/h). At the same time, a warning symbol appears in the display ⇒ fig. 19.

The speed warning system has **two warning thresholds** that function independently of each other and that have somewhat different purposes:

Speed warning 1

You can use speed warning 1 to set the maximum speed while you are driving. This setting will remain in effect until you turn off the ignition, assuming that you have not changed or reset the setting.

The speed warning symbol (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the warning 1 display appears when you exceed the maximum speed. It goes out when the speed falls below the stored maximum speed. ▶

The speed warning symbol will also go out if the speed *exceeds* the stored maximum speed by more than about 25 mph (40 km/h) for at least 10 seconds. The stored maximum speed is deleted.

Setting speed warning 1 ⇒ *page 36*.

Speed warning 2

Storing warning 2 is recommended if you *always* want to be reminded of a certain speed, for example when you are traveling in a country that has a general maximum speed limit, or if you do not want to exceed a specified speed for winter tires.

The speed warning 2 symbol, MPH (USA models)/km/h (Canada models) appears in the display when you exceed the stored speed limit. Unlike warning 1, it will not go out until the vehicle speed drops below the stored speed limit.

Setting speed warning 2 ⇒ *page 36*.

Tips

Even though your vehicle is equipped with a speed warning system, you should still watch the speedometer to make sure you are not driving faster than the speed limit. ■

Speed warning 1: setting a speed limit

Warning threshold 1 is set by the CHECK button.



Fig. 20 CHECK button in the instrument cluster

Storing the maximum speed

– Drive at the desired maximum speed.

– Briefly press the CHECK button ⇒ fig. 20.

Resetting the maximum speed

– Drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 3 mph (5 km/h)

– Press the CHECK button for at least two seconds.

The speed warning symbol MPH/km/h (Canada models) appears briefly in the display when you release the button to indicate that the maximum speed has been stored successfully. The maximum speed will remain stored in the system until it is changed by briefly pressing the button again or until it is reset by holding down the button for at least two seconds. ■

Speed warning 2: setting a speed limit

Switches in the wiper arm are used to operate warning threshold 2.



Fig. 21 CHECK button in the instrument cluster

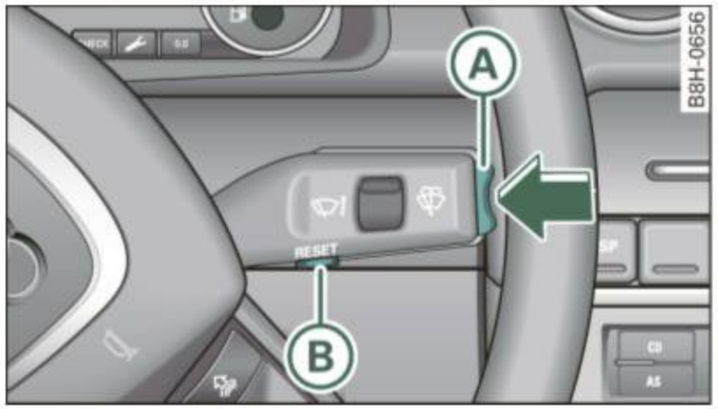


Fig. 22 Wiper arm: function selector switches

Saving a maximum speed

– Turn off the ignition.

– Briefly press the CHECK button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 36,* fig. 21. The odometer and the digital clock will now be illuminated.

– Press the CHECK button for at least two seconds. The currently stored maximum speed **or** the crossed out symbol for warning 2 will appear in the display if a maximum speed has not yet been set.

– Press the function selector switch in the wiper arm (A) ⇒ fig. 22 up or down to change the set value. The values increase or decrease in increments of 6.2 mph (10 km/h).

Resetting the maximum speed

– Turn off the ignition.

– Briefly press the CHECK button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 36,* fig. 21. The odometer and the digital clock will now illuminate briefly.

– Press the CHECK button for at least two seconds. The currently stored maximum speed will appear in the display.

– Press the reset button in the wiper arm (B) ⇒ fig. 22 until the display shows the symbol for speed warning 2 crossed out with a line.

The odometer and the digital clock displays will go out again a few seconds after this adjustment is completed. ■

Trip computer

Introduction

The trip computer gives you information on current and average fuel mileage, average speed, fuel range and driving time.



Fig. 23 Trip computer display: Average fuel mileage

You can switch between the trip computer 1 and 2 by pressing the Reset button (B) ⇒ *page 38,* fig. 24

You can tell which memory level is currently active by the number in the display ⇒ fig. 23. The data from the single-trip memory (memory level 1) is being displayed if a **1** appears in the display. If a **2** is shown, then the data from the total-trip memory is being displayed (memory level 2).

Single-trip memory (Trip computer 1)

The single-trip memory stores the trip information from the time the ignition is turned on until it is turned off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** from the time the ignition was turned off, the new data will be included in the calculation of the current trip information. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours** the memory is reset automatically.

Total-trip memory (Trip computer 2)

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not reset automatically. This permits you to evaluate your driving data for the entire period between manual resets.

Fuel range

The estimated cruising range in miles (km) appears in the display. This tells you how far your vehicle will be able to travel on the current tank of fuel and with the same driving style. The display changes in increments of 6 miles (10 km).

The cruising range is calculated based on the fuel consumption for the last 18 miles (30 km). If you drive conservatively, the cruising range will increase.

Average fuel mileage

The average fuel economy in MPG (l/100 km) since you last cleared the memory appears in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

Current fuel mileage

The instantaneous fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) is shown in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

Fuel consumption is recalculated at intervals of 33 yards (30 meters). When the vehicle is stationary, the most recent fuel consumption is displayed.

Average speed

The average speed in mph (km/h) since the last time the display was reset appears in the display.

Elapsed time

The length of time that you have been driving since you last reset the memory appears in this display.

Distance

The elapsed distance since the last time the memory was cleared appears in the display. The maximum distance that can be recorded is 9,999.9 miles (9,999.9 kilometers).

Tips

All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected. ■

Operation

The trip computer is controlled by two switches on the windshield wiper lever.

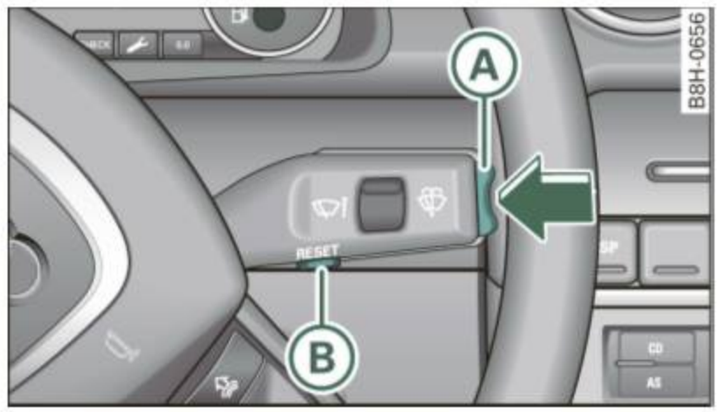


Fig. 24 Wiper arm: Wiper lever: controls for the trip computer

Selecting the functions

– Push in the upper (lower) protrusion on the function selector switch (A) to scroll up (down) through the trip computer functions ⇒ *page 38,* fig. 24. The functions for the trip computer are displayed in succession on the respective memory levels. Keep the switch pushed until the desired display appears.

Switching between menu levels

– Tap the Rest button (B) *briefly* to reach the various menu levels one after the other (“Computer 1”, “Computer 2”, “Navigation system”* and “Start menu”).

Resetting the function to zero

– Select the desired function.

– Push the reset button (B) for at least two seconds.

The trip computer only operates when the ignition is on. When you turn on the ignition, the function that was in use when you last turned the ignition off will be displayed.

In addition to the trip computer information (memory level 1 or 2) and navigation information can be displayed. To switch the display between the different systems, tap the Reset button (B) briefly.

You can reset the following values to zero using the reset button:

- driving time
- average mileage
- average speed

In addition, **all** the values in the single-trip or the total-trip memory can be deleted simultaneously.

Tips

- If you hold down the reset button for longer than 2 seconds, the current value (for example, average fuel consumption) will be reset to zero.
- Malfunction displays in Auto-Check Control are shown even with the display switched off.
- All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected. ■

Menu display

Introduction



Fig. 25 Wiper lever: Controls for the menu display



Fig. 26 Display: Start menu

Some functions in your vehicle can be set, activated, and controlled by **Menus** (e.g. Acoustic Park Assist*). With these menus you can also select the information shown in the DIS display, which operates only with the ignition switched on. Operation is controlled by the Reset button and the rocker switch on the wiper lever ⇒ *page 39,* fig. 25.

The **Start menu** shows you the different display types:

Set

Check

Menu off

Help

Each display type in the Start menu contains a submenu with additional options.

Set	Clock	⇒ *page 40*
	Computer	⇒ *page 40*
	Speed alarm (speed warning)	⇒ *page 35*
	Language (6 languages)	⇒ *page 40*
	Units (distance, fuel consumption, temperature)	⇒ *page 40*
Check	Service	⇒ *page 17*
Menu off	All of the messages shown in vehicles without menu display appear on the display screen.	
Help	The Help function helps you to make the right selection.	

Navigating the menu

Use the rocker switch on the windshield wiper lever and the Reset button to operate the menu and carry out inquiries and selections.

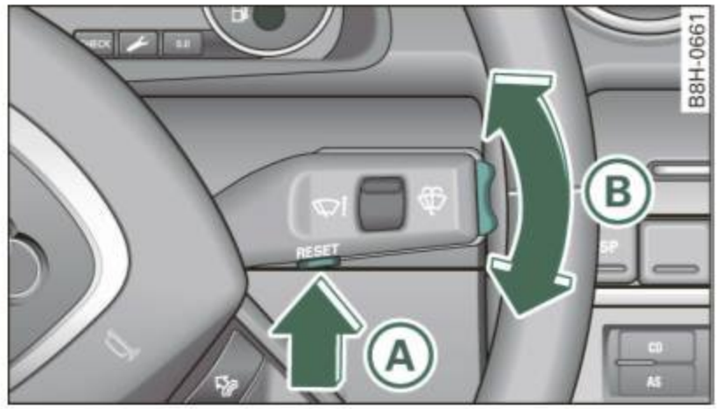


Fig. 27 Wiper lever: Controls for the menu display

Reset button Ⓐ and **rocker switch** Ⓑ ⇒ fig. 27 functions:

To open the menu

– Press the Reset button Ⓐ until the menu display ⇒ *page 39,* fig. 26 appears

Selections and settings

– Press the rocker switch Ⓑ to reach a menu display. The switch is operated the same as the display (up/down).

Entering and confirming

– Press the Reset button Ⓐ.

Returning to the Start menu

– Press the Reset button longer than 2 seconds to return from any menu level to the Start menu.

Using the rocker switch, you can select the menus in the display or change settings. A cursor appears on the left in front of the selected values.

By pressing the Reset button, you activate the selection you made or confirm the values you set. **Selected** functions are identified with a check mark or are carried out directly.

Meanings of the symbols in the display:

Selection bar	Selected function	Meaning
>	Cursor	Current Selection
✓	Check mark	Selected or Function active
❑	Box	Not selected
▲	Triangle pointing up	Previous page
▼	Triangle pointing down	Next page

■

Tire pressure monitoring system

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

General notes (!)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly. ■

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Introduction

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors air pressure in all four road wheels while the vehicle is moving.

As soon as the tire pressure monitoring system senses a significant loss of air pressure in one or several tires, text messages and yellow ▶

symbols appear in the instrument cluster display to alert the driver. The (!) warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the tire is significantly underinflated.

The warning light (!) also lights up during a system failure.

When the wheel is turning, the system receives radio signals from sensors located inside each tire.

A factory spare wheel is delivered with sensor. However, the spare wheel is not checked by the tire pressure monitoring system. Such monitoring can only occur after the spare wheel has been installed and initialized ⇒ *page 45*.

Be aware that tire pressure is also dependent on the temperature of the tire. For every 18 °F (10 °C) increase in tire temperature, tire pressure increases by about 1.5 psi (0.1 bar). The tire warms up while the vehicle is moving and tire pressure rises. So you should adjust tire pressure only when they are *cold*, when tire temperature is roughly the same as ambient air temperature.

In order to keep the tire pressure monitoring system properly calibrated, tire pressure on all four tires should be checked at regular intervals, adjusted if necessary and saved in the proper setting (recommended pressure) ⇒ *page 43*.

The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇒ *page 271*.

WARNING

• When the tire pressure monitoring system warning light is lit, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's tire pressure label ⇒ *page 271*. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also is likely to impair the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

• Do not adjust tire pressure when tire temperature is excessive. This could lead to serious tire damage and even cause the tire to burst, with the additional danger of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

Driving with under-inflated tires reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life.

Tips

- Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified on the tire pressure table ⇒ *page 271*.
- The tire pressure monitoring system helps the driver to keep track of the tire pressures. But the driver still has the responsibility for maintaining the correct tire pressure.
- Tire pressure must only be adjusted when the temperature of the tires is about the same as ambient air temperature.
- When tires are replaced, the sensors and valves must not be detached or exchanged. Only the valve core needs to be replaced and, if necessary, the valve and the wheel electronics replaced.
- If you should put different wheels and tires on your vehicle (e.g. winter wheels and tires), you must be certain that the wheels and tires are compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system. Otherwise the system will register a malfunction and a fault message will be displayed. For more information, contact your Audi dealer.

- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 320*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Significant loss of air pressure (!)

The yellow symbol appears in the event of a significant loss of air pressure.



Fig. 28 Display: yellow symbol with message

If the (!) warning light in the instrument cluster comes on and then the (!) symbol appears in the display ⇒ fig. 28, pressure in at least one tire is too low.

– Stop driving as soon as possible, without endangering yourself and other motorists.

– Inspect the tire or tires.

– Change the tire if necessary ⇒ *page 293*.

The (!) warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the tire is significantly underinflated.

In addition, the tire symbol (!) appears in the display together with the message **Please check tire pressure** ⇒ fig. 28.

After a few seconds, the message disappears again. If you would like to show the message again, press the CHECK button.

Tips

- In the case of an intentional loss of air pressure, for example, when re-adjusting tire pressure, this has to be stored again afterwards ⇒ *page 43*.
- Tire pressure must only be adjusted when the temperature of the tires is about the same as ambient air temperature.
- The yellow symbol disappears, when the tire pressure is corrected and the new pressure is stored in the system ⇒ *page 43*.
- After changing a wheel you have to adjust the tire pressures on all wheels. In addition, you must then initialize the new tire pressures in the tire pressure monitoring system ⇒ *page 45*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Adjusting and storing the tire pressure (step 1)

Only when the specified pressure is properly entered into the system, is the tire pressure monitoring system properly calibrated for accurate indications.

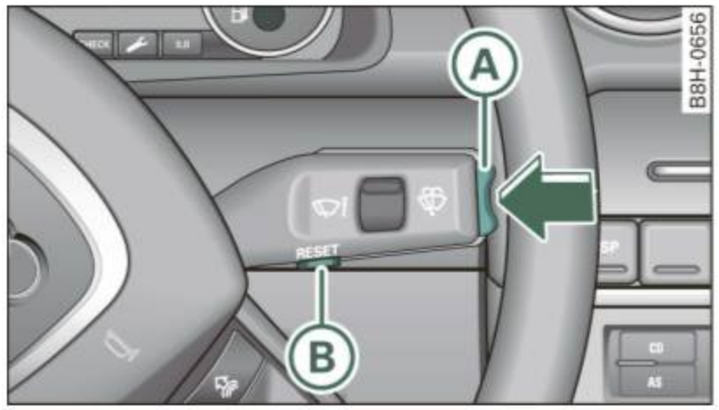


Fig. 29 Wiper arm: controls for the tire pressure



Fig. 30 Center display: starting menu

In order for the tire pressure monitoring system to operate accurately, you have to re-save the specified pressures whenever you adjust tire pressure, for example, when the load condition of your vehicle changes. Proceed as follows:

Correct the tire pressure

– Check the pressure in the tires (including the spare tire).

– Adjust the air pressure as needed in accordance with the information on the tire pressure label.

Reset the system

– Push the RESET button ⇒ *page 43,* fig. 29 until **Display Type** ⇒ fig. 30 appears.

– Push in the upper (lower) protrusion on the function selector switch (A) to select the **Set** option. ■

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Storing the adjusted tire pressure (step 2)

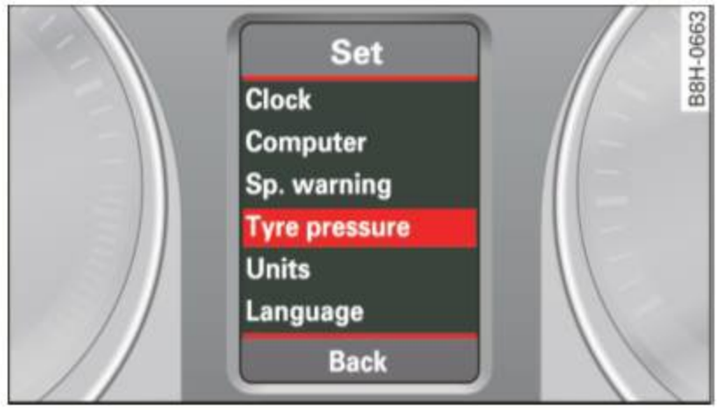


Fig. 31 Center display: tire pressure selected



Fig. 32 Center display: storing the tire pressure

– Push the RESET (B) button ⇒ *page 43,* fig. 29.

– Push in the upper (lower) protrusion on the function selector switch (A) to select the **Tire pressure** option ⇒ fig. 31.

– Push the RESET button.

– Push in the upper (lower) protrusion on the function selector switch (A) to select the **Store pressures** option ⇒ fig. 32. ▶

Following each intentional change in specified pressures, tire pressures must be resaved.

After the pressures are saved, the tire pressure monitoring system measures the current tire pressures and saves them as the new specified pressures.

Tips

- The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇒ *page 271*.
- The tire pressure monitoring system helps the driver to keep an eye on tire pressures. But the driver still has the responsibility for maintaining the correct tire pressure. ■

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, the new tire must be initialized.

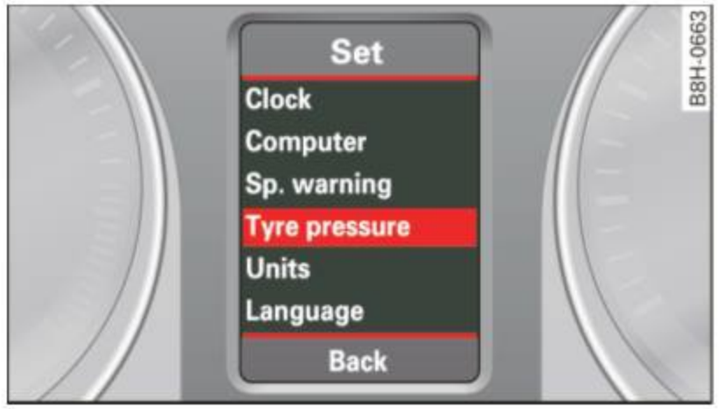


Fig. 33 Center display: tire pressure selected



Fig. 34 Center display: Wheel change selected

– Activate and proceed through the menu as specified in step 1 above ⇒ *page 43*,

– select **Wheel change** in the **Tire pressure** menu.

Programming is necessary:

- after rotating the wheels on the vehicle,
- if wheels with new wheel sensors are used. ▶

Your tire change is incomplete if you do not access the Driver Information System menu, and select and confirm **Wheel change**. You must do this each time to change a tire. The procedure can take up to 20 minutes driving time. During this time, the sensors are readjusting to the new wheel/tire combination, and the new pressures are stored.

During the learning phase, the tire pressure monitoring system is not available. ■

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Malfunctions TPMS

A malfunction can have various causes.

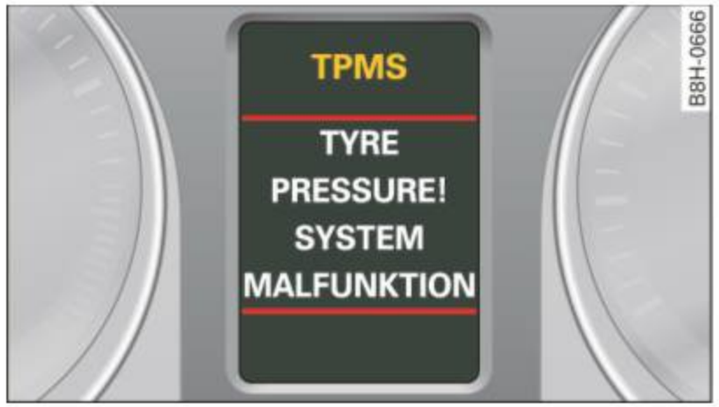


Fig. 35 Display: System malfunction

If the (!) warning light in the instrument cluster flashes for approximately one minute and then remains continuously illuminated and additionally the TPMS ⇒ fig. 35 symbol appears in the display, the tire pressure monitoring system is not available. This can have various causes.

- If the message appears at the end of the learning phase, the system cannot recognize the wheels installed on the vehicle. This can be because one or more wheels without a wheel sensor were installed.
- A wheel sensor or other component may have failed.
- The system has detected more than 4 wheels in the vehicle, for example while driving beneath another car with tire pressure monitoring system.
- A tire was changed but the ⇒ *page 45,* "Changing a wheel" procedure was not activated ⇒ *page 45.*
- Audi replacement parts were not used.
- If snow chains are being used, system function can be compromised due to the shielding properties of the chains.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may not be available because of a radio malfunction.
- Transmitters with the same frequency, such as radio headphones in the vehicle or radio equipment, can cause a temporary disruption of the system through excessive electromagnetic fields.
- Try to find the cause of the interference, and then perform the ⇒ *page 45,* "Changing a wheel" procedure one more time. If this not eliminate the problem, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.
- Do not use commercially available tire sealants. Otherwise, the electrical components of the tire pressure monitoring system will no longer work properly and the sensor for the tire pressure monitoring system will have to be replaced by a qualified workshop. ■

Opening and closing

Keys

Key set

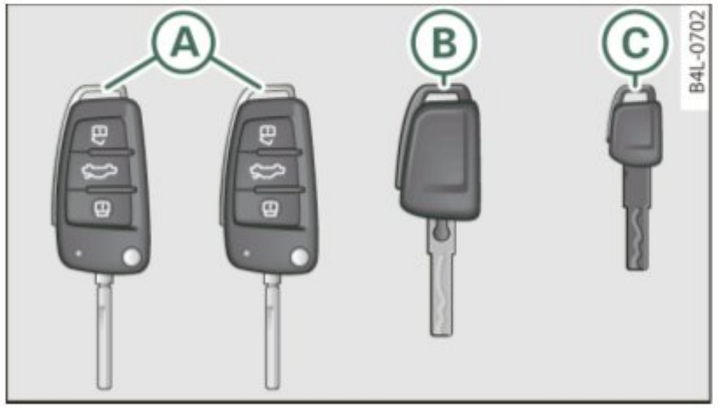


Fig. 36 Key set

Ⓐ Master key with remote control

You can centrally lock and unlock your vehicle and start the engine with the master key with remote control.

Ⓑ Valet key

The valet key fits only the driver's door and the ignition lock. If you have to leave the key with somebody else, you are well-advised to turn over the valet key only.

Be aware that the rear lid can be opened from inside the vehicle with the remote rear lid release located in the driver's door. Before you turn over the valet key you should therefore lock the rear lid mechanically with the master key.

Turn the master key **clockwise** to the **horizontal** position and pull it out. This has two effects:

- the **remote rear lid release is deactivated**,
- the **lid will remain locked** when the power locking system is actuated.

In this state the rear lid can be unlocked only with the remote control unlock button on the master key.

Ⓒ Emergency key

The emergency key is only for temporary use if the vehicle key should be lost or misplaced ⇒ ⚠.

Key replacement

If you lose a key, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the *lost* key disabled. Be sure to bring all your keys with you.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or result in theft or damage the vehicle. Always lock all doors and take the key.**
- **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unguarded access to the keys provides children the opportunity to start the engine and/or activate vehicle systems such as the power windows. Unsupervised operation of any vehicle system by children can result in serious injury.**

Tips

- If you open the driver's door with the key left in the ignition lock, a chime will sound. This is your reminder to remove the key and lock the door.
- For security reasons, replacement keys are only available from Audi dealers. ■

Master key with remote control

The remote control allows you to lock or unlock the vehicle electronically.

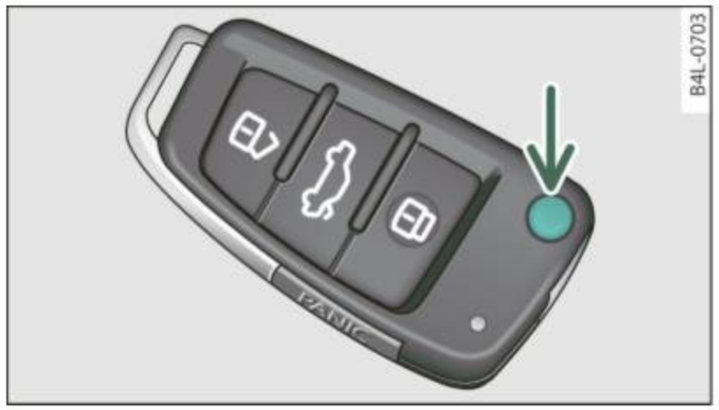


Fig. 37 Fold-up master key with remote control

– To fold the key out and back in place, press the release button ⇒ fig. 37.

The transmitter and battery are located in the head of the remote control. The receiver is located inside the vehicle. The maximum effective range depends on several things. Remember, if the battery is weak, the effective range decreases.

If you need to replace the remote control, or if you need to have it repaired, you must see your authorized Audi dealer. Only then can you use the key again.

Tips

- If the ignition is switched on, the remote control system is deactivated.
- The remote control system can be affected by other systems operating in the same frequency range close to the vehicle, such as mobile telephones, television broadcasting stations, etc.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 320.* ■

Check light in remote master key

The check light in the remote master key indicates the state of charge of the battery.



Fig. 38 Check light in the master key

State of master key battery

When a button is pressed, the check light flashes ⇒ fig. 38 (arrow). If the check light does not come on or flash, the battery is dead and has to be replaced.

Battery replacement ⇒ *page 49.* ■

Master key battery replacement

Each master key contains a battery housed under the cover.

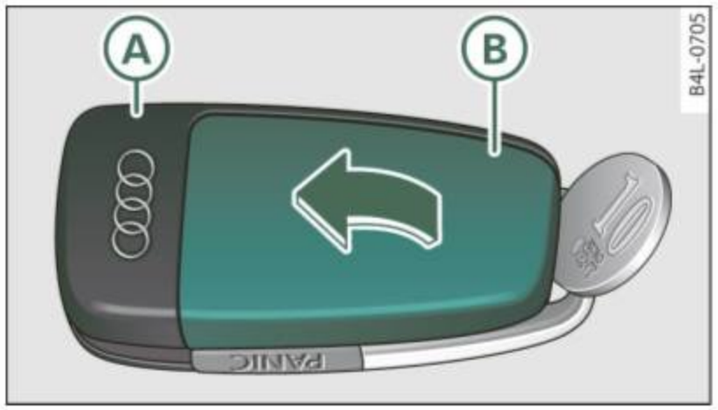


Fig. 39 Master key: opening the cover

We recommend having the battery changed by an authorized dealership. However, if you wish to replace the dead battery yourself, proceed as follows:

– Pry apart the base ⇒ fig. 39 (A) and the cover (B) **carefully** with a coin.

– Remove the cover (arrow).

– Remove the dead battery from the cover.

– Install the new battery. Please make certain that the "+" sign on the battery faces down. Correct polarity is shown on the cover.

– Place the cover with the new battery on the key base and press both parts together.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of dead batteries properly so as not to pollute the environment.

Tips

The replacement battery must be the same specification as the original. ■

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer helps to prevent unauthorized use of your vehicle.

A computer chip inside your key automatically deactivates the electronic immobilizer when you insert the key in the ignition lock. When you remove the key from the ignition lock, the electronic immobilizer is automatically activated once again.

If an unauthorized key was used, **SAFE** is displayed continuously in the odometer display field.

WARNING

Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The key can disarm the electronic engine immobilizer and permit an unauthorized person to start the engine and enable operation of the vehicle systems such as power window or power top leading to serious personal injury.

Tips

- Your engine can only be started using the factory-equipped key.
- You may not be able to start your vehicle if an ignition key of a different vehicle make is also located on your set of keys.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 320*. ■

Power locking system

General description

The power locking system locks all the vehicle doors and rear lid simultaneously or allows you to unlock either just the driver's door or all the vehicle doors and rear lid simultaneously.

The power locking system in your vehicle incorporates the following functions:

- Central locking function
- Remote control feature ⇒ *page 51*.
- Anti-theft alarm system ⇒ *page 57*.

All the doors and the rear lid are locked by the central locking system when you lock the vehicle.

Unlocking the vehicle

You can unlock the vehicle from outside either by using the remote control **or** by inserting and turning the key in the driver's door lock. When you **unlock** your vehicle:

- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated briefly.
- The vehicle interior lights illuminate for approximately 30 seconds.
- All turn signal lights will flash twice when the car is unlocked.
- After unlocking the vehicle, you have 60 seconds to open a door or the rear lid. After 60 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks and the anti-theft alarm system activates again.

The rear lid can be locked or unlocked either by using the remote control **or** by inserting and turning the key in the driver's door lock. Unlocking the vehicle with the remote control will only *unlock* the rear lid, to *open* it, the lid handle needs to be pressed.

Locking the vehicle

You can lock the vehicle from outside either by using the remote control **or** by inserting and turning the key in the drivers's door lock. When you **lock** the vehicle:

- All doors and the rear lid are locked.
- All turn signal lights will flash once when the car is locked.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated. The horn of the anti-theft alarm system will sound and the anti-theft alarm system readiness light, located in the upper part of the driver's door panel, will start to blink.
- The vehicle interior lights turn off.

Automatic locking*

The automatic locking feature locks all the vehicle doors and the rear lid when you drive faster than 9 mph (15 km/h).

You can unlock the vehicle from the inside by:

- removing the key from the ignition switch (the vehicle will automatically unlock itself) or
- pressing the unlock part of the power lock switch or

pulling the door handle (twice to open the door).

If you wish, you can have an authorized Audi dealer convert your power door lock system to automatic locking.

⚠ WARNING

- **When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.**
- **When you leave the vehicle, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the front doors.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.**

Tips

- In the event of a crash with airbag deployment all locked doors will be automatically unlocked to give access to the vehicle occupants from the outside.
- If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the fuel tank flap in an emergency ⇒ *page 248*.
- You are well advised not to keep valuables inside an unattended vehicle, visible or not. Even a properly locked vehicle cannot provide the security of a safe! ■

Keyless entry remote control

General description

The remote controls allows you to:

- lock or unlock the vehicle
- selectively unlock the rear lid.

The turn signals will flash briefly whenever you lock or unlock the vehicle. Also, the interior light will come on or go off whenever you open or close the driver's door.

The transmitter and battery are located in the head of the remote control. The receiver is located inside the vehicle. The maximum effective range depends on several things. Remember, if the battery is weak, the effective range decreases.

The remote-control key contains a fold-out key that you can use to manually lock or unlock the vehicle and to start the engine.

If you need to replace the remote control, or if you need to have it repaired, you must see your authorized Audi dealer. Only then can you use the key again. ■

Unlocking and locking the vehicle with the remote control

How the remote control works.

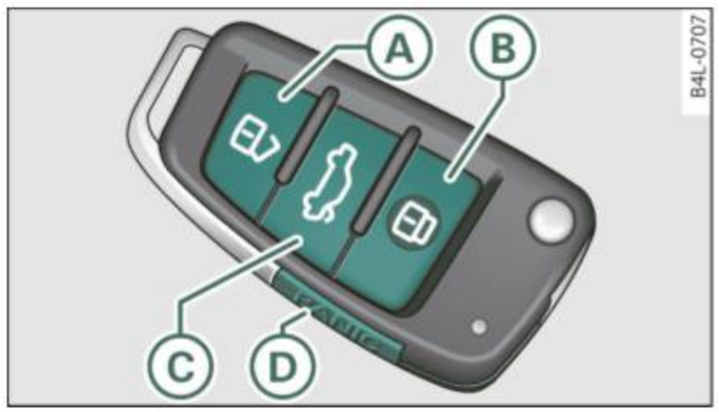


Fig. 40 Remote control: function buttons

To unlock the vehicle

– Press button (A).

– Press button (A) *two times* within two seconds **to unlock all doors and the rear lid.**

To lock the vehicle

– Press button (B) ⇒ ⚠ in “General description” on *page 50*.

– Watch that all turn signal lights flash once.

To unlock rear lid only

– Press button (C) for approximately one second. ▶

PANIC Button

– Push the red button (D) to activate the panic function. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash.

– Push the button (D) again to deactivate the panic function.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 50*.

Tips

- In order to make sure the locking function is working, you should always keep your eye on the vehicle to make sure it is properly locked.
- Do not use the remote control if you are inside the car, otherwise you may unintentionally lock the vehicle, and then you would set off the anti-theft alarm when you try to start the engine or open a door. In case this happens anyhow, push the unlock button.
- Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation. ■

Resetting the remote control

The remote control must be reset if the vehicle does not unlock.

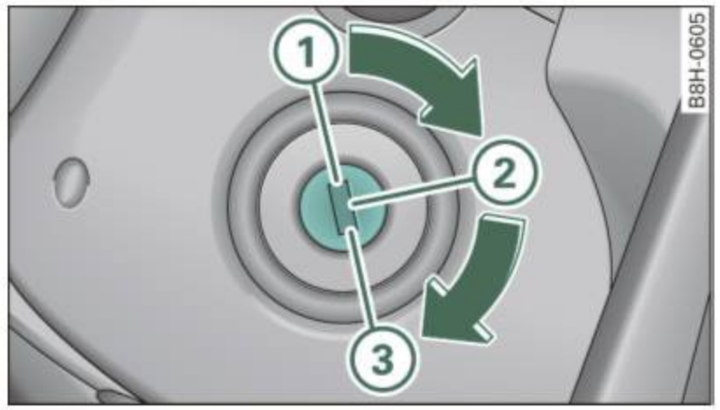


Fig. 41 Ignition lock positions

– If the vehicle is locked, open the driver's door with the mechanical key in your remote control.

– Press the unlock button on the remote control.

– Insert the key into the ignition lock (1) ⇒ fig. 41 and turn it to position (2) to turn the ignition on.

– Turn the key back to position (1) to turn the ignition off again.

– Pull the key out of the ignition lock.

– Press either the lock- or the unlock button to complete the reset sequence.

Note

Do not turn the key to position (3) for resetting as this will start the engine and may put the car in motion. ■

Doors, power locks

Operating locks with the key

To lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside, turn the key in the lock of the driver's door.

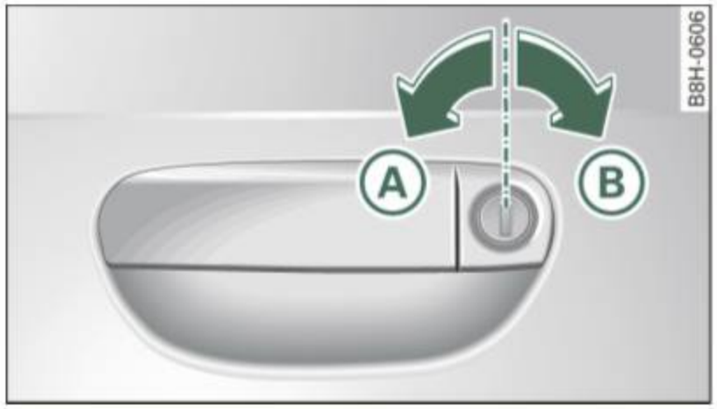


Fig. 42 Key turns for opening and closing.

To unlock the driver's door only

- Insert the key into the lock of driver's door.
- Turn the key *one time only* to position (A) ⇒ fig. 42 to unlock the driver's door.

To unlock all doors and the rear lid

- Turn the key *two times* to position (A) ⇒ fig. 42 to unlock the vehicle

To lock the vehicle

- Close all windows and doors properly.
- Turn the key in the lock of the driver's door to the lock position (B) ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 50*.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed WARNING ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 50*. ■

Convenience close/open feature with the lock in the driver´s door

You can close or open the windows and the power top from outside when you lock or unlock your car with the key.

Closing the windows

- Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door.
- Make sure that the windows are not blocked ⇒ ⚠.
- Turn and hold the key in the lock position (B) ⇒ fig. 42 until the windows are completely closed.

Opening the windows

- Press button on the key *twice* to unlock the car.
- Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door.
- Turn and hold the key in the open position (A).

Opening/closing power top

- See ⇒ *page 63,* "Convenience opening and closing of power top" to operate power top with the key.

The automatic close function will cease if the key is released. For safety reasons it is not possible to open and close the power top with the remote control key.

⚠ WARNING

- **Be careful when closing the windows. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Always read and heed WARNING ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 50*. ■**

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside

The vehicle can be locked or unlocked from the inside using the power locking switches located in the driver's and the front passenger door.

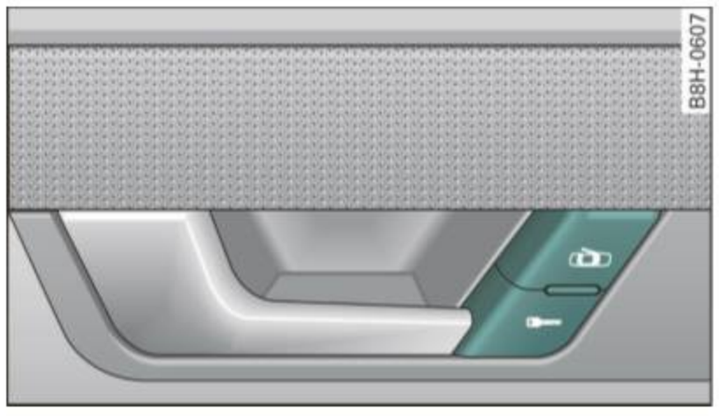


Fig. 43 Driver's door: power locking switch

How to lock all doors and the rear lid simultaneously

– Press lower part of the power locking switch ⇒ fig. 43 ⇒ ⚠.

How to unlock all doors and the rear lid simultaneously

– Press the upper part of the switch.

How to unlock each door separately using the door handle

– Pull the handle to open the door.

If you lock the vehicle using the **power locking switch**, please note the following:

- You cannot open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (increased security, for example when you are stopped at a red light).
- The diode in the power locking switch illuminate when all the doors and the rear lid are closed and locked.
- You can unlock and open the doors from the inside by pulling on the door handle.
- If the driver's door is opened (after you have locked the vehicle from the inside using the power locking switch), the door will remain unlocked to prevent you from locking yourself out of your vehicle. After you close the door, you have to lock the driver's door again.
- If you have an accident and the airbag is activated, the doors unlock automatically .

⚠ WARNING

- **If you use the power locking switch with the doors closed, remember that all the vehicle doors will lock.**
- **Locking doors from the inside can help prevent inadvertent door opening during an accident and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and hold up rescue efforts from the outside in an accident or other emergency.**

Tips

Be aware that the rear lid can be opened from inside the vehicle with the remote rear lid release located in the driver's door. Before you ▶

turn over the valet key you should therefore lock the rear lid mechanically with the master key. ■

Emergency locking

If the power locking system fails (power failure), you will need to lock the passenger door separately.



Fig. 44 Emergency lock location on the front passengers door

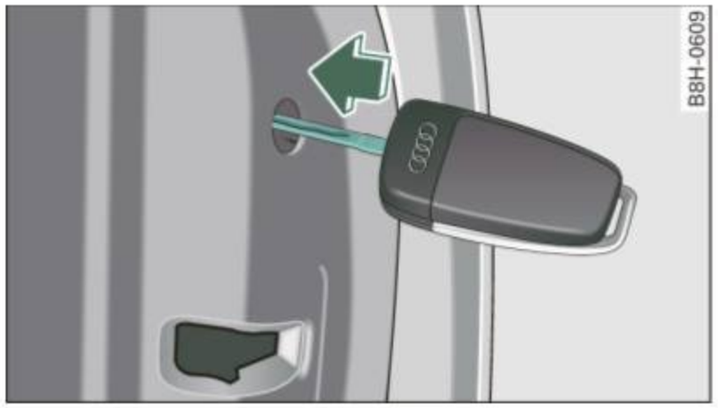


Fig. 45 Close-up: inserting the key

For this purpose, a mechanical locking device is provided on the end panel of the passenger door (only visible when the door is open).

– Open the door.

– Remove the plastic cap using your vehicle key ⇒ fig. 44.

– Position the key at an angle of 90° to the door trim panel and push it in the direction shown by the arrow ⇒ fig. 45.

After you close the door you will not no longer be able to open it from the outside.

You can open it from the inside, however, by pulling on the door latch *twice*. ■

Rear lid

Rear lid

You can also open the rear lid using the fold-out key.

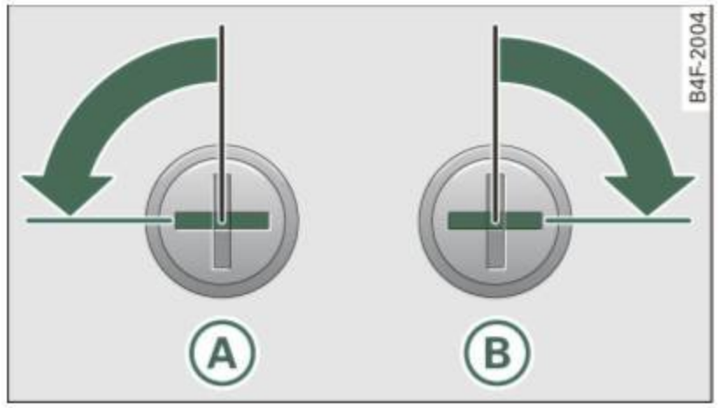


Fig. 46 Rear lid: lock positions



Fig. 47 Position of lock and handle in the rear lid

As a general rule, you should use the remote control key to lock and unlock the rear lid ⇒ *page 51*. With the key slot in the vertical position the rear lid can be **locked and unlocked** by the power locking system using either the remote-control- or the fold-out key ⇒ *page 50*.

Opening the rear lid

– Pull the handle ⇒ *page 55,* fig. 47 while lifting the lid.

Closing the rear lid

– Pull it down and shut it firmly ⇒ ⚠. There is a recess in the interior trim of the lid to make it easier to pull down.

To unlock the rear lid with the key

– Turn the key from the vertical to position Ⓐ ⇒ *page 55,* fig. 46 the lid springs open slightly.
– Open the lid.

To lock the rear lid with the key

– Turn key slot to horizontal position Ⓑ.

Turning the key **counter-clockwise** to position Ⓐ will release the rear lid and cause it to rise slightly. In this position the key cannot be pulled out of the lock cylinder.

Turning the key **clockwise** to the horizontal position Ⓑ and pulling it out will cause the **lid to remain locked** when the power locking system is actuated.

In this state the rear lid can only be unlocked with the remote control unlock button on the master key.

After you turn the key **counter-clockwise** back to the vertical position, the rear lid will again respond to the power locking system.

⚠ WARNING

- **After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.**
- **To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid, as well as the vehicle doors, closed when not in use.**

Tips

In case of an emergency, the rear lid can be opened from the inside using the trunk escape handle ⇒ *page 290*. ■

Remote rear lid release

You can open the rear lid from inside the vehicle using a switch in the driver's door.



Fig. 48 Driver's door, rear bottom: remote rear lid release

To unlock rear lid

– Pull the switch ⇒ *page 56,* fig. 48 in the driver's door.

To open rear lid

– Raise the rear lid.

The remote rear lid release is deactivated automatically if you lock the rear lid using the key. This enables the driver to lock the luggage compartment permanently with the key and prevent unwanted access to the trunk. ■

Anti-theft alarm system

Description

The anti-theft alarm triggers an alarm if anyone attempts to break into the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system triggers an audible alarm and turns on the emergency flasher if an unauthorized interference with the vehicle is sensed by the system.

How is the anti-theft alarm system switched on?

The anti-theft alarm system is switched on when you lock the driver's door manually using your key, or when you use the remote control. The system is activated approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. The indicator light on top of the door trim start flashing rapidly for 30 seconds and then blink slowly.

How is the anti-theft alarm system switched off?

The anti-theft alarm system is switched off only when you use the remote control to unlock your vehicle. If you do not open a door within 60 seconds after you have unlocked with the remote control, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically.

If you lock just the driver's door using your key, the front passenger's door, the rear and the fuel filler flap remain locked.

If you use the vehicle key to unlock the driver's door, the other doors, the rear lid and the fuel tank flap will remain locked. The alarm system will not be deactivated unless you insert the key in the ignition switch within 15 seconds and turn on the ignition. If you fail to do this, the alarm will sound.

When will the anti theft alarm system be triggered?

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm system monitors and protects the following parts of the vehicle:

- engine compartment
- luggage compartment
- doors
- vehicle incline
- ignition
- factory installed radio.

When the system is activated, the alarm will be triggered if one of the doors, the engine hood or the rear lid are opened, or if the ignition is turned on or the radio removed or if the vehicle incline has been changed.

The anti-theft alarm system will also go off when you unlock the rear lid with your key and open it. The alarm is switched off again when you close the rear lid.

The anti-theft alarm system will also go off when the battery is disconnected.

You can also trigger the alarm by pressing the PANIC button on your remote control. This will alert other people in case of emergency. Press the **PANIC** button again to turn off the alarm. ▶

How is the anti-theft alarm switched off when triggered?

The alarm system is switched off when you unlock the vehicle using the remote control or when the ignition is switched on. The alarm will also switch itself off when it comes to the end of its cycle.

Emergency flasher

The emergency flasher will blink briefly when the doors, engine hood and rear lid are properly closed.

If the emergency flashers do not blink, check the doors, engine hood and rear lid to make sure they are properly closed. If you close a door, the hood or the rear lid with the anti-theft alarm switched on, the emergency flashers will blink only after you have closed the door or lid.

Tips

- For the anti-theft alarm system to function properly, make sure all vehicle doors and windows are closed before leaving the vehicle.
- When you open the vehicle from the driver's door using the key, the central locking switch will work only after you have switched on the ignition. ■

Tilt sensors

The tilt sensors trigger an alarm if they detect vehicle movement.



Fig. 49 Driver's door, rear bottom: tilt sensor switch

Switch off the tilt sensors if you are going to have your vehicle transported.

Switch off the tilt sensors

– Press the switch located in the driver's door ⇒ fig. 49.

– Lock the vehicle.

When you turn off the tilt sensors, the diode in the switch will illuminate. Also, the indicator light in the driver's door will illuminate for about three seconds. After you lock the vehicle, the indicator light in the door trim will blink quickly for about three seconds. After that, the blinking slows down.

The next time the vehicle is locked, the tilt sensors are automatically turned on again. ■

Power windows

Controls

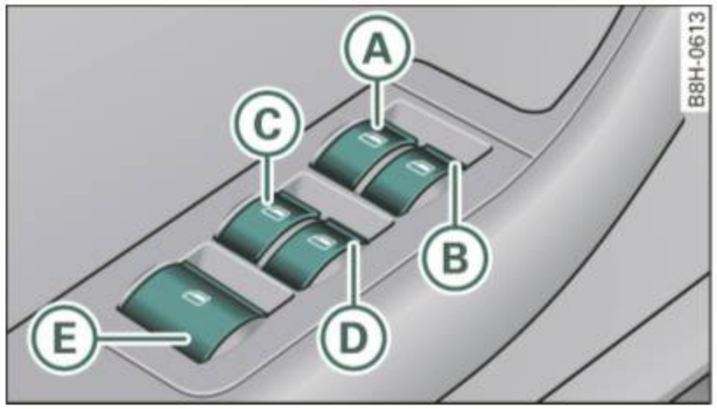


Fig. 50 Driver's door: power window switches

The switches are located in the driver's door. The front passenger's door has a own power window switch of its own.

To open/close If the respective switch is pushed or pulled, the window will, respectively.

Switches for front door windows

Ⓐ operates the window in the driver's door.

Ⓑ operates the window in the front passenger door.

Switches for rear windows

Ⓒ operates the left rear window.

Ⓓ operates the right rear window.

Switches for all windows

Ⓔ operates all windows.

⚠ WARNING

• Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in

⚠ WARNING (continued)

starting of the engine and use of vehicle systems such as power windows, etc. which could result in serious injury.

• Remember – you can still open or close the power windows for about ten minutes after the ignition is switched off. Only when either of the front doors are opened are the power windows switched off.

• Be careful when closing the windows. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!

• Always remove the ignition key whenever you leave your vehicle.

• If you lock your vehicle from the outside, no one, especially children, should remain in the vehicle even when the power top is opened.

• Do not stick anything on the windows or the windshield that may interfere with the driver's field of vision. ■

Switches in the driver's door

The driver can operate all windows.

If the respective switch is pushed or pulled the window will open or close. The power window switches have a **two-position function**:

Opening the windows

– Push the switch to the **first stop** and hold it there until the window has lowered to the desired position.

– Push the switch briefly to the **second stop**: the window will automatically open all the way. ▶

Closing the windows

– Pull the switch up to the **first stop** and hold it there until the window has risen to the desired position.

– Pull the switch quickly to the **second position**: the window will automatically close all the way ⇒ ⚠ in "Controls".

Operating switch (E) ⇒ *page 59,* fig. 50 you can open/close **all** windows centrally ⇒ ⚠ in "Controls".

Tips

The windows can still be opened and closed for about ten minutes after the ignition has been turned off. The power windows are not shut off until one of the front doors is opened. ■

Switch in the front passenger's door

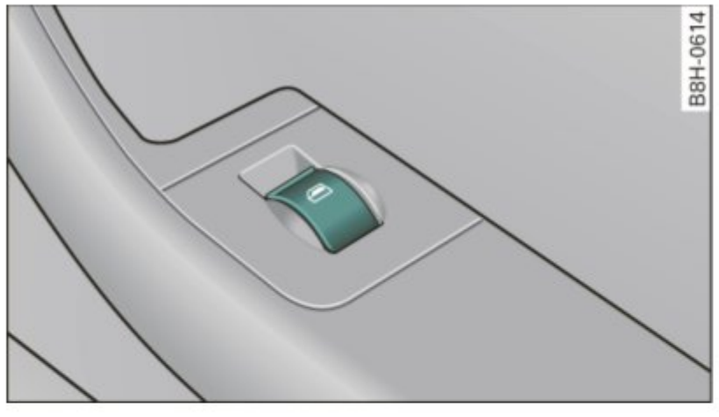


Fig. 51 Switch location front passengers door

The power window switch has a **two-position function**:

Opening the windows

– Push the switch to the **first stop** and hold it there until the window has lowered to the desired position.

– Push the switch briefly to the **second stop**: the window will automatically open all the way.

Closing the windows

– Pull the switch up to the **first stop** and hold it there until the window has risen to the desired position.

– Pull the switch quickly to the **second position**: the window will automatically close all the way.

Tips

The windows can still be opened and closed for about ten minutes after the ignition has been turned off. The power windows are not shut off until one of the front doors is opened. ■

Reactivating the system after battery disconnection

Reactivating the convenience close/open feature

If the vehicle battery is disconnected and then reconnected, the automatic closing and opening function will not work until it is reactivated. To reactivate this feature, perform the following steps:

Reactivating close/open feature

– Pull and hold the power window switch until the window is completely closed.

– Release the switch.

– Pull the switch again for one second. The automatic closing/opening is now reactivated. ■

Power top

Normal operation

General information

The power top is designed for quick and easy operation. The power top opens and closes automatically by itself. When the top is folded down, it is stored in a special compartment and hidden under a cover.

The power top is both wind- and waterproof under normal operating conditions. Only under extreme weather conditions, for example, a violent burst of rain or torrential rainfall, can a few drops of water possibly form inside the roof. This is normal and no cause for concern.

To maintain the appearance of the power roof and to keep it waterproof, read the information on roof care in ⇒ *page 233,* "Power top care" . In addition to this, please note the following:

- Always open or close the power roof only when it is clean. Otherwise particles of dirt can scratch the rear window when the power top folds down. The particles can chafe and damage the fabric over a period of time. It is also important to remove ice and snow before opening the power roof.
- Do not use a sharp object or any other tools, which could scratch the fabric when removing ice or snow. A normal ice scraper can be used to remove ice from the rear window.
- The power roof should be opened only when it is completely dry. If you open and store the power roof when it is wet, unsightly marks or mildew can form if left for long periods of time.
- Never leave the roof open for several weeks at a time. You should close it occasionally to prevent discoloration in the folds of the fabric and to allow the creases to smooth out. This is especially important if the top has once been stored away when it was not completely dry.
- Do not open the power when it is colder than 32 °F (0 °C). At these temperatures, the fabric is less flexible.

⚠ WARNING

- **For safety reasons never open or close the power top when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Never drive the vehicle without the power top securely locked in the closed position. If it is not firmly engaged, the top can be blown open by the airstream and cause injuries and damage to the vehicle. - Risk of crash!**
- **When opening and closing the power top make sure to keep yourself and others clear of all moving parts. Risk of injury!**
- **During operation of the power top the head clearance in the rear of the vehicle is reduced. Always make sure that rear seat passengers keep clear of the power top as it is being opened or closed. Risk of injury!**

Tips

- The power top can only be operated with the ignition switched on.
- To avoid unnecessary strain on the battery, you should not open and close the top several times in a row when the engine is not running.
- The display in the instrument cluster will indicate if a protective feature of the power top has been activated or if a malfunction occurs ⇒ *page 64.*
- In case of a malfunction the power top can be operated manually. This is intended for a limited time only ⇒ *page 68,* "Operate the power top manually". The cause of the malfunction should be tracked down and repaired by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible. ▶

- If you park the vehicle with the power top open, be aware that you leave the interior exposed to the effects of unexpected weather changes as well as to criminal access. To protect your property, close the top before leaving the car and lock away any valuables in the luggage compartment. ■

Open the power top

The power top opens automatically.

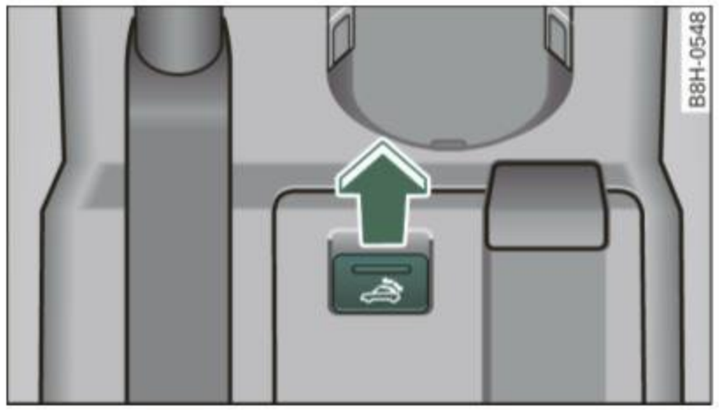


Fig. 52 Center console: power top control switch

– Switch on the ignition.

– Pull up and hold the power top control switch ⇒ fig. 52 until the power top has completely retracted.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the power top has completely opened.

The opening motion stops **immediately** as soon as the control switch is released.

WARNING

- **When opening and closing the power top make sure to keep yourself and others clear of all moving parts - Risk of injury!**

WARNING (continued)

- **During operation of the power top the head clearance in the rear of the vehicle is reduced. Always make sure that rear seat passengers keep clear of the power top as it is being opened or closed. Risk of injury!** ■

Closing the power top

The power top closes automatically.

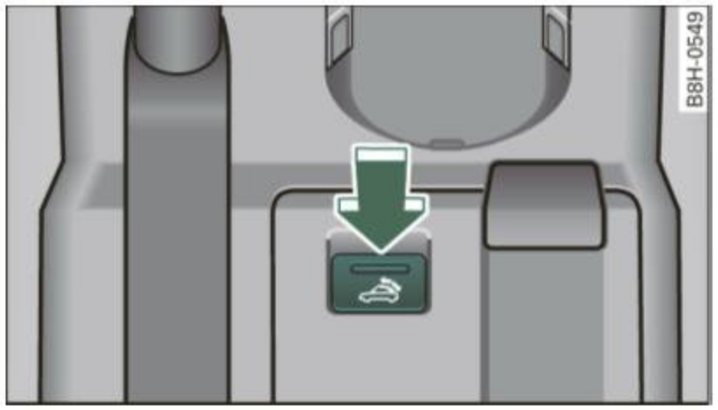


Fig. 53 Center console: power top control switch

– Switch on the ignition.

– Press and hold the power top control switch ⇒ fig. 53 until the power top is completely closed.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the power top has completely closed.

The opening motion stops **immediately** as soon as the control switch is released.

WARNING

- **When opening and closing the power top make sure to keep yourself and others clear of all moving parts - Risk of injury!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **During operation of the power top the head clearance in the rear of the vehicle is reduced. Always make sure that rear seat passengers keep clear of the power top as it is being opened or closed. Risk of injury! ■**

Convenience opening and closing of power top

The power top can alternatively be opened and closed by turning the key in the driver's door lock.

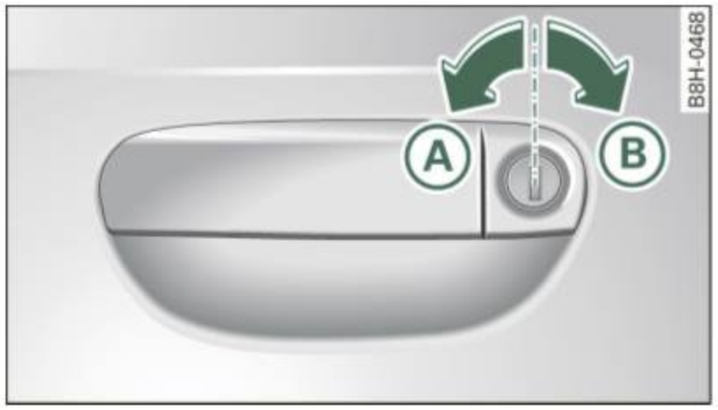


Fig. 54 Keyturns for opening and closing the power top

Please note that convenience opening requires one additional action for vehicles equipped with anti-theft alarm. This applies to convenience closing as well.

Convenience opening

– Press the unlock button on the remote control key to unlock the vehicle.

– Turn the key in the driver door *once* to position (A) ⇒ fig. 54.

– **Within two seconds** turn the key a second time and hold it in this position until the power top has completely retracted.

Convenience closing

– Turn the key in the driver door *once* to position (B) ⇒ fig. 54.

– **Within two seconds** turn the key a second time and hold it in this position until the power top has completely closed.

Opening or closing motion stops **immediately** as soon as you release the key. For safety reasons, it is not possible to activate the convenience feature with the remote control.

⚠ WARNING

- **When opening and closing the power top make sure to keep yourself and others clear of all moving parts - Risk of injury!**
- **During operation of the power top the head clearance in the rear of the vehicle is reduced. Always make sure that rear seat passengers keep clear of the power top as it is being opened or closed. Risk of injury! ■**

Variable power top storage bay

The bottom of the variable storage bay can only be raised when the top is closed and NOT folded up inside the bay.

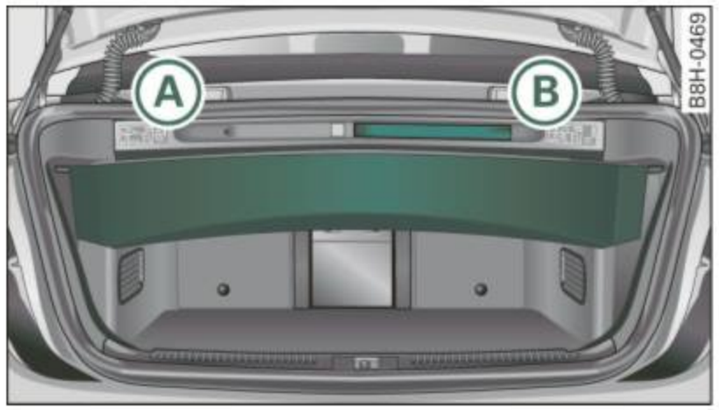


Fig. 55 Luggage compartment: variable storage bay, bottom down

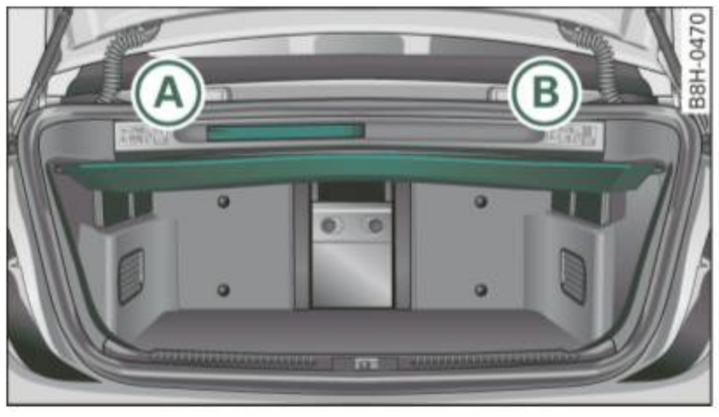


Fig. 56 Luggage compartment: variable storage bay, bottom up

Lifting the storage bay base

– Move the lever to position (A) to raise the storage bay bottom ⇒ *page 64,* fig. 55.

Lowering the storage bay base

– Move the lever to position (B) to lower the variable storage bay ⇒ fig. 56.

The storage bay bottom can only be lifted when the **top is closed and NOT folded up inside the bay**. This creates more space in the luggage compartment. The storage bay base must be in the lowered position before the top can be lowered.

When the top **opens** it folds down completely into the storage bay designed to contain it. Only with the storage bay expanded is it possible to open the top. This feature prevents the top from forcing its way down against objects blocking its storage space. For this reason your vehicle has less luggage capacity when the top is down than when it is up and closed. It is not possible to lift the base of the storage bay when it contains the folded down top. ■

Messages in the instrument cluster display

If the power top fails to activate when you operate the control switch, a message will appear in the display to indicate what is wrong.

Before the power top can start to open or close automatically, a number of conditions must be met. The systems checks, for instance, if the storage bay has been expanded before the power top opens.

The instrument cluster display will generate a message if one of these conditions does not check right or if a malfunction occurs.

Power top: please close rear lid

The lid on the trunk must *always* be closed when opening or closing the power top. This message will appear in the display if the trunk lid is not closed.

Power top: please lower storage bay

The variable storage bay must be in the lowered (expanded) position before the power top can be opened ⇒ *page 64*. This message will appear in the display if the variable storage bay is not in the lowered position (lever to the right) when opening the power top. ▶

Power top: cannot be used

Power top not operating

This message will appear in the display if the power top has been deactivated for safety reasons or if there is a malfunction. Possible causes are:

- **vehicle speed too high:** the power top operation is deactivated for safety reasons if the vehicle is moving at a speed above 3 mph (5 km/h).
- **battery voltage too low:** the power top will not operate if the battery voltage is too low. This is a precautionary feature to make sure that there is always enough battery power available to start the engine. The power top can be activated again once the engine has been started and is running.
- **overload cut-off:** if the power top is operated repeatedly the hydraulic actuator components will be severely stressed. In this case the overload cut-off will safeguard the system against damage. This safeguard deactivates the system for about 15 to 30 minutes. After this time the power top can be operated again as usual ⇒ ⚠.
- **Malfunction:** One possible cause of a malfunction is the failure of a system component. In this case the power top can also be manually operated ⇒ *page 68*. Turning off the ignition during the opening or closing process may cause a malfunction. You can correct this yourself ⇒ *page 65*.

Power top not secure

Power top not locked in place

If the top has not opened or closed **completely** and the vehicle moves then at a speed above 3 mph (5 km/h), this **warning** will appear in the instrument cluster display. Stop the vehicle. Open or close the power top completely. The warning should disappear.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive the car with a power top that is not securely locked in place. If it is not firmly engaged, the top can be blown open by the

⚠ WARNING (continued)

airstream and cause injuries and damage to the vehicle. - Risk of crash! ■

Correcting a malfunction

Turning off the ignition during the opening or closing process may cause a malfunction.

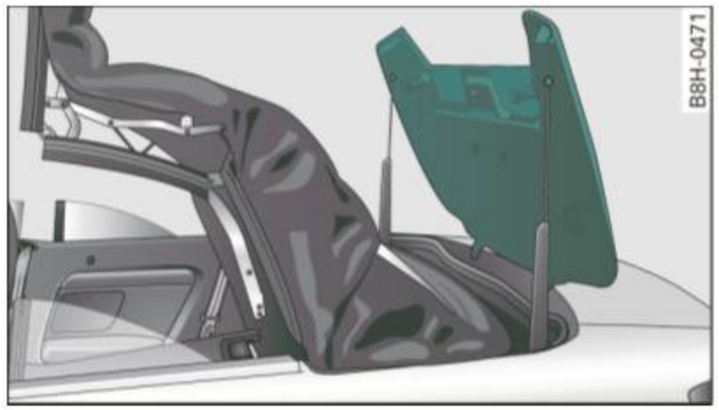


Fig. 57 Power top cover in end position

– Apply the hand brake.
– Switch the ignition off.
– Fold the power top cover upward until it engages.
– Stow the power top in the power top compartment.
– Turn on the ignition.
– Press or pull the switch for power top operation ⇒ *page 62*, fig. 52 until the power top is fully closed or open. ■

Wind deflector

Applies to vehicles: with wind deflector

General notes

The wind deflector reduces turbulent airflow inside the vehicle for greater comfort when driving with the power top open.

The optional wind deflector is stored in a bag in the luggage compartment. To prevent damage it should always be kept in this bag when not installed. Do not place heavy objects (e.g. crates or heavy shopping bags) on top of the wind deflector.

WARNING

- **The two rear seats must not be occupied when the wind deflector is installed.**
- **Do not place any objects on the horizontal surface of the wind deflector. The deflector is not designed to support loads. Be also aware that objects left there could be blown off by the airstream when the vehicle is moving. - Risk of injury!**

Note

When you adjust the front seats when the wind deflector is installed, be careful not to push the backrests into the wind deflector when reclining the seats or when moving them back. This can damage the deflector, especially the locking mechanism. ■

Applies to vehicles: with wind deflector

Unfolding the wind deflector

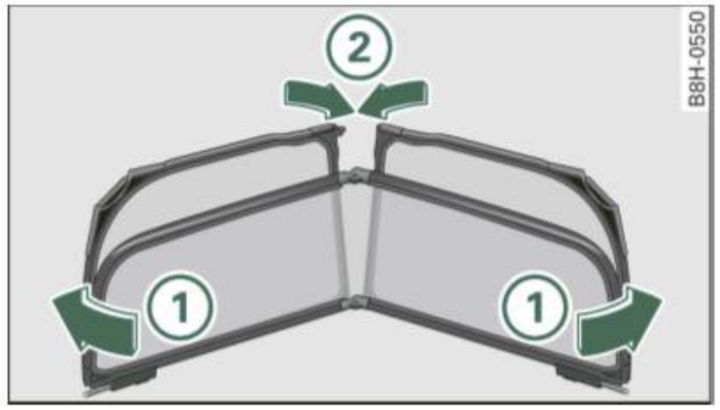


Fig. 58 Unfolding the wind deflector

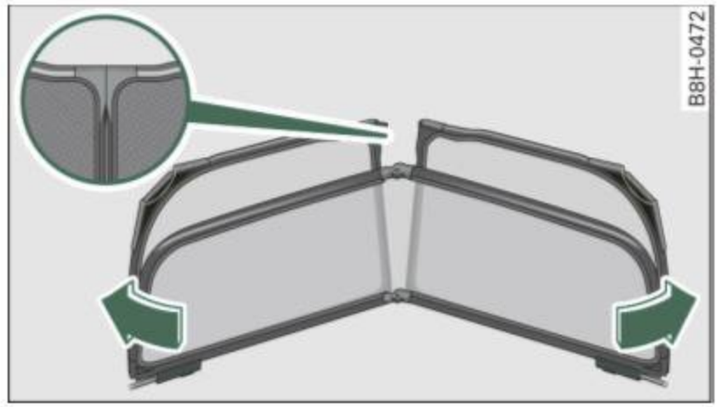


Fig. 59 Extending the fastener pegs

– Fold the two side sections outwards (1) ⇒ fig. 58. Hold the deflector facing slightly downward. This will cause the bottom section to fold out by itself.

– Bring the two side sections together and join them with the plug-in fastener (2).

– Pull out the two fastener pegs at the sides ⇒ fig. 59. ■

Applies to vehicles: with wind deflector

Installing the wind deflector

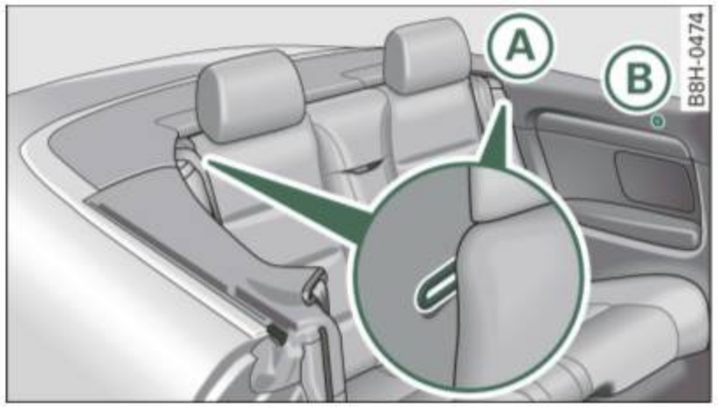


Fig. 60 Rear seats: location of peg mounts

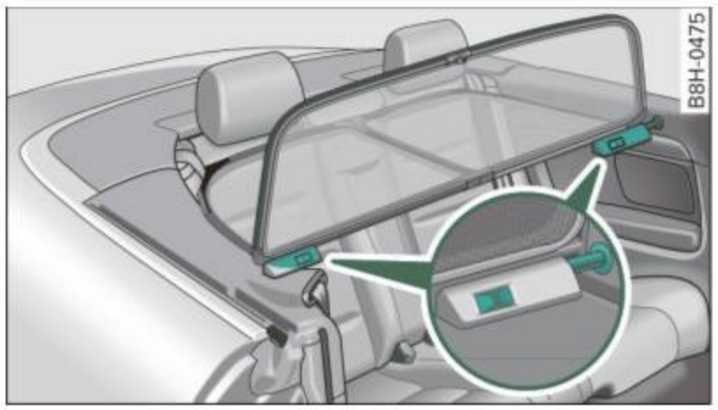


Fig. 61 Rear seats: fitting the wind deflector

– Align the wind deflector so its split section sits horizontally up against the backrest upholstery.

– Slide the two retainer pegs all the way into the mountings provided (A) ⇒ fig. 60.

– Press the arresting button and slide the locking pin ⇒ fig. 61 into the mounting hole (B). Do the same on the other side.

– Fold the single piece section up until it engages in the upright position.

The green markings on the locking pins *must* appear to indicate that the pins have been fully inserted into the mounting holes. ■

Removing the wind deflector

Trying to remove the wind deflector improperly will cause damage or destruction.

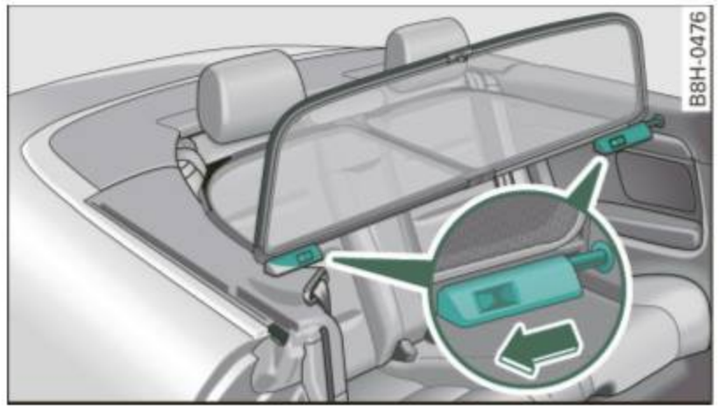


Fig. 62 Wind deflector: disengaging (detail shows left arresting pin)

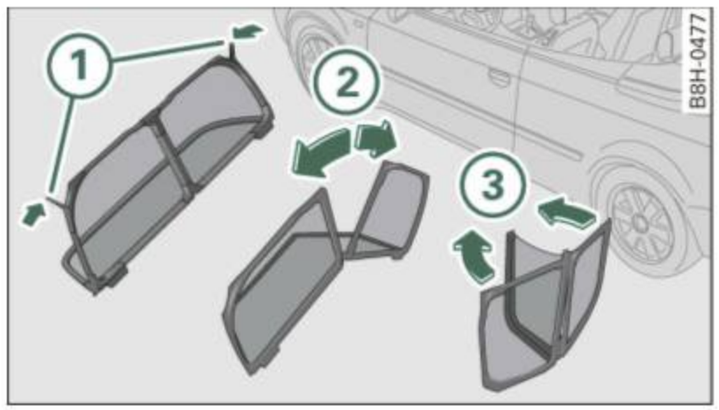


Fig. 63 Wind deflector: folding sequence

Follow the removal procedure exactly to avoid damage or destruction of the wind deflector. ▶

Removing

– Make sure the single piece section is folded up and engaged in the vertical position as illustrated ⇒ *page 67,* fig. 62.

– Push the arresting pin on each side inward until the arresting button (darker green in ⇒ *page 67,* fig. 62) pops up.

– Slightly slide the horizontal deflector section forward to clear the upholstery and then lift the deflector out of the vehicle.

– Turn the deflector so that its split section points up vertically as shown (1) ⇒ *page 67,* fig. 63

Folding

– Fold the retainer pegs flush against the frame, small arrows (1) ⇒ *page 67,* fig. 63.

– Grab the split section at the top on both sides of the joint and pull it apart in the direction of the bold arrows (2).

– Fold the split halves down until they meet at the bottom.

– Fold the split halves forward in the direction of bold arrows (3). ■

Operate the power top manually

General notes

The power top can be closed manually in the event of a malfunction.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Lower the windows.

– Remove the ignition key.

You should operate the power top manually *only if* automatic operation does not work. It is best to contact an Audi dealer to identify the cause of the malfunction.

Follow this procedure step by step to close the power top manually:

- **Release and open the storage bay cover:** you must use the manual release key to unlock the storage bay cover. Unlock the cover and swing it open.
- **Lift the power top out and unfold it:** lift the top out of the storage bay by hand and extend it forward to the windshield.
- **Lock the power top in place:** you must use the manual release key to properly engage and lock the power top to the windshield.

WARNING

- **Take care not to reach inside the linkage mechanism or any moving parts when you lift out and unfold the power top. Careless handling risks injuries to your hands and fingers!**
- **Never drive the car with a power top that is not securely locked in place. If it is not firmly engaged, the top can be blown open by the airstream and cause injuries and damage to the vehicle. - Risk of crash!**

Note

The trunk lid must be closed before opening the storage bay cover as otherwise the two panels can collide. This can cause considerable damage to the surfaces on both parts.

Tips

It is advisable to have a second person assist you with closing the power top. Particularly the part of folding up and extending the top ▶

forward goes much easier when done by two people. However, if no assistance is available, you may find it easier to position yourself on the rear seatbench and lift the power top up by grabbing it at the center. ■

Where is the manual release key stored?

The special key for manually opening the power top storage bay is located in a compartment behind the fuse cover.

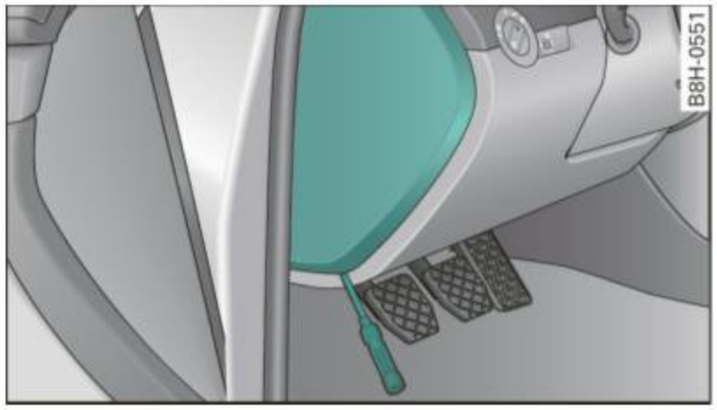


Fig. 64 Left end-face of dash panel



Fig. 65 Left end-face of dash panel: location of manual release key

– Remove the fuse cover using the ignition key or a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 64.

– Take the manual key out of its compartment ⇒ fig. 65. ■

How does the manual release key work?

The manual release key has two distinct configurations for insertion and actuation.

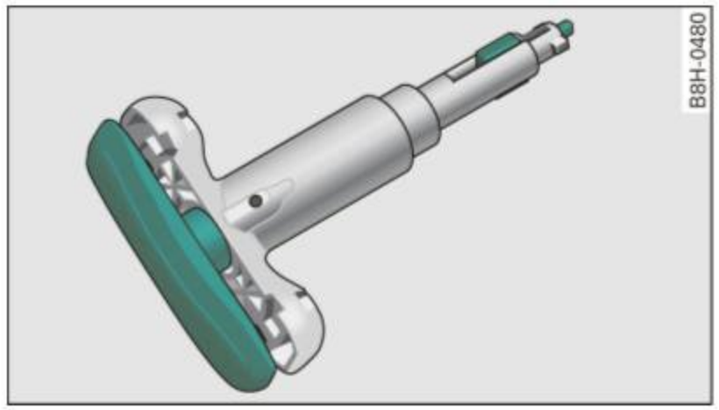


Fig. 66 Release key: configured for insertion

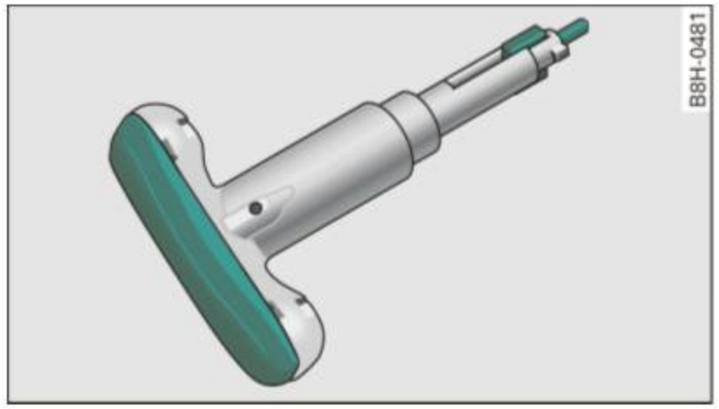


Fig. 67 Release key: configured for actuation

– Turn the red handle counter-clockwise as far as possible to configure the release key for insertion ⇒ fig. 66.

The release key is inserted and engaged in the power top locking mechanism with the key handle raised. Once inserted and engaged the key is reset for actuation to lock and unlock the mechanism. ■

Step 1: Unlocking the storage bay cover

The locking mechanism for the storage bay cover is located in the opening for the ski sack in the rear backrest.



Fig. 68 Rear seats: center section of rear backrest

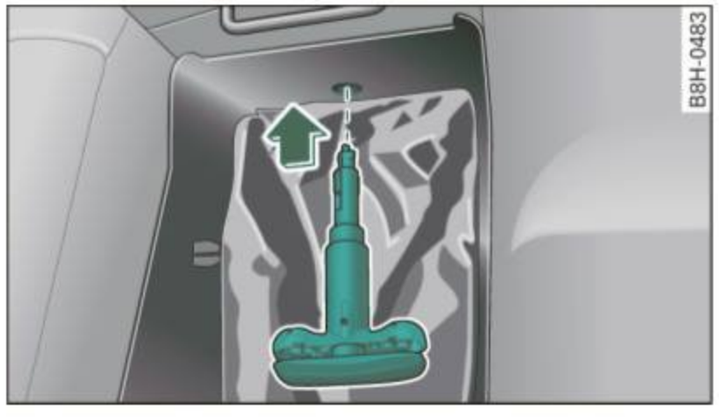


Fig. 69 Ski sack tunnel: hole for inserting the release key

The trunk lid must be closed before unlocking the storage bay cover.

– Close the trunk lid if not already closed.

– Press the tab down slightly and remove the center section of the rear backrest ⇒ fig. 68.

– Reach inside the finger holes and press the release catches together to open the cover flap for the ski sack.

– Push the ski sack down and if it still restricts access, pull it out somewhat, to reach the hole for inserting the release key ⇒ fig. 69.

Note

The trunk lid must be closed before opening the storage bay cover as otherwise the two panels can collide. This can cause considerable damage to the surfaces on both parts. ■

Step 2: Unlocking the storage bay cover

Use the manual release key to open the storage bay cover.

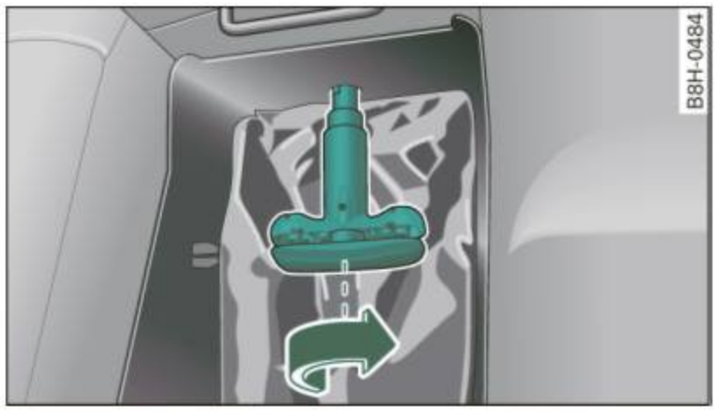


Fig. 70 Ski sack tunnel: release key inserted into locking mechanism

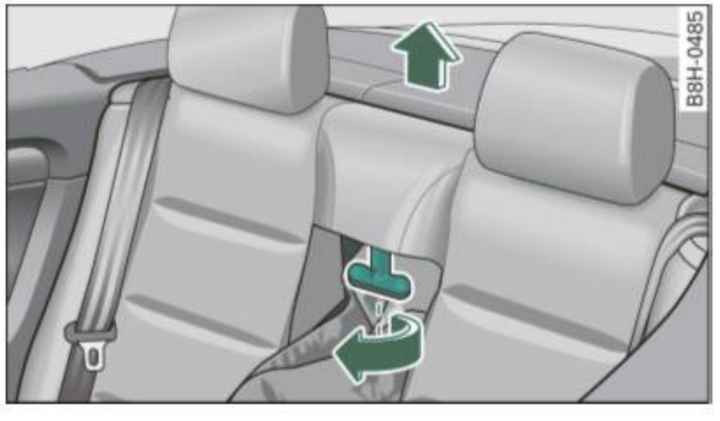


Fig. 71 Unlocking the storage bay cover

Inserting the release key into the locking mechanism

– The release key must be configured for insertion ⇒ *page 69,* fig. 66. Turn the red handle segment counter-clockwise to the stop to configure the key for insertion.

– Insert the release key into the hole in the roof of the ski sack tunnel ⇒ *page 70,* fig. 69.

– Turn the release key either way until you can feel the lugs at the tip of the key engage inside the locking mechanism.

– Rotate the release key a quarter turn clockwise to the stop. The release key is now *hanging engaged* in the locking mechanism of the storage bay cover ⇒ *page 70,* fig. 70.

Unlocking the storage bay cover

– Turn the red handle segment on the release key clockwise until it you can hear it engage.

– Turn the entire release key counter-clockwise to the stop. This unlocks the storage bay cover. It will spring up slightly out of the latches ⇒ *page 70,* fig. 71. ■

Step 3: Opening the storage bay cover

The storage bay cover must now be folded up to the stop.

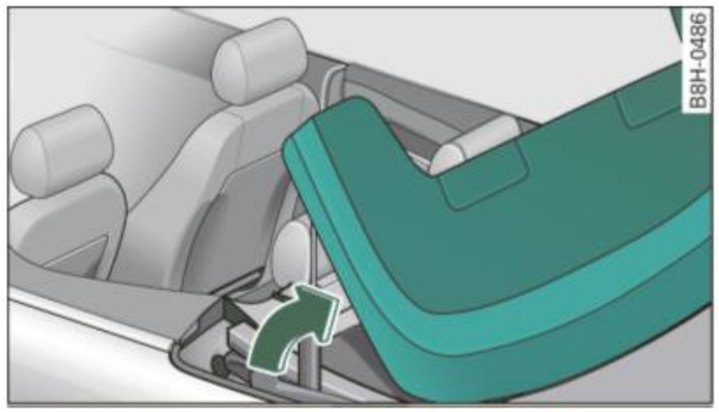


Fig. 72 Opening the storage bay cover

– Pull up the storage bay cover ⇒ fig. 72.

– Open the storage bay cover as far as it will go. It will stay open by itself in the upright position ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Make absolutely sure that the storage bay cover is opened all the way to the upright position. It will stay open in this position by itself. If it is not lifted up to the fully open position, the storage bay cover can drop back down onto you or another person in its path. - Risk of injury! ■

Step 4: Extending the power top forward

The power top must be lifted out and extended by hand.

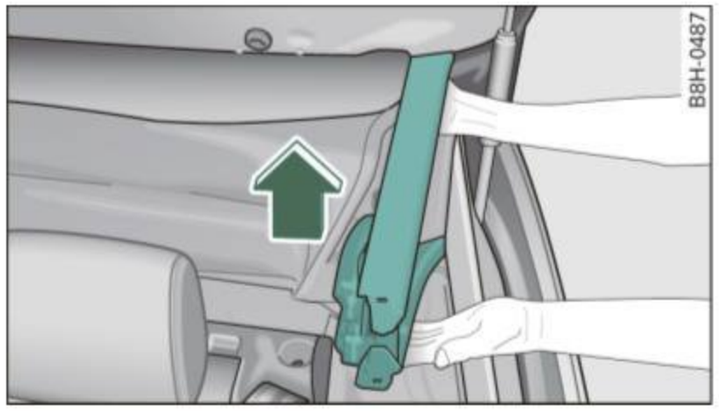


Fig. 73 Lifting the power top out by hand

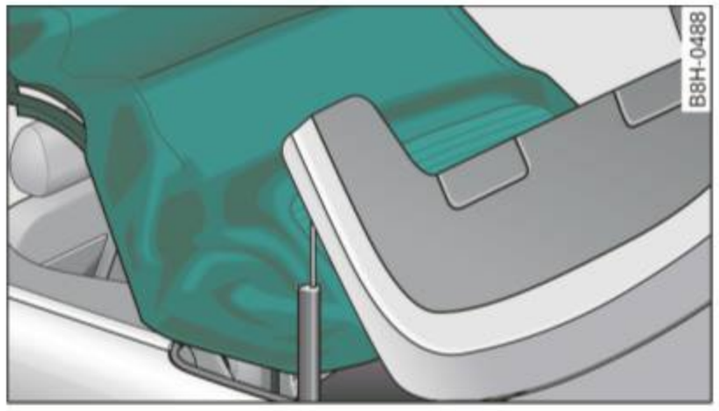


Fig. 74 Power top extended halfway

– Lift the power top out of the storage bay ⇒ fig. 73 ⇒ ⚠.

– Keep lifting the power top until it keeps its position by itself ⇒ fig. 74.

It is advisable to have a second person assist you with lifting the power top up.

Lift the power top out of the storage bay as shown in the illustration ⇒ fig. 73. Have the second person stand on the other side of the car and lift up the top just like you do.

⚠ WARNING

Take care not to reach inside the linkage mechanism or any moving parts when you lift out and unfold the power top. Careless handling can result in injuries to your hands and fingers! ■

Step 5: Closing the storage bay cover

You must now close the storage bay cover again.

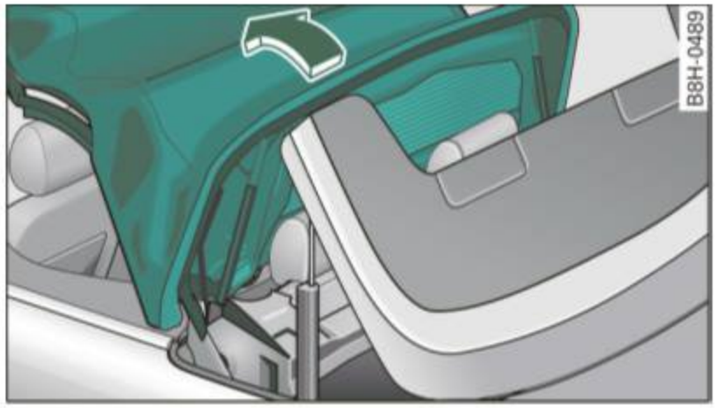


Fig. 75 Raising the base frame straight up

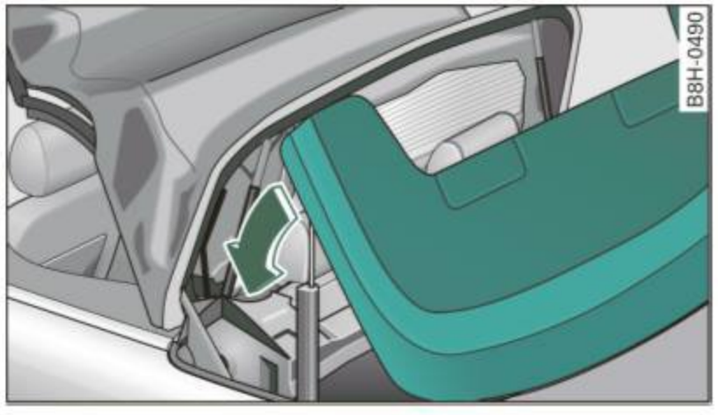


Fig. 76 Lowering the storage bay cover

– Raise the soft top base frame with the rear window straight up ⇒ fig. 75. The frame will stay upright by itself. ▶

– Press down the storage bay to close it ⇒ *page 72,* fig. 76. The storage bay cover will slide back into its catches ⇒ ⚠.

Do not use force when pressing down the storage bay cover. The cover will not close completely at this stage of the procedure: there will still be a gap between the body and the storage cover.

⚠ WARNING

Take care that neither you nor any other person get caught with the hands below the storage bay cover when closing it. Careless handling can result in injuries to hands and fingers! ■

Step 6: Locking the top cover

You must now lock the storage bay again.

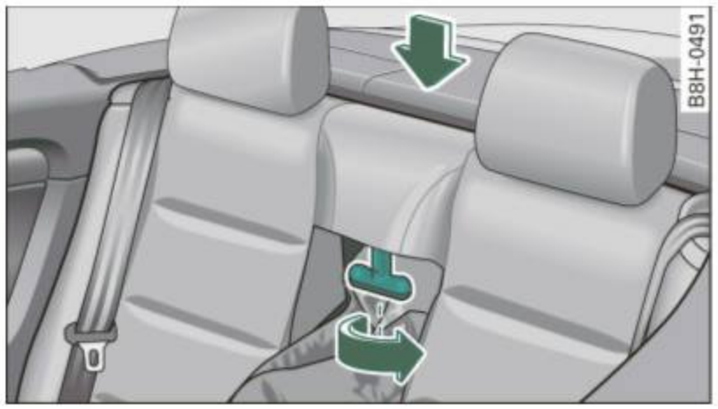


Fig. 77 Locking the storage bay cover

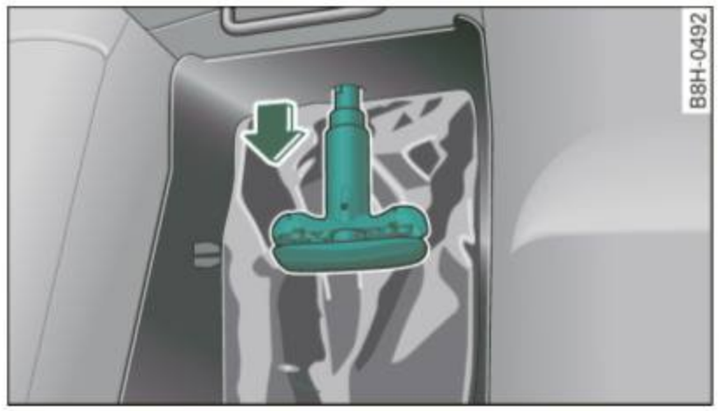


Fig. 78 Taking the manual release key out

Locking the storage bay cover

– Turn the release key clockwise as far as it will go ⇒ fig. 77. The storage bay cover will now settle down and lock in position.

Taking the manual release key out

– Turn the red handle segment on the release key counter-clockwise to the stop.

– Turn the entire release key counter-clockwise and then pull it down and out of the mechanism ⇒ fig. 78. The storage bay cover is now fully locked. ■

Step 7: Closing the power top

Front and base frame must be brought into position manually.

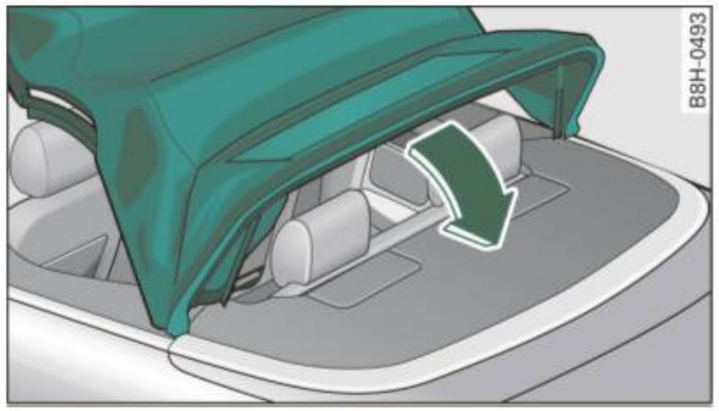


Fig. 79 Base frame

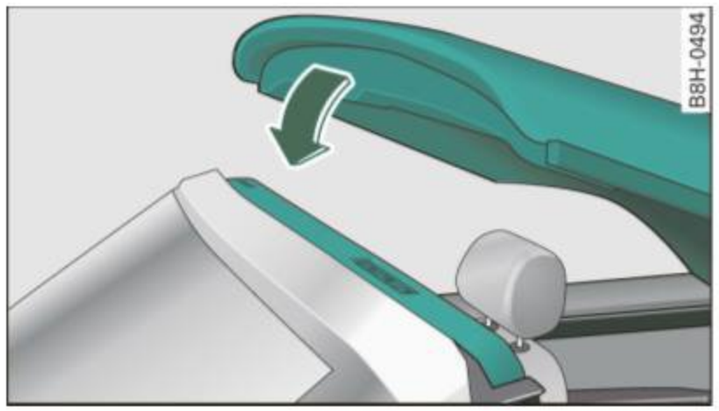


Fig. 80 Windshield: front frame

– Press down the base frame ⇒ fig. 79 until it meets the storage bay cover.

– Press the front frame down against the windscreen frame ⇒ fig. 80.

⚠ WARNING

Take care that neither you nor another person get your hands caught when pushing the base frame down onto the storage bay

⚠ WARNING (continued)

cover, or when pushing the front frame down against the windshield frame. - Risk of injury! ■

Step 8: Locking the power top

The mechanism to engage the power top latches is located on the inside of the power top frame.

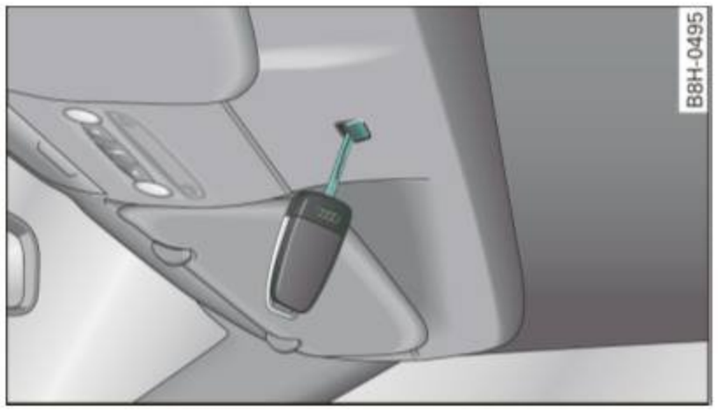


Fig. 81 Power top inside: removing the cap

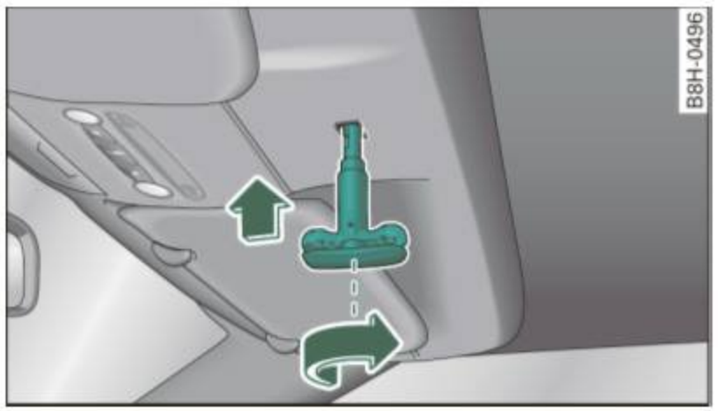


Fig. 82 Power top inside: inserting and turning the key

Removing the cap

– Use the ignition key to remove the small cap centered in the power top forward panel ⇒ fig. 81. The opening for inserting the manual release key is behind this cap. ▶

Inserting the release key into the locking mechanism

- The release key must be configured for insertion ⇒ *page 69,* fig. 66. If necessary, turn the red handle segment counterclockwise as far as it will go to configure the key for insertion.
- Insert the release key into the opening ⇒ *page 74,* fig. 82.
- Turn the release key until you can feel the lugs at the tip of the key engage inside the locking mechanism.
- Rotate the release key a quarter turn clockwise to the stop. The release key is now *hanging engaged* in the locking mechanism. ■

Step 9: Locking the power top

The power top has to be locked in position using the manual release key.

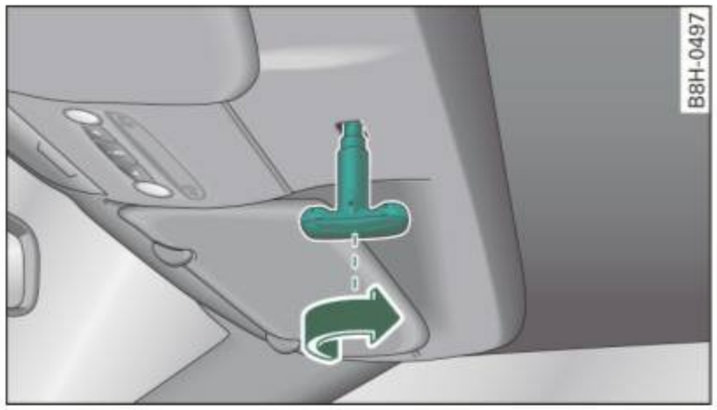


Fig. 83 Power top inside: engaging the power top

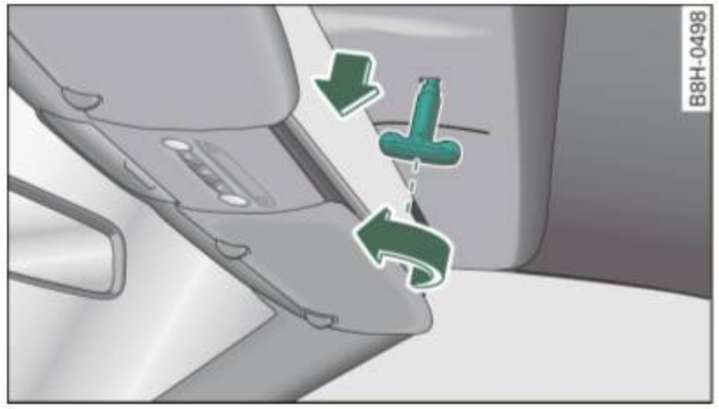


Fig. 84 Power top inside: locking the power top

Locking the power top

- Turn the red handle segment on the release key until you can hear it engage.
- Turn the entire release key clockwise to the stop ⇒ fig. 83. This opens the latches on the inside of the power top and causes the top to spring up slightly.
- Pull the power top down with the release key ⇒ fig. 84 and simultaneously turn the key counter-clockwise as far as it will go. The power top is now locked.

Removing the manual release key

- Turn the red handle segment on the release key counter-clockwise as far as it will go.
- Turn the entire key counter-clockwise and then pull it down and out.
- Fit the cap back into the opening and put the manual release key back into its storage compartment behind the fuse box cover.

The top is now completely closed. Please contact an Audi dealer as soon as possible to identify the cause of the malfunction of the power closing mechanism. ■

Clear vision

Lights

Switching the headlights on and off

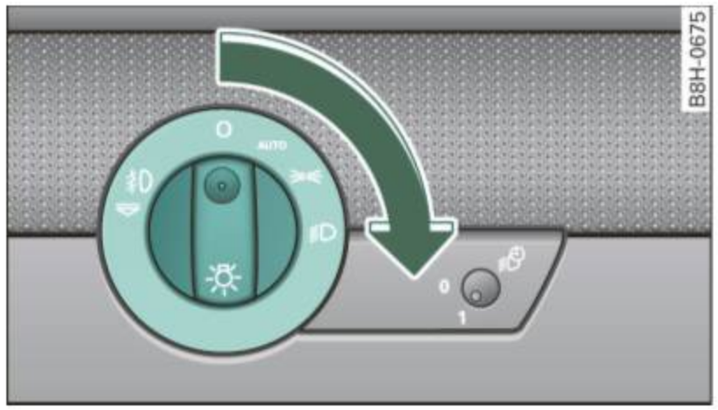


Fig. 85 Instrument panel: light switch

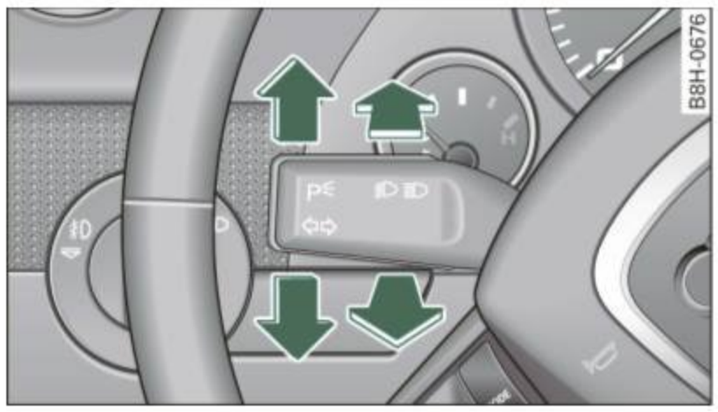


Fig. 86 Turn signal lever: high beam ON/OFF

All switch positions refer to the indentation on the switch aligned with the specified symbol. The light switch must not be overturned past the stops in **either** direction.

Switching on the side marker lights

– Turn the light switch light to ⇒ fig. 85 ≡D.

Switching on the headlights and high beam

– Turn the light switch to ≡D.

– Push the turn signal lever forward towards the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 86, to turn on the high beam, pull the lever back to turn it off ⇒ *page 83*.

Switching off the lights

– Turn the light switch to **O**.

The headlights only work when the ignition is switched on. While starting the engine or when switching off the ignition, the headlights will go off and only the side marker lights will remain lit.

⚠ WARNING

Crashes can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

- **Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your car from the back.**

Tips

- If you remove the ignition from the ignition lock while the headlights are still on, a buzzer will sound as long as the driver's door is open to remind you to switch off the lights.
- Always observe the specific local regulations for your area when to use your lights. ■

Applies to vehicles: with light sensor package

Sensor activated head- and tail light control

In the "AUTO" position, light sensors monitor outside light conditions and switch the head- and tail lights on and off as required.



Fig. 87 Instrument panel: light switch at AUTO position

Activating

– Turn the light switch ⇒ fig. 87 to position **AUTO**.

Deactivating

– Turn the light switch to position **O**.

In the switch position **AUTO** the **automatic head- and tail light control** is activated. The corresponding symbol on the light switch is lit.

Light sensors located in the inside mirror housing and stem constantly check the light conditions surrounding the vehicle. If ambient brightness falls below a factory set value (e.g. when driving into a tunnel), the head- and taillights including the license plate illumination are automatically turned on. When ambient brightness increases again, the external lights are turned off again ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Automatic head- and taillight control is only intended to assist the driver. This feature does not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog and rain cannot be detected by the light sensors. Consequently, always switch the headlights on under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.**
- **Crashes can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.**
- **Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your car from the back.**

Tips

- In the **AUTO** mode, the low beams are turned off when the ignition is turned off. The remaining lights are turned off when the key is taken out of the ignition lock.
- Do not attach stickers to the windshield in front of the sensors as this can disable the automatic head- and taillight control and the automatic glare-dimming of the rearview mirror(s).
- Always observe the specific local regulations for your area when to use your lights.
- In the event of a light sensor malfunction, the driver information display will show the symbol . If a light sensor malfunction is indicated, you must use the light switch to turn the low beams on and off. ■

Applies to vehicles: with daytime running lights

Daytime running lights (DRL) (USA models)

Use the activation switch to turn the daytime running lights on or off.

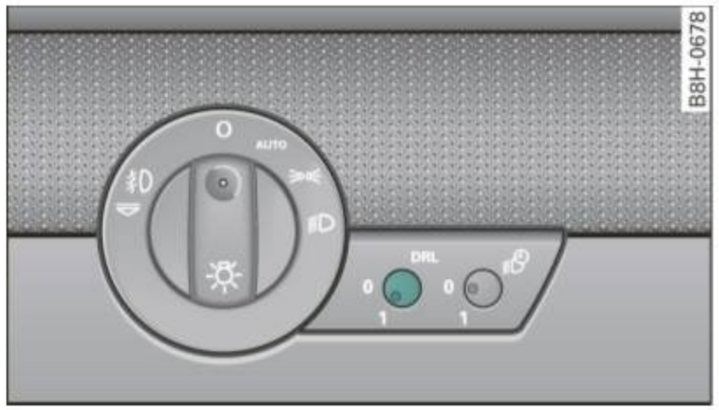


Fig. 88 Switch for daytime running lights

Activating functions

– Tap the knob ⇒ fig. 88 to disengage it from the settings position.

– Rotate the knob to position **1**.

– Then press the knob in again to prevent unintentional adjustment.

Deactivating functions

– Tap the knob ⇒ fig. 88 to disengage it from the settings position.

– Rotate the knob to position **0**.

– Then press the knob in again to prevent unintentional adjustment.

The daytime running lights can be turned on or off using this function. If the function is active, the daytime running lights are turned on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The daytime running lights are activated **only** when the light switch ⇒ *page 76,* fig. 85 is at the **O** position.

WARNING

Never use daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Be aware of changes in outside light conditions when you are driving and respond by switching on your low beams ≡D.

Note

Always be aware of changes in outside light conditions while you are driving. Respond in time to fading daylight by turning the light switch to position ≡D (or "AUTO" if your car is equipped with this feature) **to turn on your headlights.** ■

Daytime running lights (Canada models only)

When you turn on the ignition the daytime running lights will come on automatically.

When the ignition is switched on, the front fog lights, side marker lights and taillights come on automatically. The daytime running lights are activated **only** when the light switch ⇒ *page 76,* fig. 85 is either at the **O** or the ≡D position.

WARNING

Never use daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Be aware of changes in outside light conditions when you are driving and respond by switching on your low beams ≡D.

Note

- **With the light switch at the O or position, only your front fog lights remain turned on when it turns dark outside. Even though your instruments appear well lit, the road ahead of you is not. The light pattern provided by fog lights alone is not sufficient for safe driving in poor light or darkness. Therefore:**
- **Always be aware of changes in outside light conditions while you are driving. Respond in time to fading daylight by turning the light switch to position** (or "AUTO" if your car is equipped with this feature) **to turn on your headlights.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive light

Adaptive light

When driving around bends, the relevant area of the road is better illuminated.

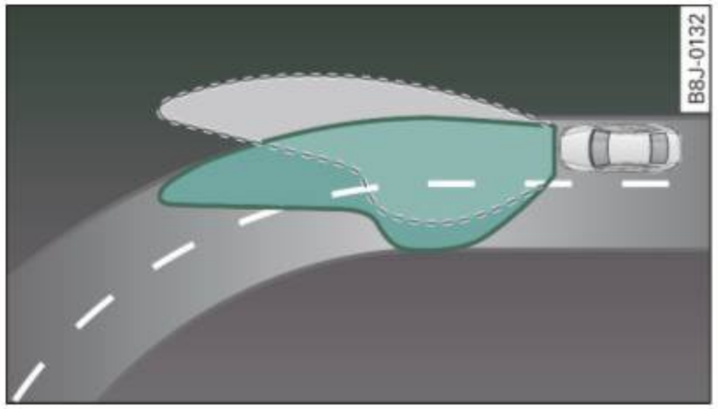


Fig. 89 adaptive light when driving

The benefit of adaptive light is that the curve and the edge of the road are better illuminated ⇒ fig. 89. Dynamic adaptive light is controlled automatically, depending on vehicle speed and steering wheel angle.

When driving around bends, the headlights are controlled according to steering wheel angle. So that there is no black hole ahead of the vehicle, the two main beams pivot at different angles.

Tips

The system works above a speed of about 12 mph (20 km/h). ■

Front fog lights

Use the light switch to switch on the front fog light.

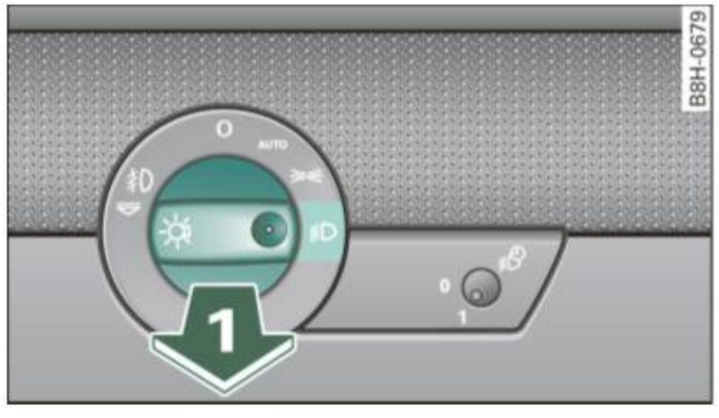


Fig. 90 Fog light activation: light switch position

Switching on the front fog lights

– Turn the light switch to or to .

– Pull the light switch to the *first* stop (1).

When the front fog lights are on, the symbol next to the light switch will illuminate. ■

Applies to vehicles: equipped with Light sensor package

Coming home/leaving home function

The coming home/leaving home function switches on the external lights on a vehicle parked in the dark to illuminate the surroundings.

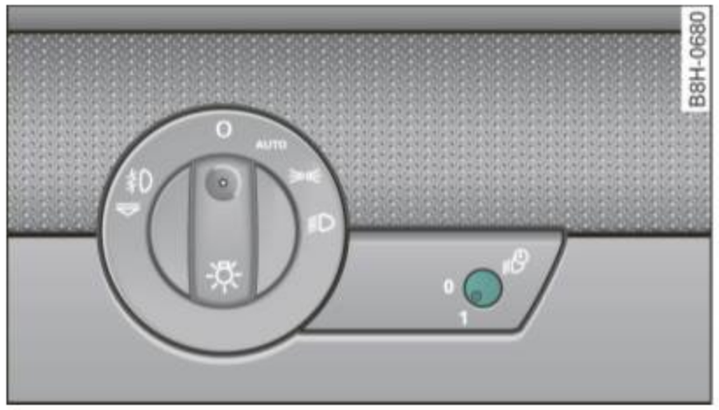


Fig. 91 Dashboard detail: coming home/leaving home switch beside light switch

Activating the function

– Briefly press the knob ⇒ fig. 91 *(colored dot)* so it will stand out from the panel.

– Turn the knob to position **1**.

– Push the knob back in to secure its setting.

Deactivating the function

– Briefly press the knob ⇒ fig. 91 so it will stand out from the panel.

– Turn the knob to position **0**.

– Push the knob back in to secure its setting.

The coming home/leaving home function is controlled by light sensors located in the inside mirror housing and stem. The system is activated if all of the conditions below are fulfilled:

- the knob has been turned to position **1**
- the driving lights and the ignition have been switched off
- the vehicle is parked in poor light or darkness with the sensors detecting little or no light at all.

Coming home situation

In **darkness**, the *activated* system will turn on the *front fog lights, tail lights, and rear licence plate light* as soon as the driver's door is opened from inside.

As long as one of the doors or the rear lid remains open, the set of external lights will keep burning for about two minutes maximum.

To provide light for departure, the set of vehicle lights will keep burning for about another 30 seconds after all doors and the rear lid have been closed.

The factory-set time of 30 seconds until the lights are switched off can be adjusted if you prefer a longer or shorter duration. Have the adjustment done by your Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. The system can be adjusted to keep the lights burning for a maximum of 60 seconds.

Leaving home situation

As soon as the vehicle is unlocked by pressing the button on your remote control, the set of external lights is switched on.

The external lights are switched off as soon as the driver's door is opened from outside. Even if you had the system readjusted to keep the lights burning for an extended time for *coming home*, the external lights will be turned off if you do not open the driver's door within 60 seconds after unlocking see chapter “Opening and Closing” in your Owner's Manual. If the lights are switched off before you reach the driver's door, press the button once more to turn them on again.

Tips

- Do not attach any stickers to the windshield in front of the two light sensors, as this would interfere with both the automatic operation of the headlights and the automatic dimming of the inside mirror(s).
- If the vehicle is remotely unlocked and locked *three times in succession*, leaving home will not turn on the lights a fourth time to safeguard the battery and lights.
- If you wish to use the coming home/leaving home function regularly, you can leave it activated at all times without risking permanent strain on the electrical system. As the system is controlled by light sensors, it will only be energized in darkness.
- Frequent use of the coming home/leaving home function for approaching and departing a vehicle parked in the dark will strain the battery. This applies particularly if only short distances are driven between stops. Occasionally drive longer distances to make sure the battery is recharged sufficiently.
- If the fog lights have been switched on by the coming home/leaving home function, they will always be switched off when you switch on the ignition. ■

Instrument panel illumination

The illumination of the instruments, displays and the center console can be adjusted.



Fig. 92 Instrument panel illumination

– Press the "+" button to increase the brightness.

– Press the "-" button to reduce the brightness.

Ignition ON, light switch at ⓞ.

With the ignition switched ON, the glow of *instrument needles* can be adjusted to appear brighter or dimmer.

Ignition ON, light switch at ≡D or ≡D.

With the lights switched on, the brightness of instrument cluster (i.e. needles, gauges and displays) and center console illumination can be adjusted.

Note

The instrument cluster and center console illumination (gauges and needles) comes on when you switch on the ignition and the **vehicle headlights are off**. Be aware of the following difference between models built to US or Canadian specifications:

- **USA models: illumination of the instrument cluster (gauges and needles), dash and center console around the gearshift lever is controlled by a light sensor located in the instrument panel. The** ▶

instrument panel illumination will automatically become dimmer as the daylight fades away and eventually will go out completely when outside light is very low. This is to remind you, the driver, to switch on the headlights before it gets too dark.

- **Canada models: instrument panel illumination will stay bright regardless of the intensity of ambient light. Always be aware of changes in outside light conditions while you are driving. Respond in time to fading daylight by turning the light switch to position** (or "AUTO" if your car is equipped with this feature) **to turn on your headlights.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with xenon headlights

Xenon headlights

After starting the engine, the xenon headlights are automatically adjusted to the load and angle of the vehicle (for example, during acceleration and braking). This prevents oncoming traffic from experiencing unnecessary glare from your headlights.

If the system is not operating properly, a warning symbol in the Auto-Check Control is displayed ⇒ *page 34*. ■

Emergency flasher

The emergency flasher makes other motorists aware that you or your vehicle are in an emergency situation.

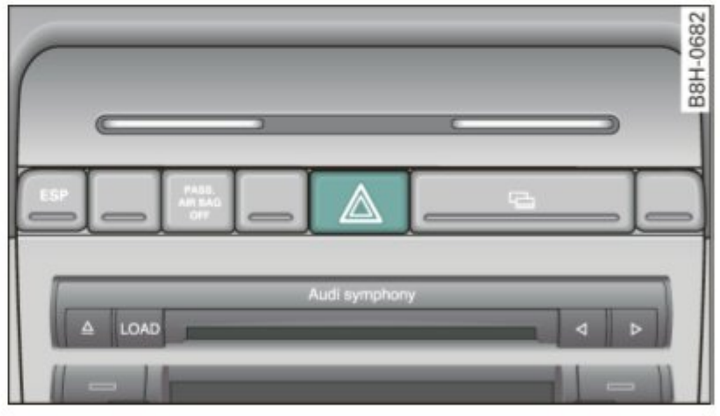


Fig. 93 Center console: emergency flasher switch

– Press the switch ⚠ ⇒ fig. 93, to switch the emergency flasher on or off.

When the emergency flasher is on, all four turn signal blink at the same time. The turn signal indicator lights ⇦ ⇨ in the instrument cluster, as well as the light in the emergency flasher switch ⚠ blink likewise.

The emergency flasher will automatically switch on if you are in an accident where the airbag has deployed.

Tips

You should switch on the emergency flasher when:

- you are the last vehicle standing in a traffic jam so that any other vehicles coming can see you, or when
- your vehicle has broken down or you are in an emergency situation, or when
- your vehicle is being towed by a tow truck or if you are towing another vehicle behind you. ■

Turn signals - ⇦ ⇨ and high beam ≡D lever

The lever on the left side of the steering column is used to operate the turn signals and the high beam as well as the headlight flasher.

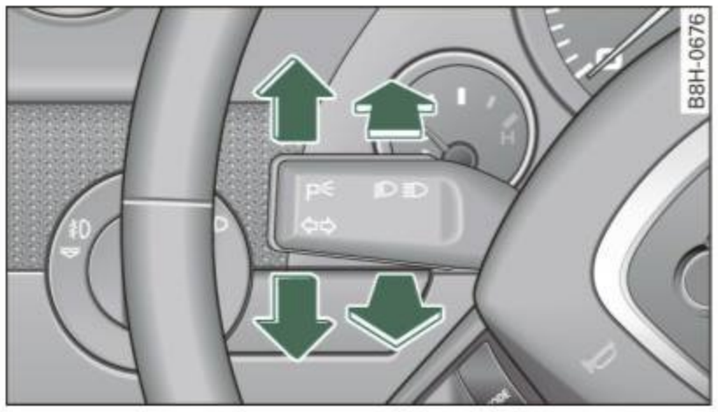


Fig. 94 Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal and high beam lever has the following functions:

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

– To indicate a *right turn*, move the lever *up* until it engages.

– To indicate a *left turn*, move the lever *down* until it engages.

Auto-blink

– Move the lever (up or down) just to the point of resistance to use the turn signals for as long as you need them, for example when changing lanes.

– Move the lever (up or down) just to the point of resistance and then release it *immediately* to make the turn signals flash *three times*. You can use this feature when changing lanes on highways.

High beam ≡D

– Press the lever forward to switch on the high beam.

– Pull the lever back toward you to switch off the high beam.

Headlight flasher ≡D

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to use the headlight flasher.

Notes on these features

- The *turn signals* only work with the ignition switched on. The indicator lights ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 18* also blink.
- After you have turned a corner, the turn signal switches off automatically.
- The *high beam* works only when the headlights are on. The indicator light ≡D in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are on.
- The *headlight flasher* works only as long as you hold the lever - even if there are no lights switched on. The indicator light ≡D in the instrument cluster illuminates when you use the headlight flasher.

Note

Do not use the high beam or headlight flasher if you know that these could be blinding oncoming traffic. ■

Interior lights

Interior lights

The interior lights include the both reading lights for the driver and the front passenger.

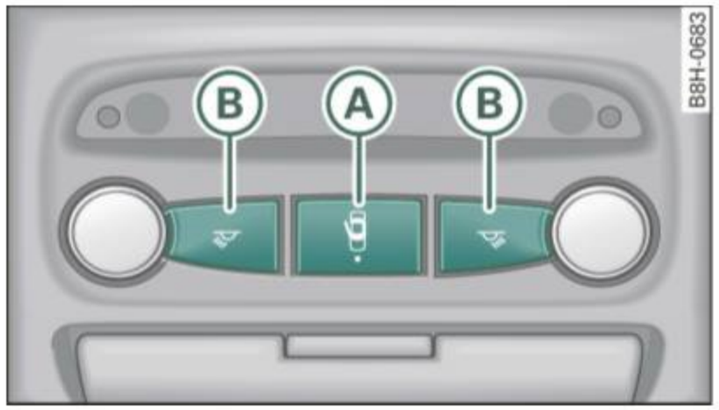


Fig. 95 Control panel above windshield: interior lights

Activating door contact switch

– Press button (A). The light in the button comes on.

Deactivating door contact switch

– Press button (A). The light in the button goes out.

Front reading lights

– Press right or left switch (B) to turn the *front reading light* on your side on or off.

When you have the interior light switch moved to the door contact position (center position), the interior light illuminate whenever you unlock the vehicle or when you open a door. The interior light goes out after approximately 30 seconds after you have closed the door. Also, when you lock your vehicle or switch on the ignition, the interior light goes out.

If you leave a door open, the interior light will go out after ten minutes so that it does not drain the battery.

A dimmer automatically controls the brightness of the lights when they are switched on. ■

Luggage compartment light

These lights inside the luggage compartment come on automatically when the rear lid is opened. The lights turn off automatically if the lid is left open for more then 10 minutes. ■

Vision

Sun visors

Using the sun visors makes driving safer.



Fig. 96 Sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be removed from their center mountings and moved toward the door windows (1) ⇒ fig. 96 to protect against side glare.

The vanity mirror in the sun visors is covered by a lid. When you lift the lid (2) the mirror illumination automatically illuminates. When you close the lid or fold the sun visor back up, the illumination also goes out. ■

Wiper and washer system

Windshield wiper

The windshield wiper lever controls both the windshield wipers and the washer system.

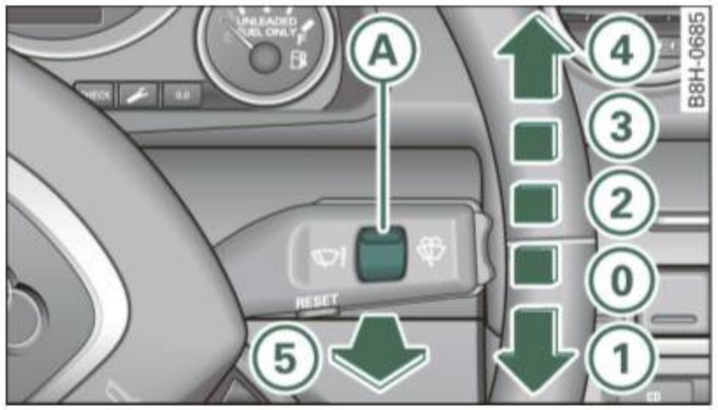


Fig. 97 Windshield wiper: lever positions

The windshield wiper lever ⇒ fig. 97 has the following positions:

One-touch wiping

– Move the lever to position (1), when you want to wipe the windshield *briefly*.

Intermittent wiping (activating rain sensor)*

– Move the lever up to position (2).

– Move switch (A) up or down, to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor or to adjust the intermittent interval.

Low wiper speed

– Move the lever up to position (3).

High wiper speed

– Move the lever up to position (4).

Automatic wiper/washer

– Pull the lever to position (5) (toward the steering wheel) and hold.

– Release the lever. The washer stops and the wipers keep going for about four seconds.

Turning off the wipers

– Move the lever back to position (0).

The windshield wipers and washer only work when the ignition is turned on.

The rain sensor* is only activated with the wiper lever set to position (2). When it starts to rain, the rain sensor will automatically activate the intermittent wiping mode.

To reduce the sensitivity of the sensor, move switch (A) down. To increase the sensitivity, move the switch up. The higher you adjust the sensitivity, the faster the sensor will react when it senses moisture on the windshield. The pauses between wiper turns depend not only on the sensitivity setting, but on the vehicle speed as well.

During brief stops, e.g. at a red light, wiper motion will automatically be reduced to the next lower speed. Wipers already turning at low speed. change to intermittent wiping.

When the ignition is turned on, the washer jets are heated.

With the low beam headlights switched on, pull the wiper lever towards you only *briefly* to clean the windshield. Holding the wiper lever would also engage the headlight washer system each time you clean the windshield and would drain the washer fluid reservoir prematurely.

WARNING

- **Wiper blades are crucial for safe driving! Only when they are in good condition are they able to clear the windows properly to provide uncompromised visibility. Worn or damaged wiper blades are a safety hazard ⇒ *page 87,* "Installing new wiper blades"!**
- **The rain sensor is only designed to assist and support the driver. It remains entirely the driver's responsibility to monitor outside weather conditions and to manually activate the wipers as soon as rain or drizzle reduces visibility through the windshield.**
- **The windshield must not be treated with water-repellent materials. They can increase glare under poor visibility conditions such as wetness, darkness, or when the sun is low on the horizon. In addition, they can cause the windshield wipers to chatter.**

Note

In freezing or near freezing conditions:

- Always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before you turn the wipers on. Loosen a wiper blade which is frozen in place before operating the wipers to prevent damage to the wiper blade or the wiper motor.
- Do not use the wipers to clear a frosted window. Using the wipers as a convenient ice scraper will destroy the wiper blades.
- Before you take your vehicle to an automatic car wash, make sure you have the windshield wiper system switched off (lever in position 0), otherwise the windshield wiper system could get damaged in the car wash if it should suddenly come on.

Tips

- The rain sensor is part of the interval wiping system. Turning off the ignition will also deactivate the rain sensor. To reactivate the sensor, switch off the interval wiping function, then switch it back on again.
- If you switch off the ignition with the windshield wiper lever still in the interval wipe position and then come back a while later and drive off, the rain sensor will reactivate itself after the vehicle speed has exceeded 4 mph (6 km/h).
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades cause smearing which can affect the operation of the rain sensor. Check the condition of your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- Make sure the washer fluid reservoir in the engine compartment is topped off before going on a long trip. Look up ⇒ *page 266* for checking and filling the washer container. ■

Headlight washer system

The headlight washer system cleans the headlights.

– Operate the windshield wiper/washer system, lever position (5) ⇒ *page 85,* fig. 97, with the headlights switched on by holding the lever for longer than one second.

The washer jets extend forward out of the front bumper driven by water pressure to spray the front headlights with water.

You should inspect the headlights regularly (for example when refueling) and clean off any solid dirt or insects from the lenses.

To ensure the system works properly in winter, keep the washer jets free of snow and remove any ice using a de-icing spray. ■

Installing new wiper blades

Wiper blades in good condition help keep the windshield clear.



Fig. 98 Removing the wiper blade, driver's side

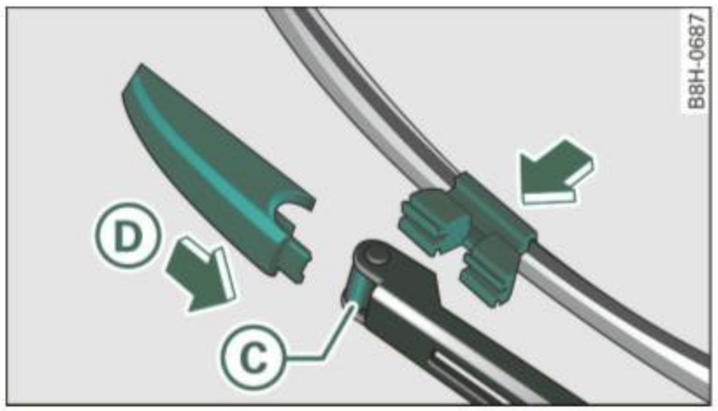


Fig. 99 Installing new wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

– Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield.

– Hold wiper arm and slide the blade retainer clip off the wiper arm end, arrow (A) ⇒ fig. 98.

– Take the blade off the wiper arm, arrow (B).

Installing a new wiper blade

– Slide the retainer clip on the new blade back to expose the connector plug.

– Insert the plug into the matching recess on the wiper arm (C) ⇒ fig. 99.

– Push with your thumb on the blunt end of the retainer clip to insert the clip with its tab into the wiper arm profile , arrow (D).

– Keep pushing the clip in *until only a small gap remains between the retainer clip and the end of the wiper arm.* Only after the new blade has engaged with a faint click is it securely attached to the wiper arm.

– Fold the wiper arm back onto the windshield.

Clean your wiper blades regularly with a windshield washer solution to prevent streaking. If the blades are very dirty, for example with insects, carefully clean the blades with a sponge or a soft brush.

If the wiper blades begin to streak the windshield, this could be caused by residue left on the windshield by automatic car washes.

Fill the windshield washer container with a special solution available at your authorized Audi dealer to remove the residue.

Be sure to inspect the condition of your wiper blades regularly. For safety reasons, replace your wiper blades once or twice a year if necessary. See your authorized Audi dealer for replacement blades.

⚠ WARNING

- **Clean your wiper blades regularly with a windshield washer solution to prevent streaking. If the wiper blades are very dirty, for example with insects, carefully clean the wiper blades with a sponge or a soft brush.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **For your safety, you should replace the wiper blades once or twice a year. See your authorized Audi dealer for replacement blades.**

Note

To prevent damage to the wiper system:

- Always loosen blades which are frozen to the windshield before operating wipers.
- Do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near the wiper blades.
- Do not attempt to move the wipers by hand.

Tips

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes affect the cleanability of the glass surface. ■

Mirrors

Manual glare-dimming

Standard setting

– Move the small lever (located on the bottom edge of the mirror) to the front.

Anti-glare setting

– Move the small lever (located on the bottom edge of the mirror) to the rear. ■

Applies to vehicles: with automatically dimming inside mirror

Automatically dimming inside mirror

The automatic dimming function can be turned on and off if required.

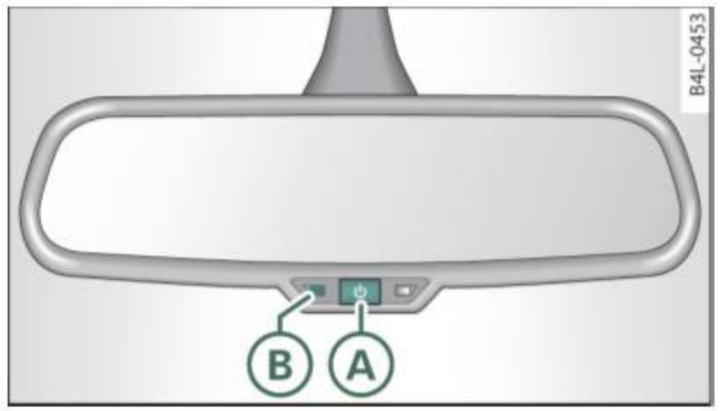


Fig. 100 Inside rear-view mirror

Disabling auto dimming

– Press button Ⓐ *briefly*, - the green indicator light Ⓑ goes out.

Activating/reactivating auto dimming

– Press button Ⓐ *briefly*, - the green indicator light Ⓑ goes on.

Automatic dimming function

The automatic dimming function is activated every time the ignition is turned on. The green indicator light is lit to indicate auto dimming is active.

When dimming is activated, the inside mirror will darken *automatically* in response to the amount of light striking the mirror (such as headlights from rearward approaching vehicles). Even in dimming mode, the mirror surface turns bright when:

- the interior light is switched on
- reverse gear is engaged.

▶

WARNING

The glass of the inside rearview mirror is layered and contains an electrolyte to achieve its properties. Be aware of liquid electrolyte leaking from a broken mirror glass. This liquid can cause irritation to skin, eyes, and respiratory system. If you get electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with plenty of water. If irritation persists, seek medical attention.

Note

Liquid electrolyte leaked from a broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte immediately with clear water and a sponge.

Tips

- **If you switch off the automatic dimming function on the inside mirror, automatic dimming of the outside mirrors will likewise be disabled.**
- Check to make sure there are no objects preventing light from reaching the inside mirror.
- Do not attach any stickers to the windshield in front of the light sensor, as this would interfere with the automatic operation of the headlights and the automatic dimming of the inside mirror. ■

Outside mirrors

The outside mirrors are electrically adjusted.

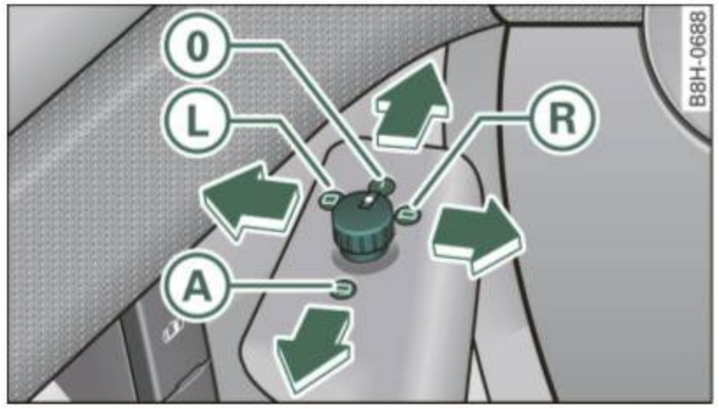


Fig. 101 Forward section of driver's armrest: power mirror controls

Adjusting the outside mirrors

– Turn the adjusting knob to position (L) ⇒ fig. 101 to adjust the outside mirror on the driver's side.

– Turn the knob to position (R) to adjust the outside mirror on the passenger side.

– Press the knob in the appropriate direction to move the mirror surface so that you have a good view to the rear.

Folding both outside mirrors in flush*

– Turn the knob to position (A).

The mirror surfaces are heated whenever you switch on the rear window defogger regardless of the outside temperature.

You are well-advised to fold the outside mirrors in when maneuvering in tight spaces or when leaving the car parked close to other vehicles.

Automatic tilt-down of passenger side outside mirror*

With the knob turned to position (R) ⇒ fig. 101, the mirror on the front passenger door will tilt downward slightly when you move the ▶

selector lever into **R** (Reverse). This feature provides a better view of the curb when you are backing into a parking space.

The mirror returns to its initial position as soon as reverse gear is disengaged and vehicle speed is above about 9 mph (15 km/h). The mirror also returns to its initial position if the switch is moved to the driver's outside mirror Ⓛ or Ⓞ.

Memory setting for the outside mirrors*

On vehicles with the memory function*, when you store a seat position in the memory, the position of the outside mirrors is also stored in the memory ⇒ *page 101*.

Note

- Curved (i.e. convex) mirror surfaces increase your field of view. Remember that vehicles or other objects will appear smaller and farther away than when seen in a flat mirror. If you use this mirror to estimate distances of following vehicles when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause an accident.
- If the mirror housing is moved unintentionally (for example, while parking your vehicle), then you must first fold the mirror electrically. Do not readjust the mirror housing manually. You could damage the motor which controls the mirror.

Tips

If there should be a malfunction in the electrical system, you can still adjust the outside mirrors by pressing the edge of the mirror. ■

Applies to vehicles: with automatically dimming outside mirrors

Automatic dimming for the outside mirrors*

The outside mirrors dim at the same time as the inside mirror. When the ignition is switched on, the mirrors automatically dim depending on the amount of flight striking the mirrors (such as headlights shining into the vehicle from the rear).

When you switch on the interior light, or when you move the selector lever into **R** (Reverse), the dimming function stops and the mirrors return to their original condition (not darkened).

Tips

The automatic dimming feature on the mirrors will not operate properly if the light shining on the mirrors is blocked by other objects. ■

Digital compass

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

Activating or deactivating the compass

The direction is displayed on the interior rear view mirror.

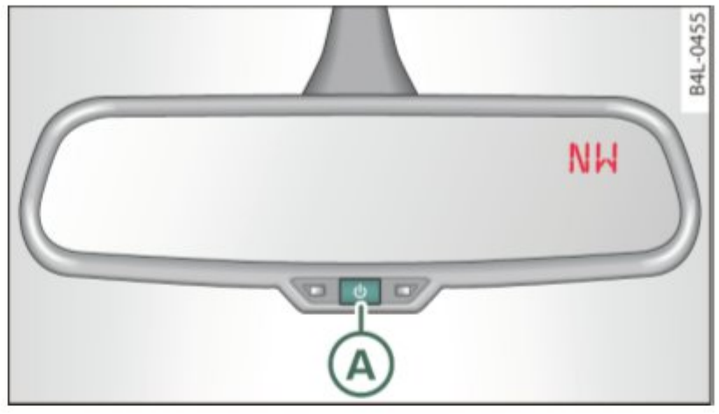


Fig. 102 Inside rear view mirror: digital compass activated

– To activate or deactivate, hold the Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 102 button down until the red display appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works with the ignition turned on. The directions are displayed as initials: **N** (North), **NE** (Northeast), **E** (East), **SE** (Southeast), **S** (South), **SW** (Southwest), **W** (West), **NW** (Northwest).

Tips

To avoid inaccurate directions, do not allow any remote controls, electrical systems, or metal parts close to the mirror. ■

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

Setting the magnetic deflection zone

The correct magnetic deflection zone must be set in order to display the directions correctly.

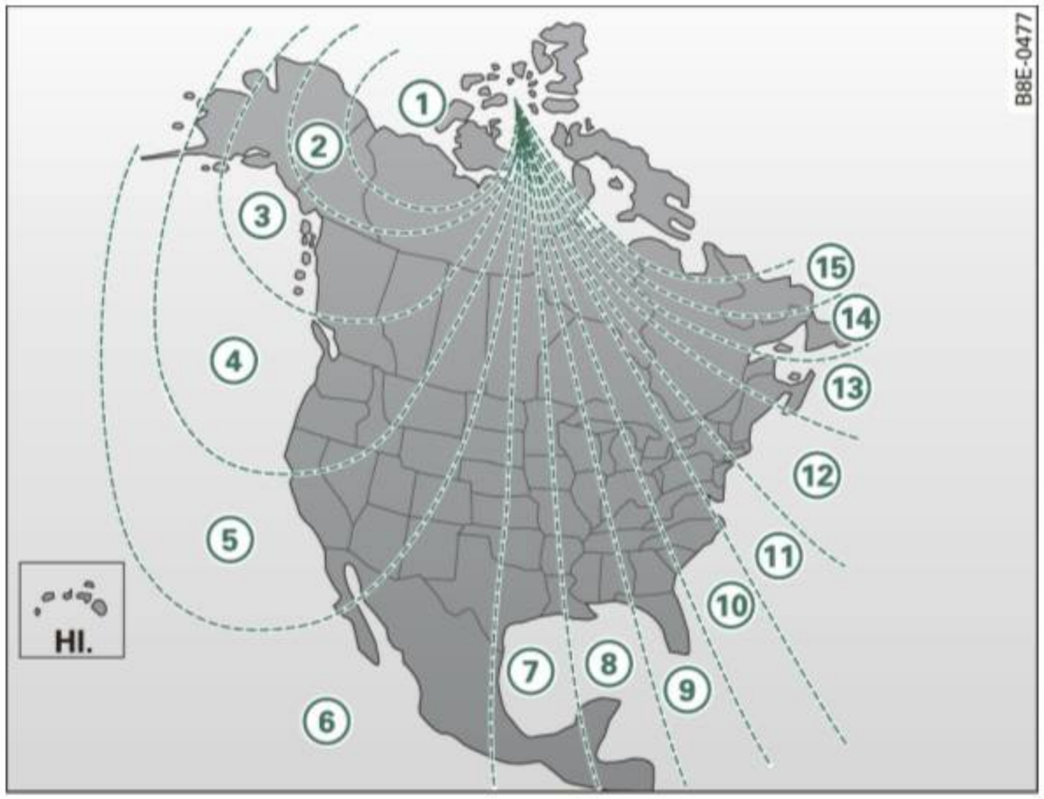


Fig. 103 North America: magnetic deflection zone boundaries

– Hold the (A) ⇒ *page 90,* fig. 102 button down until the number of the set magnetic deflection zone appears on the interior rear view mirror.

– Adjust the magnetic deflection zone by repeatedly pressing on the (A) button. The set mode automatically deactivates after a few seconds. ■

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

Calibrating the compass

The compass has to be recalibrated if the display is wrong or inaccurate.

– Hold the (A) button down until the letter **C** is displayed on the interior rear view mirror.

– Drive in a circle at a speed of about 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is shown on the interior rear view mirror.

WARNING

The digital compass is to be used as a directional aid only. Even though you may want to look at it while you are driving, you must still pay attention to traffic, road and weather conditions as well as other possible hazards. ■

Seats and storage

General recommendations

Why is your seat adjustment so important?

The safety belts and the airbag system can only provide maximum protection if the front seats are correctly adjusted.

There are various ways of adjusting the front seats to provide safe and comfortable support for the driver and the front passenger. Adjust your seat properly so that:

- you can easily and quickly reach all the switches and controls in the instrument panel
- your body is properly supported to reduce physical stress and fatigue
- the safety belts and airbag system can offer maximum protection ⇒ *page 168*.

In the following chapters, you will see exactly how you can best adjust your seats.

There are special regulations and instructions for installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat. Always heed the information regarding child safety provided in ⇒ *page 190,* "Child Safety".

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seating position of the driver and all other passengers can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is in motion — never put your feet on top of the instrument panel, out of the window or on top of the seat cushion! This applies especially to the passengers. If your seating position is incorrect you increase the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or an accident. If**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

the airbag inflates and the seating position is incorrect this could result in personal injury or even death.

- **It is important for both the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between themselves and the steering wheel and/or instrument panel. If you are sitting any closer than this, the airbag system cannot protect you properly. In addition to this, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to your body height so that they can give you maximum protection.**
- **Always try to keep as much distance as possible between yourself and the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **Do not adjust the driver's or front passenger seat while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position.**

Note

When the front seats are in the reclined position, make certain that the seatbacks are not pushed against the built-in air deflector* when you run the seats back toward the rear of the vehicle and when you lower the seatback. This can damage the air deflector and the latching mechanism. ■

Driver seat

The correct seat position is important for safe and relaxed driving.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat in the following manner: ▶

- Adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals to the floor while keeping your knee slightly bent ⇒ ⚠ in "Why is your seat adjustment so important?".
- Adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
- Position the head restraints according to the occupant's height. For maximum protection, the upper edge of the head restraints should be at least at eye level, or higher ⇒ *page 151,* fig. 156.

⚠ WARNING

Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate! ■

Front passenger seat

Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position.

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is deploying, do not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always wear the three-point safety belt provided adjusted correctly. We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner:

- Move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the fore and aft adjustment range ⇒ ⚠ in "Why is your seat adjustment so important?" on *page 92.*
- Bring the backrest up to an (almost) upright position. **Do not** ride with the seat reclined.
- The ideal position for the head restraint is with the upper edge of the restraint level with the top of your head ⇒ *page 95* and ⇒ *page 98*. You should *not* lower the top of the restraint below the level of your eyes.
- Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat. ■

Manual seats

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable seats

Adjustment controls

Various controls on the manual seats provide a wide range for individual adjustments.

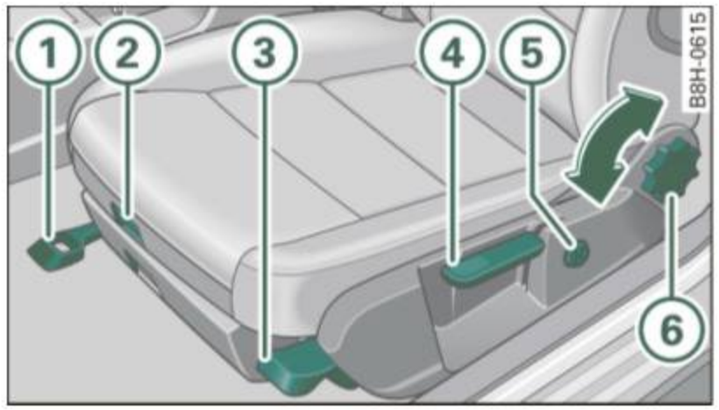


Fig. 104 Adjustment controls: locations on driver seat

① Moving the seat forward or backward
② Extending the seat cushion
③ Adjusting the seat cushion angle
④ Adjusting the seat height
⑤ Adjusting the lumbar support *⇒ *page 98*
⑥ Adjusting the seatback angle

Tips

Some of the controls are fitted on certain models only or they are optional equipment. ■

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable seats

Adjusting the manual seats

Position, angle and shape of the manual seats can be adjusted to provide safe and comfortable seating.

Reed and heed all **WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ before you adjust your seat.

Moving the seat forward or backward

– Lift lever (1) ⇒ *page 93,* fig. 104 and slide the seat to the desired position.

– Release the lever (1) and then move the seat further until you feel and hear it engage.

Extending/shortening the seat cushion*

– Grab the handle just below the front edge of the seat (2) ⇒ *page 93,* fig. 104.

– Slide the seat cushion extension backward or forward to the desired position. Release the handle to lock the extension in place.

Adjusting the seat cushion angle

– Pull the lever (3) ⇒ *page 93,* fig. 104 *up* and pump it to *raise* the front of the seat cushion.

– Push the lever (3) *down* and pump it to *lower* the front of the seat cushion.

– In either case, shift your weight in the direction you want the seat to tilt to support the adjustment action.

Adjusting the seat height

– *Pull* the lever (4) *up* and pump it to *raise* the seat.

– *Push* the lever (4) *down* and pump it to *lower* the seat.

Adjusting the lumbar support

– Press the corresponding depression on the switch shell (5) to adjust the height and contour of the lumbar support, see ⇒ *page 98.*

Adjusting the seatback angle

– Lean forward to take your weight off the seatback.

– Turn the hand wheel (6) in the direction you want the seatback to tilt.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the driver or front passenger seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger seat when the vehicle is not moving.**
- **Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the seatback is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts!** ■

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable seats

Adjusting the head restraints

Only properly adjusted head restraints can provide effective protection and support.

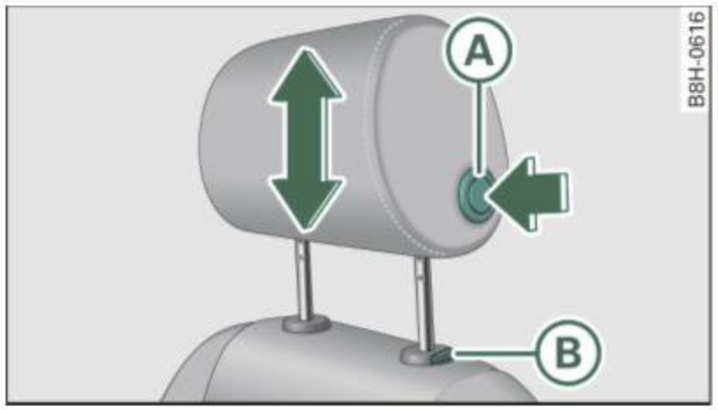


Fig. 105 Driver seat: head restraint

The head restraints on the *front* seats can be adjusted to provide safe support to head and neck at the optimum height and angle. When adjusted properly, the upper edge of the restraint should be level with the top of the head, but no lower than eye level.

Raising the head restraint

– Take hold of the sides of the head restraint with both hands and lift it up to the proper height.

Lowering the head restraint

– Take hold of the sides of the head restraint with both hands.

– Press the release button (A) ⇒ fig. 105 before you push the head restraint down to the proper height.

Adjusting the angle of the head restraint

– Take hold of the sides of the head restraint with both hands and tilt it forward or backward.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 151*, "Proper adjustment of head restraints".

Tips

Properly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective safety feature ⇒ *page 151*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable seats

Folding the front seatback forward

With their seatbacks folded forward, the front seats can be moved ahead to give wider access to the rear.

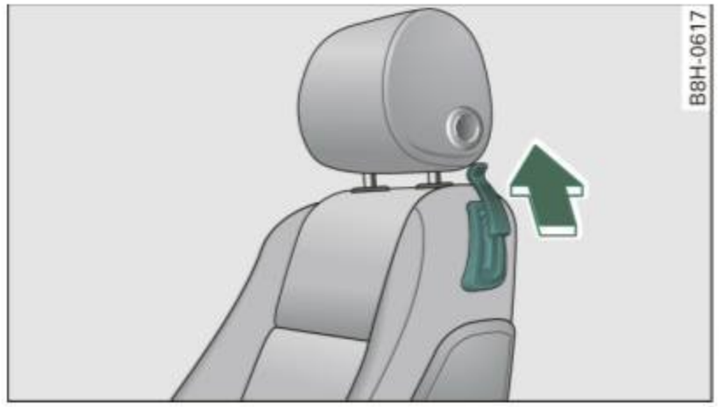


Fig. 106 Driver seat: seatback release lever

Folding the seatback forward

– Lift the lever up as indicated by the arrow ⇒ fig. 106.

– Hold the lever and fold the seatback forward. ▶

– Release the lever and slide the seat forward.

Folding the seatback up again

– Push the front seat backward *before* you fold the seatback up again as otherwise the seat will *not* slide back to its original position.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the front seatbacks are in the upright position and securely locked in place when driving. ■

Power seats

Applies to vehicles: with power seats

Adjustment switches

The operating logic for the switches corresponds to the construction and function of the seat.

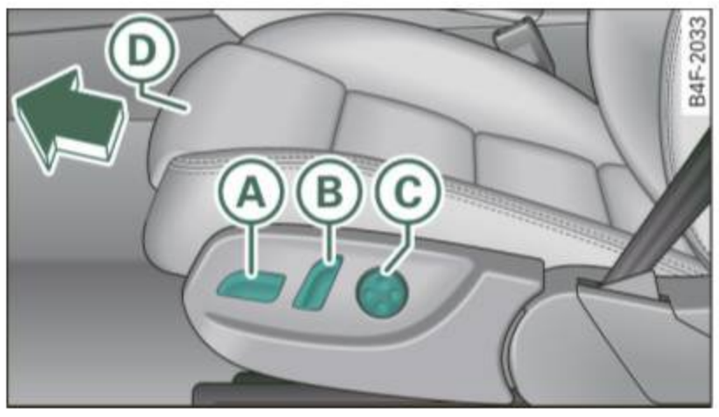


Fig. 107 Adjustment switches: locations on driver seat

Push or pull either switch in exactly the same direction you like the corresponding part of the seat to move.

(A) Moving the seat forward or backward
(B) Adjusting the seatback angle and the head restraint height
(C) Adjusting the lumbar support.
(D) Seat cushion ⇒ *page 100*

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the driver's or front passenger seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger seat when the vehicle is not moving.**
- **Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition key removed, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with power seats

Power seat adjustment

The switches can be moved in various directions to allow precise adjustment.

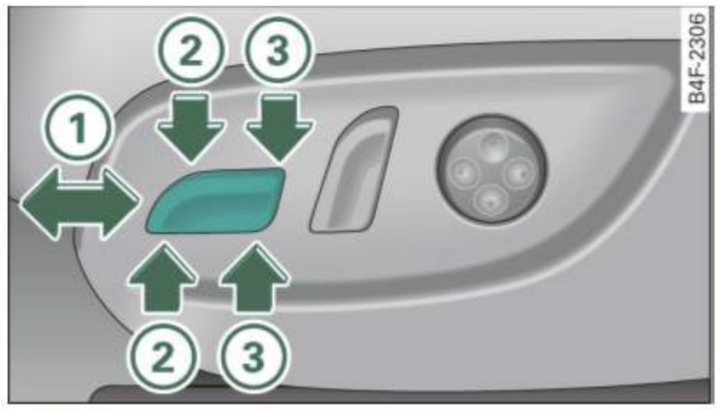


Fig. 108 Seat cushion adjustment: switch motions

Push or pull the switch in the same direction you like the seat cushion to move.

Moving the seat forward and backward (1)

– Press the switch forward or backward horizontally ⇒ ⚠.

Adjusting the seat height (2) and (3) together

– *Pull* the switch *evenly at both ends* to *raise* the seat ⇒ ⚠.

– *Push* the lever *evenly at both ends* to *lower* the seat ⇒ ⚠.

Angling the seat cushion up and down (2) or (3)

– To angle the seat cushion *up*, *pull* the switch *at the front only* ⇒ ⚠.

– Alternatively, *push* the switch *at the rear only* ⇒ ⚠.

– To angle the seat cushion *down*, *push* the switch *at the front only* ⇒ ⚠.

– Alternatively, *pull* the switch *at the rear only* ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the driver's or front passenger seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger seat when the vehicle is not moving.**
- **Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition key removed, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with power seats

Adjusting the seatback

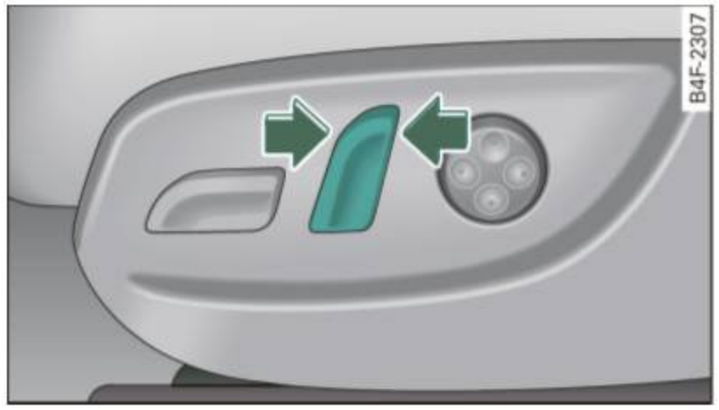


Fig. 109 Driver seat: switch for seatback adjustment

– Push or pull the switch in the same direction you like the seatback to tilt ⇒ fig. 109.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the seatback while the vehicle is moving. If you adjust your seatback while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the seatback when the vehicle is not moving.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the seatback is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts! ■**

Applies to vehicles: with lumbar support

Lumbar support

The lumbar support can be adjusted to fit the natural curvature of the occupant's spine.



Fig. 110 Front seat: switch for lumbar adjustment

Adjusting the curvature

– Push the *forward* depression on the switch shell ⇒ fig. 110 to *increase* backrest curvature.

– Push the *rear* depression on the switch shell to *decrease* backrest curvature.

Adjusting the height

– Push the *top* depression on the switch shell to *raise* the support in the backrest.

– Push the *bottom* depression on the switch shell to *lower* the support in the backrest.

WARNING

Never adjust the lumbar support while the vehicle is moving. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the lumbar support when the vehicle is not moving. ■

Applies to vehicles: with power seats

Adjusting the head restraints

The head restraints must be adjusted properly to provide protection.

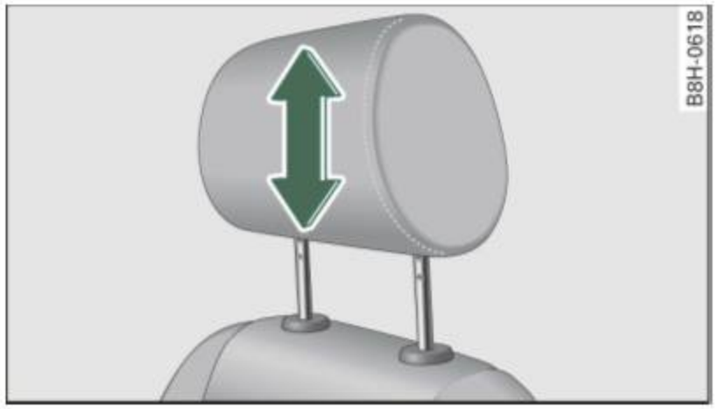


Fig. 111 Front seat: head restraint

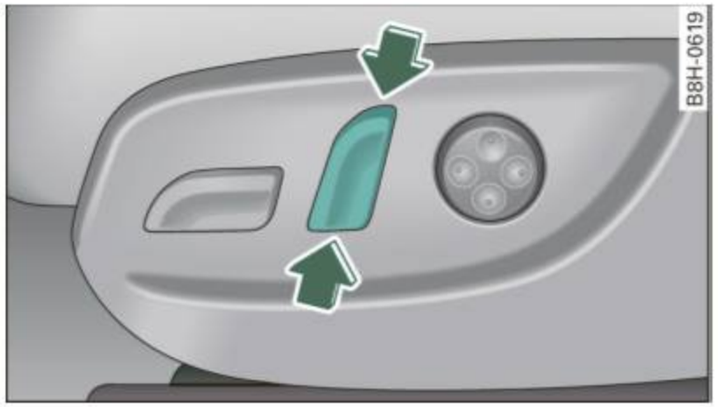


Fig. 112 Front seat: switch for head restraint

Raising/lowering the front head restraints

– Press the switch ⇒ fig. 112 up or down to raise or lower front head restraints.

– Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge of the restraint is level with the top of your head, but no lower than eye level ⇒ fig. 111. ▶

Adjusting the angle of the head restraint

– Grasp the head restraint on the side with both hands and tilt it forward or backward.

The height and angle of the head restraints are adjustable. They should be adjusted to fit the occupant's body size. Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective safety feature ⇒ *page 151*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 151*, "Proper adjustment of head restraints".

Tips

The powered head restraints on power seats should never be removed by anyone other than a professional mechanic. ■

Applies to vehicles: with power seats

Folding the front seatback forward

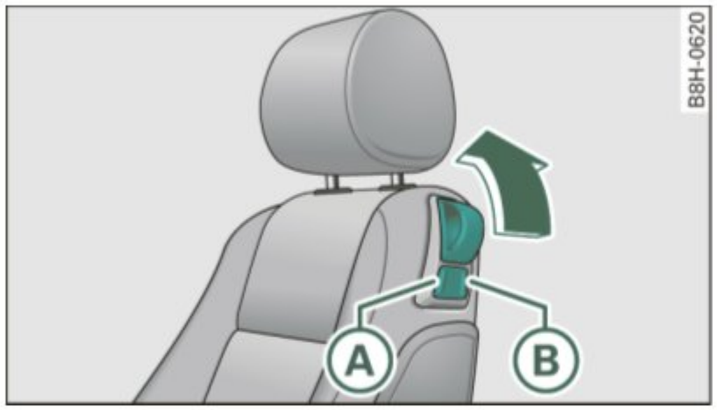


Fig. 113 Driver seat: controls

Folding the seatback forward

– Lift the handle as indicated by the arrow ⇒ fig. 113.
– Hold the handle and fold the seatback forward.

Folding the seatback up again

– Fold the seatback into the upright position until it securely latches into place.

Moving the front seat forward

– Press and hold the switch at the front (A) until the seat reaches the desired position. The seat will stop automatically when the previous position is reached.

Moving the front seat backward

– Press and hold the switch at the rear (B) until the seat reaches the desired position. The seat will stop automatically when it reaches the original position.

When the seat is moved back again, it automatically stops at this position. To move the seat further to the rear, you will need to release switch (B) and then press it again.

When you fold the seatbacks forward, the head restraints will retract automatically. They will return to their original position when the front seatbacks are folded back again.

WARNING

Always make sure the front seatbacks are in the upright position and securely locked in place.

Tips

When the driver's door or the front passenger door is closed, the corresponding switch to move the seat will not operate. ■

Applies to vehicles: with power seats

Seat cushion extension (only driver´s seat)

The seat cushion can be extended to optimally support the thighs for driving.

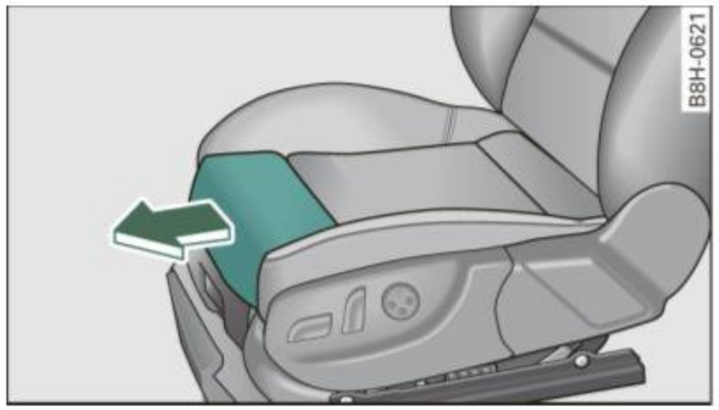


Fig. 114 Adjustable seat cushion

Extending the seat cushion

– Reach under the front edge of the seat cushion.

– Pull up and hold the seat cushion extension, then slide it forward to the desired position.

Shortening the seat cushion

– Reach under the front edge of the seat cushion.

– Pull up and hold the seat cushion extension, then slide it backward to the desired position.

WARNING

Never adjust the seat cushion while the vehicle is moving. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the seat cushion when the vehicle is not moving. ■

Center armrest

The front center armrest can be adjusted to several positions and contains a storage bin.

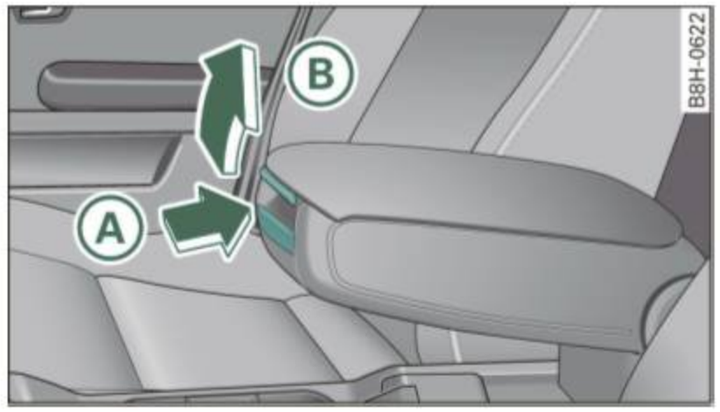


Fig. 115 Between the front seats: armrest folded down

Adjusting the angle of the armrest

– Press button (A) in ⇒ fig. 115 and pull the armrest all the way down.

– Then lift the armrest slowly until it engages in a comfortable position.

Opening the storage bin

– Pull the release catch (B) and lift the lid up.

WARNING

When folded down, the armrest can restrict the driver's movement. Fold up the armrest when road or traffic conditions may demand rapid steering or shifting response. This will allow you to react more quickly to avoid an accident.

Tips

The storage area in the center armrest may be equipped with a telephone base plate to house a phone cradle. Ask your authorized Audi dealer if you have questions. ■

Rear seats

General information

Safe transportation of passengers on the rear seats requires proper safety precautions.

All passengers on the rear seats must be seated in compliance with the safety guidelines explained in ⇒ *page 159* and ⇒ *page 168*. The correct seating position is critical for the safety of front *and* rear seat passengers alike ⇒ *page 150*.

WARNING

- **Occupants in the front *and* rear seats must always be properly restrained.**
- **Do not let anyone ride in the vehicle without the head restraints provided. Head restraints help to reduce injuries.**
- **Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in a crash or sudden maneuver and injure occupants. Always store articles in the luggage compartment and use the fastening eyes, especially when the rear seat backs have been folded down.**
- **Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 150*, "Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats". ■**

Rear head restraints

The rear head restraints are set at the optimum height at the factory. This height setting cannot be changed. This preset height protects both short and tall persons effectively. ■

Seat memory

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

Driver's seat memory

The seat adjustment settings for four drivers can be stored using the memory buttons in the driver's door.



Fig. 116 Driver's door: memory buttons

In addition to the setting for the driver's seat, the settings for the head restraint* and both exterior mirrors can be stored.

Storing and recalling settings

Using the memory buttons (1), (2), (3) and (4), you can store and recall the settings for four different drivers ⇒ fig. 116.

The current settings are also automatically stored on the remote control key being used when the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is unlocked, the settings stored on the remote control key being used are automatically recalled. ▶

Turning seat memory on and off

If the STOP switch is depressed, the seat memory is inoperative. The word **OFF** next to the STOP switch illuminates.

All the stored settings are retained. We recommend using the STOP switch and deactivating the seat memory if the vehicle is only going to be used *temporarily* by a driver whose settings are not going to be stored.

Tips

Seat position settings cannot be recalled if the seatback is folded forward. ■

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

Storing and recalling a seat position

Before you can store or recall your seat position, the STOP button must be engaged (down).

Storing settings

– Adjust the driver's seat ⇒ *page 96*.

– Adjust the head restraint ⇒ *page 98*

– Adjust both outside mirrors ⇒ *page 89*. In the tilt-down position, the passenger mirror can be adjusted to the preferred position and saved in the seat memory.

– Press the MEMO button and hold it down. At the same time, press one of the memory buttons for at least one second.

– Release the buttons. The settings are now stored under the corresponding memory button.

Recalling settings

– Driver's door open - press the desired memory button.

– Driver's door closed - press the corresponding memory button until the stored position is reached.

When the vehicle is **locked**, the current settings are stored and assigned to the remote control key. But the settings stored on memory buttons (1) through (4) are not deleted. They can be recalled at any time. When the vehicle is **unlocked**, the settings stored on the remote control key are restored.

If your vehicle is driven by other persons using your remote control key, you should save your individual seat position on one of the memory buttons. You can recall your settings again simply and conveniently by pressing the corresponding memory button. When the vehicle is locked, these settings are automatically re-assigned to the remote control key and stored.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise you risk having an accident.**
- **In an emergency, the recall operation can be stopped by pressing the STOP button or by briefly pressing any given memory button.**

Tips

Seat position settings cannot be recalled if the seatback is folded forward. ■

Luggage compartment

Ski sack

Use the ski sack to transport and protect skis and other long, light items in the passenger compartment.

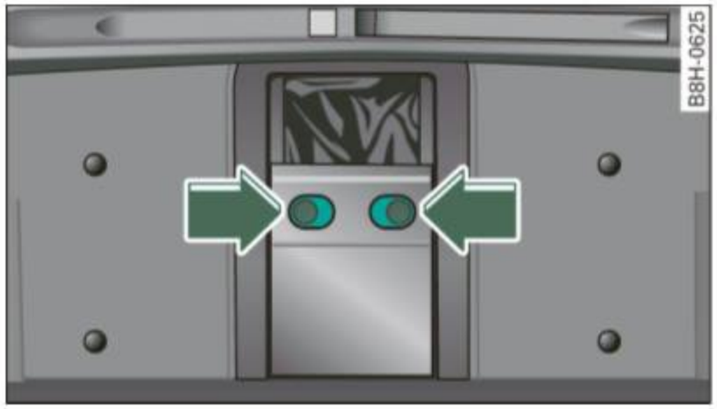


Fig. 117 Luggage compartment, rear seatback back panel: ski sack hatch cover

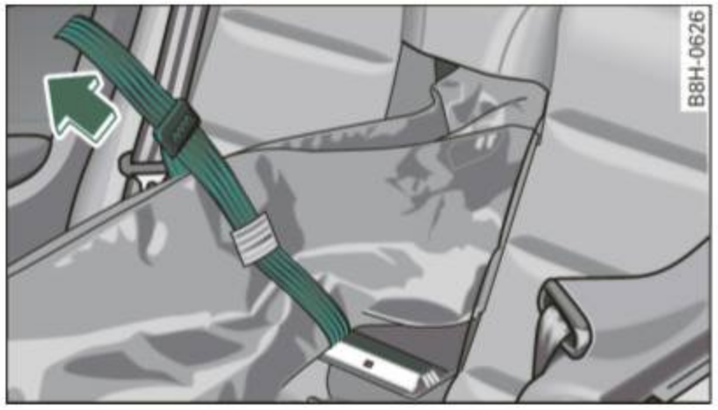


Fig. 118 Ski sack: securing

Loading

– Open the luggage compartment lid and clear a space in the center.

– Reach inside the finger openings on the hatch cover and pull the recessed buttons together to release the cover from the seatback back panel ⇒ fig. 117.

– Inside the passenger compartment, fold the armrest out of the rear seatback.

– Reach into the recess, release and open the inner hatch cover.

– Pull out and unfold the ski sack.

– Load skis or similar objects through the luggage compartment into the interior of the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

Securing

– Pull the lose belt end until the belt sits tight ⇒ fig. 118.

Stowing

– In the luggage compartment, close the ski sack hatch cover.

– Inside the passenger compartment, fold the ski sack up neat and tight.

– Close and engage the inner hatch cover.

– You can now fold the armrest back into the rear seatback.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always keep the first aid kit in the vehicle at all times. Be particularly careful to do so when you remove the seatback center section in order to use the ski bag. If you do not have the first aid kit with you, you may not be able to give first aid in the event of an accident.**
- **The ski sack is intended only for the transportation of skis and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious personal injury never transport heavy or pointed objects in the ski sack.**
- **When braking rapidly or during an accident the load could be displaced and cause injury to occupants.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Sharp edges on the load must be covered for protection.**

Always fasten the belt tightly around the sack and its contents ⇒ *page 103,* fig. 118.

Tips

Never stow the ski sack away if it's wet or damp (for example, snow melting from skis). Let it dry completely before you stow it away. ■

Cupholder

Cupholder in the center console

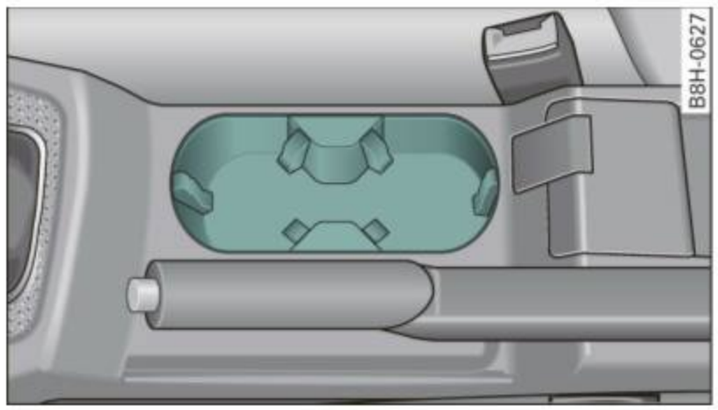


Fig. 119 Center console: dual cupholder

There are two cupholders in the center console ⇒ fig. 119.

⚠ WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.

- **Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.**
- **Use only soft cups in the cup holder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.**

Note

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc. ■

Ashtrays

Front ashtray

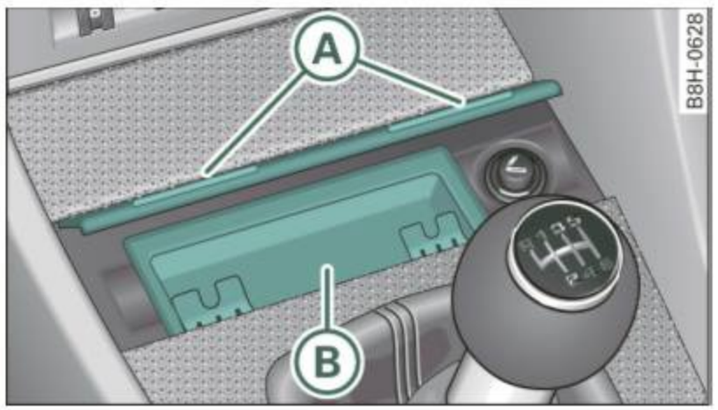


Fig. 120 Center console: front ashtray

To open ashtray

– Tap the edge of the ashtray Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 120 ⇒ ⚠.

To empty ashtray

– Hold the sides of the ashtray Ⓑ ⇒ fig. 120 insert and lift out.

To reinstall ashtray

– Press the ashtray insert back into its holder.

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray. Hot ashes or other hot objects in the ashtray could set waste paper on fire. ■

Rear ashtray

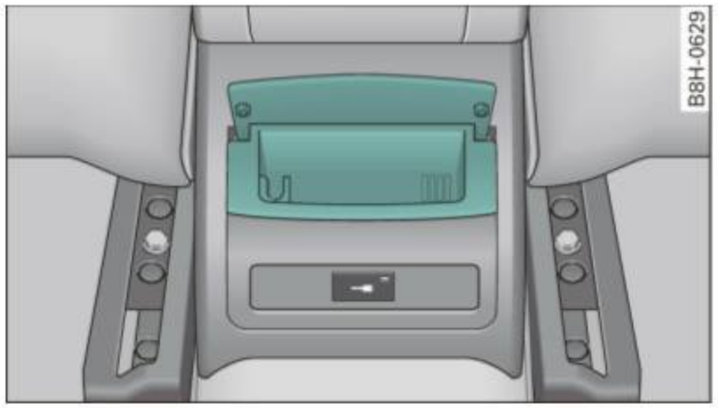


Fig. 121 Rear ashtray

To open ashtray

– Open the cover ⇒ ⚠.

To empty ashtray

– Hold the ashtray housing ⇒ fig. 121 and lift out.

To reinstall ashtray

– Open the ashtray cover, insert the ashtray and press down.

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray. Hot ashes or other hot objects in the ashtray could set waste paper on fire. ■

Cigarette lighter/socket

Cigarette lighter

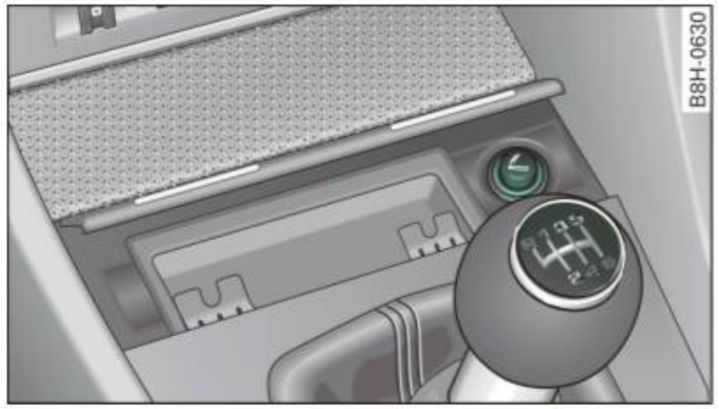


Fig. 122 Center console: cigarette lighter

Using the cigarette lighter

– Tap the edge of the ashtray Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 122.
– Push the knob in.
– Wait until the cigarette lighter knob pops out.
– Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use it.
– Reinsert cigarette lighter into the socket after use.

Connecting an appliance

– Remove cigarette lighter.
– Plug in appliance to be used.

The socket of the cigarette lighter may be used for 12-volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 100 watts, such as a flash light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

Before you purchase any accessories, always read and follow the information in ⇒ *page 318,* "Additional accessories and parts replacement".

WARNING

Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause serious injury or start a fire.

- **Be careful when using the cigarette lighter. If you do not pay attention to what you are doing when you are using the cigarette lighter you can burn yourself.**
- **The cigarette lighter and socket remain functional even if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is removed. Never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision.**

Note

- To avoid damaging the socket, only use plugs that fit properly.
- Only use the cigarette lighter socket as a power source for electrical accessories for short durations. Use the sockets in the vehicle when a power source is needed for longer durations.

Tips

When the engine is off and accessories are still plugged in and are on, the vehicle battery can still be drained. ■

Outlets

The outlet in the front center console and in the luggage compartment may be used for 12-volt appliances.

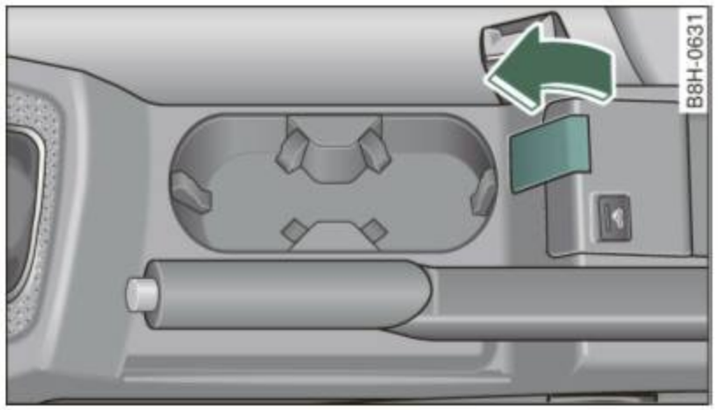


Fig. 123 Center console, front: 12-volt outlet

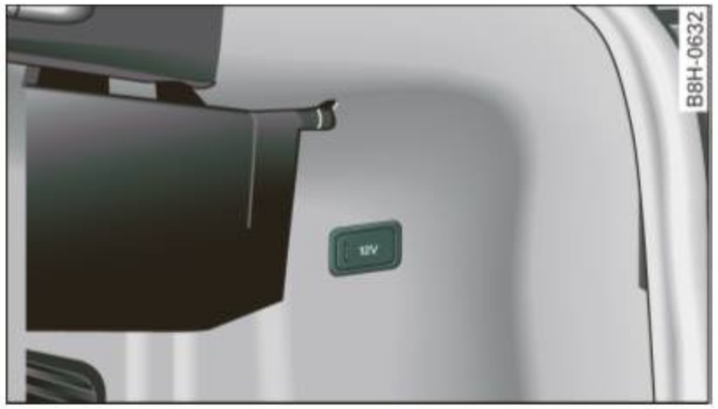


Fig. 124 Side trim in luggage compartment: 12-volt outlet

Outlet in the front center console

– Fold the cover for the outlet down ⇒ fig. 123.

– Plug in appliance to be used.

Outlet in the luggage compartment

– Tap cover ⇒ fig. 124.

– Plug in appliance to be used. ▶

The outlet may be used for 12-volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 100 watts, such as a flash light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

Before you purchase any accessories, always read and follow the information in ⇒ *page 318,* "Additional accessories and parts replacement".

⚠ WARNING

The outlet plus any appliances plugged into it remain functional even if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is removed. Never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision.

Note

To avoid damaging the socket, only use plugs that fit properly.

Tips

When the engine is off and accessories are still plugged in and are on, the vehicle battery can still be drained. ■

Storage

General

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remove objects from the instrument panel. Any items not put away could slide around inside the vehicle while driving or when accelerating or when applying the brakes or when driving around a corner.**
- **When you are driving make sure that anything you may have placed in the center console or other storage locations cannot fall out into the footwells. In case of sudden braking you would not be able to brake, depress the clutch or accelerate.**
- **Any pieces of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for light-weight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle. ■**

Glove compartment

The glove compartment is illuminated and can be locked.



Fig. 125 Glove compartment

To open glove compartment

– Pull the handle ⇒ fig. 125 in the direction of the arrow and pull the lid down.

To close glove compartment

– Push the glove compartment lid upward until the lock engages.

In the glove compartment lid, you will find a place to store a pen and a pad of paper. ▶

CD changer*

The CD changer for the Sound System is located on the left side in the glove compartment.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

Tips

As soon as you lock your vehicle from the outside via remote control or the driver's door lock, the glove compartment is also locked. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Air ventilation in the glove compartment

Air ventilation in the glove compartment

Cooled air is vented into the glove compartment whenever the air conditioner is on.

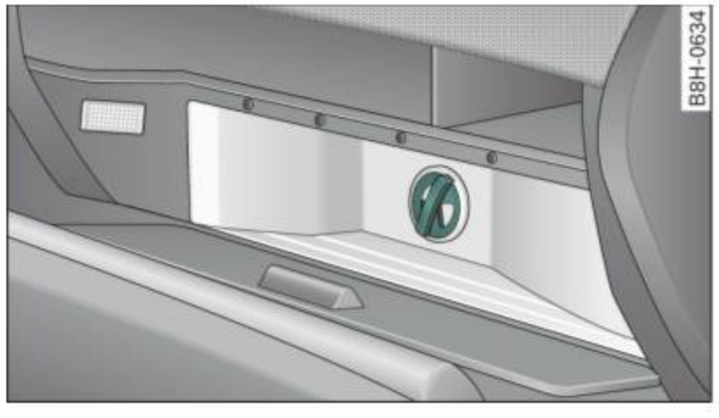


Fig. 126 Glove compartment: air ventilation

– Open the glove compartment ⇒ *page 107,* fig. 125.
– Open the door to the cooled section ⇒ fig. 126
– Use the rotary switch to turn cooling on or off.

The cooled section of the glove compartment only works when the air conditioner is running. If the climate control system is in the heating mode, we recommend that you turn off the cooled section of the glove compartment.

Tips

The "non-skid mat" in the refrigerated compartment may be removed for cleaning. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Storage compartments

Storage compartment for small objects

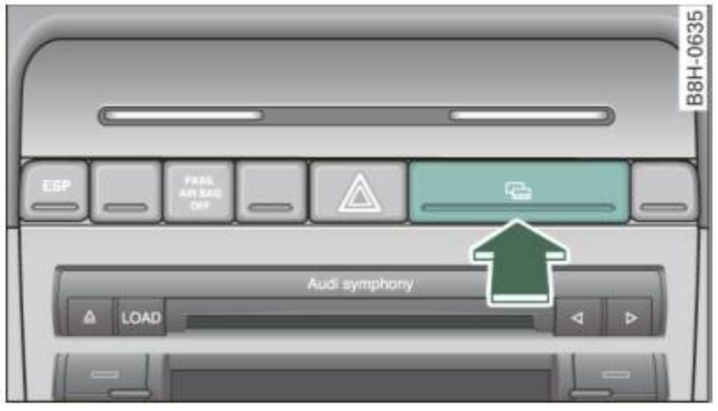


Fig. 127 Center console: Storage compartment

– To open the compartment, press the cover ⇒ fig. 127.
– To close the compartment, push the drawer all the way in until it clicks in place. ■

Storage compartment in the center console

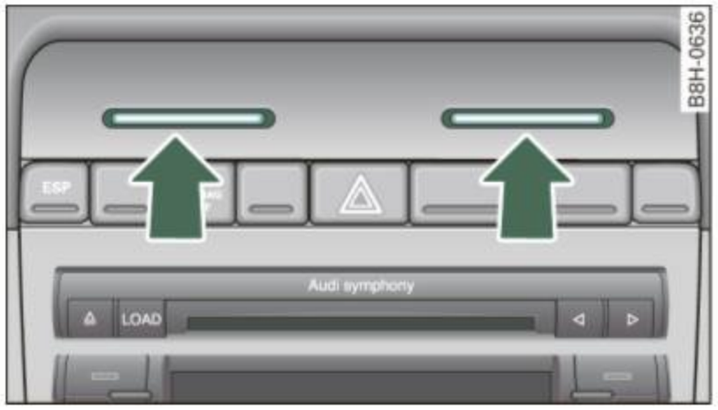


Fig. 128 Storage compartment in the center console

– To open press one of the trim strips on the cover ⇒ fig. 128.

– To close, press the cover. ■

Compartments in the door trims

There are storage compartments in the door trims.



Fig. 129 Passenger's door: storage compartment inside the door trim

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 188,* "Important safety instructions on the side airbag system". ■

Applies to vehicles: with storage compartment in the front seats

Storage compartment in the front seats

There is a fold-out storage compartment in the front of the seats.

Opening

– Lift the handle and pull the drawer out.

Closing

– Push the drawer in completely until it latches.

Tips

The maximum carrying capacity 2.2 lbs (1 kg). ■

Warm and cold

Climate controls

Description

The air conditioner is fully automatic and is designed to maintain a comfortable and uniform climate inside the vehicle.

We recommend the following settings:

– Select and set a temperature between 64 °F (+22 °C) and 86 °F (+29 °C).

– Press the AUTO button.

With this setting, you attain maximum comfort in the least amount of time. Change this setting, as desired, to meet your personal needs.

The climate controls are a combination of heating, ventilation and cooling systems, which automatically reduce humidity and cool the air inside your vehicle.

The air temperature, air flow and air distribution are automatically regulated to achieve and maintain the desired passenger compartment temperature as quickly as possible.

The system automatically compensates for changes in the outside temperature and for the intensity of the sunlight entering the vehicle. We recommend you use the **Automatic** mode ⇒ *page 112* for year-round comfort.

Please note the following:

Turn on the air conditioner to reduce humidity in the vehicle. This also prevent the windows from fogging up.

When the outside temperature is high and the air is very humid, **condensation** from the evaporator may drip under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

If the outside temperature is low, the fan normally only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has warmed up sufficiently.

The air conditioner temporarily switches off when you drive off from a standstill using full throttle to save engine power.

The compressor also switches off if the coolant temperature is too high so that the engine can be adequately cooled under extreme loads.

Air pollutants filter

The air pollutants filter (a combined particle filter and activated charcoal filter) reduces or eliminates outside air pollution (dust, or pollen) from entering the vehicle.

The air pollutants filter must be changed at the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet, so that the air conditioner can properly work.

If you drive your vehicle in an area with high air pollution, the filter may need to be changed more frequently than specified in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet. If in doubt, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor for advice.

Key coded settings

The air conditioner settings selected are automatically stored and assigned to the key being used. When the vehicle is started, the air conditioner automatically selects the settings assigned to that key. These settings will differ depending if the roof is opened or closed. This way every driver will maintain his/her own personal settings and does not have to reset them manually.

If a different driver uses your key and changes the air conditioner settings, the latest adjustments will erase and replace the settings you have stored.

WARNING

Reduced visibility is dangerous and can cause accidents.

- **For safe driving it is very important that all windows be free of ice, snow and condensation.**
- **Fully familiarize yourself with the proper use and function of the heating and ventilation system and especially how to defog and defrost the windows.**
- **Never use the windshield wiper/washer system in freezing weather until you have warmed the windshield first, using the heating and ventilation system. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.**

Note

- If you suspect that the air conditioner has been damaged, switch on ECON and contact an authorized Audi dealer to have the system inspected.
- Repairs to the Audi air conditioner require special technical knowledge and special tools. Contact an authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

Tips

- Keep the air intake slots (in front of the windshield) free from ice, snow and debris in order to maintain the proper function of the climate control system.
- Air escapes through vents under the rear window. When placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, ensure that the openings are not covered.
- If the inside temperature is very high (for example, if the vehicle has been parked in sun), open the windows and allow the hot air to escape before turning on the air conditioner. ■

Controls

This overview will help you to familiarize yourself with the air conditioning controls.



Fig. 130 Air conditioning control elements

The left display indicates the temperature selected for the driver's side, the right display indicates the temperature selected for the passenger's side.

Each function is turned on or off by briefly pressing the corresponding button. **The indicator light in the button illuminates when the function is active.** ▶

Button(s)	Function
AUTO	Automatic operation
- + (left and right)	Temperature controls for driver's side and passenger side
	Air recirculation
ECON	Switches off air conditioning
OFF	Switches off air conditioning (rather than using)
	Switches off the air recirculation (rather than using OFF)
- + (in the center)	Adjusts fan speed
	Air directed to the windows
	Air directed to the footwells
	Air from dashboard outlets
	Windshield defroster/defogger
	Rear window defroster/defogger

The buttons , , and can be selected individually or in combination. ■

Automatic mode AUTO

The automatic mode is the standard setting for all seasons.

Switching on AUTO

– Set the temperature between 64 °F (+18 °C) and 86 °F (+29 °C).

– Press AUTO ⇒ *page 111,* fig. 130.

AUTO only works when you set the inside temperature between 64 °F (18 °C) and 86 °F (29 °C). If you select a temperature below 64 °F (18 °C), **LO** will appear in the display. If you select a temperature above 86 °F (29 °C), **HI** will appear in the display.

The system automatically compensates for changes in outside temperature and for the intensity of the sunlight.

Tips

By keeping the AUTO button on the driver's side pressed for several seconds, the temperature of the passenger side can be set to the temperature of the driver's side or vice versa. The new temperature setting will be shown in the display. ■

Setting the temperature

Separate temperatures can be selected for the driver's and front passenger side.

– Press the - button or the + button under each display ⇒ *page 111,* fig. 130 until the desired temperature is reached.

The selected temperature setting appears in the display above the buttons.

By pressing both AUTO buttons for several seconds, the temperature on the passenger side can be set to the temperature of the driver's side or vice versa. The new temperature setting will be shown in the display. The old temperature setting can be restored by resetting the display as required. ■

Switching between Fahrenheit and Centigrade

You can change the temperature display from °F (Fahrenheit) to °C (Centigrade) and vice versa.

– Press and hold ⟲ and press the plus button on the driver's side temperature switch ⇒ *page 111*, fig. 130. ■

Air recirculation ⟲

The air recirculation prevents exhaust fumes or other pollution from entering the vehicle.

Switching on the air recirculation

– Press ⟲ ⇒ *page 111*, fig. 130 ⇒ ⚠

Switching off the air recirculation

– Press ⟲ again, or
– press AUTO, or
– press ⛆.

In the air recirculation mode, the air in the passenger compartment is recirculated to prevent exhaust fumes and other pollution from entering the vehicle. We recommend that you use the manual air recirculation under the following conditions:

- when driving through tunnels
- in a traffic jam.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use this setting for extended periods of time. The windows could fog up since no fresh air can enter the vehicle. If the windows fog up, press the air recirculation button again immediately to switch off the air recirculation function or select defrost. ■

ECON ECON

Using ECON helps save fuel

– Press ECON to switch on ⇒ *page 111*, fig. 130.
– Press ECON or press AUTO to switch off.

In ECON mode the air conditioner is shut off and heating and ventilation are automatically controlled. “ECON” translates “Economy” since driving with the air conditioning compressor *disengaged* improves your mileage noticeably.

When operating in ECON mode make sure the temperature inside the vehicle is not lower than the outside temperature. The air is neither cooled nor dehumidified, so there is a risk that the windows can fog up. ■

Switching the air conditioning on and off OFF

Switching the air conditioning off

– Press OFF to turn the air conditioner off and block outside air from entering the vehicle.

Switching the air conditioning on

– Press OFF again (indicator light comes on again), or
– Press AUTO, or
– Press one of the following buttons: ⇧, ▤ or ⇩. ▶

Moreover, the air conditioning switches on again whenever you press the fan speed or temperature buttons. ■

Automatic air recirculation

If outside air is polluted, an air quality sensor in the vehicle will automatically switch on the air recirculation.

Switching on air recirculation

– Press ⇒ *page 111,* fig. 130.

Switching off air recirculation

– Press again, or
– press AUTO, or
– press .

The automatic air recirculation mode should normally be left switched on at all times.

The system is ready to operate approximately 30 seconds after you turn on the ignition or start the vehicle. Fresh air enters the vehicle only during this initialization period.

If the **air quality sensor** in the air conditioning system detects exhaust fumes in the outside air, the control unit will either pass the incoming air through the pollution filter, or automatically switch on the air recirculation.

The air conditioning system will automatically switch on the air recirculation if it senses that the outside air is very polluted. At the same time, it will not allow any outside air to enter the vehicle until the air quality has improved.

The air recirculation operates for a maximum of 12 minutes. If the windows start to fog up while the air recirculation is on, press .

Under certain operating conditions (for example, if or are pressed) the air recirculation automatically switches off. If "ECON" is pressed, or if the temperature is below -8 °C, the air recirculation will operate only for 12 seconds. ■

Adjusting the fan speed - +

The automatically selected fan speed can be increased or decreased.

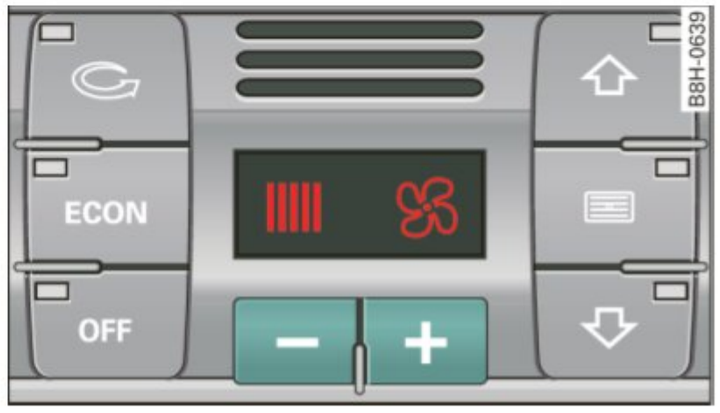


Fig. 131 Fan speed buttons and display indication

– Press the - or + buttons in the center of the control panel ⇒ fig. 131 to adjust the fan speed to your comfort.

The air conditioning system automatically regulates the fan speed in response to the interior temperature. However, you can also adjust the fan speed manually. A line of small bars in the center display above the fan control buttons will retreat or extend to reflect your adjustments to the fan speed. ■

Air distribution

The automatically programmed air distribution can be changed manually.

You can use the , or buttons separately or together in combination. To switch back to the automatic air distribution setting, either switch off the buttons you previously selected, or press AUTO.

Each of the three buttons has its own specific function (the reference numbers refer to the air outlets) ⇒ *page 115,* fig. 132.

Air directed to the windows

All the air is directed to outlets (1), (2) and (3). Contrary to when is pressed, the amount of air remains the same.

Air directed to the driver/front passenger

All the air is directed to outlets (2), (3) and (4) in the instrument panel. Air also is directed through the center console in the rear.

Air directed to the footwells

All the air is directed to outlets (5) and to the outlets under the front seats. ■

Air outlets

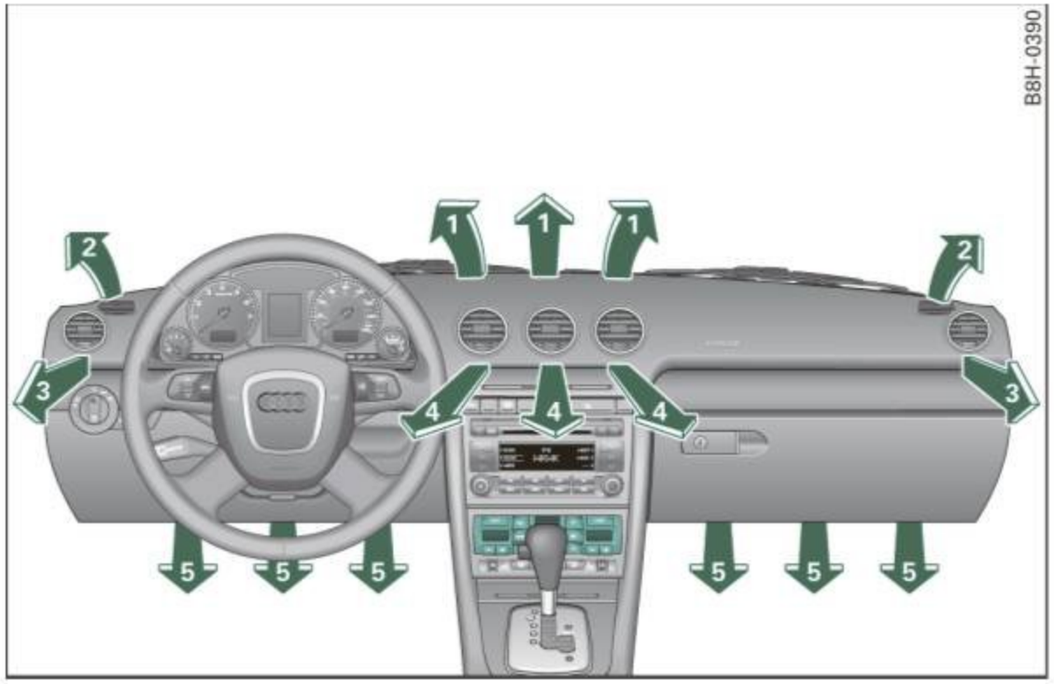


Fig. 132 Instrument panel: where the air outlets are located

Air outlets ⇒ fig. 132 (2), (3) and (4) can be operated as follows:

Outlets (2)

– Move the slide control located behind the outlet to open or close the outlet.

Adjusting air outlets (3) and (4)

– Turn the vertical thumbwheel beside the outlet to increase, reduce or shut down the airflow from that outlet.

– Move the small tab in the center of the outlet louver sideways and up or down to adjust the level and direction of airflow.

The flow of air to the outlets is controlled either automatically or manually depending on the operation mode selected. Heated, unheated or cooled air can flow from all outlets.

The heater outlets for the rear footwells are located under the front seats. When you select outlets (5), air also flows to the rear footwells.

Tips

- When defrosting/defogging the windows, air flows from outlets (1), (2) and (3). To defrost or defog the windows as quickly as possible, air outlets (2) and (3) must be opened.
- When the air conditioner is working, cooled air will flow primarily from outlets (2), (3) and (4). To assure adequate cooling, outlets (2), (3) and (4) should never be completely closed. ■

Defrosting/defogging the windshield

The windshield and side windows are quickly defrosted or defogged

– Press ⇒ *page 111,* fig. 130.

– Press again or press AUTO to switch off the defroster.

The temperature is automatically controlled. Maximum airflow is primarily blown in through outlets (1), (2) and (3) ⇒ *page 115*.

Outlets (2) can be opened and closed with the controls behind them. Outlets (2) and (3) must be opened so the windows can be defrosted as quickly as possible.

By pressing , air recirculation and ECON are switched off. ■

Defrosting/defogging the rear window

The rear window defogger removes moisture from the rear window.

– Press the switch to switch the rear window defogger on and off.

The rear window defogger works only when the ignition is switched on. The light in the switch will illuminate when the defogger is on.

When the outside temperature is warmer than 32 °F (0 °C), the rear window defogger switches off automatically after about ten minutes.

For the sake of the environment

Switch off the defogger when the rear window is clear. When you save electricity, you save fuel. ■

Using the climate controls economically

Using the climate controls prudently can help save fuel.

When you use the air conditioner, engine power is reduced and fuel consumption increases. To save fuel, you should use the air conditioner only when necessary. Also please note the following points:

– If you want to save fuel, activate ECON.

– If you are going to drive with the power top down, use ECON.

For the sake of the environment

By reducing the amount of fuel you use, you also reduce the amount of pollutants emitted into the air. ■

Applies to vehicles: with electrically heated seats

Electrically heated front seats

With the ignition on, the seat cushion and backrest of the front seats can be heated.

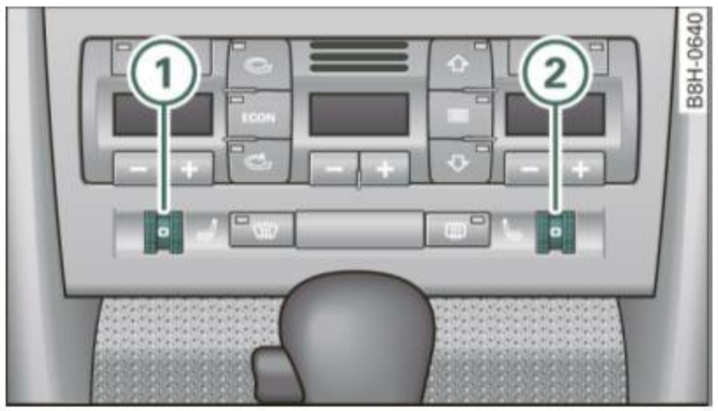


Fig. 133 Center console: thumbwheels for front seat heating

Use the thumbwheels in the center console ⇒ fig. 133 to turn on and adjust front seat heating. An infinite range of positions are possible.

Driver's seat

– Roll the thumbwheel (1) from position (**0**) upward in order to activate the heating elements.

– Select the desired temperature setting from positions 1 through 6.

Front passenger seat

– Roll the thumbwheel (2) from position (**0**) upward in order to activate the heating elements.

When the heating element is activated, the numbers on the thumbwheel will illuminate.

Note

To prevent possible damage to the heating elements, do not kneel on the seats or apply a heavy load to relatively small areas of the seat. ■

Applies to vehicles: with electrically heated rear seats

Electrically heated rear seats

The seat cushions and seat backs of the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

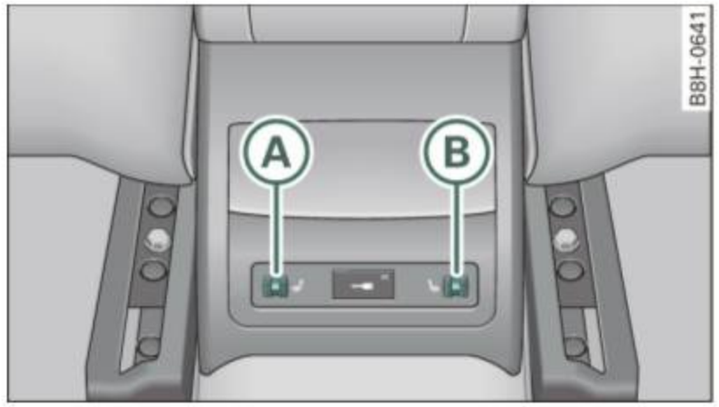


Fig. 134 Center console rear: Heated seats

– Rotate the thumb wheel (A) to turn on and adjust the heating for the left rear seat.

– Rotate the thumb wheel (B) to turn on and adjust the heating for the right rear seat.

With the thumb wheel in the 0 position, heating for the seats is turned off. The range of adjustment is from 1 to 6.

The rear seat heating operates only when the seats are occupied. If the rear seat is not occupied, you should turn the heating for the seats off to prevent unintended heating of the seating surfaces.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat. ■

On the road

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel column

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

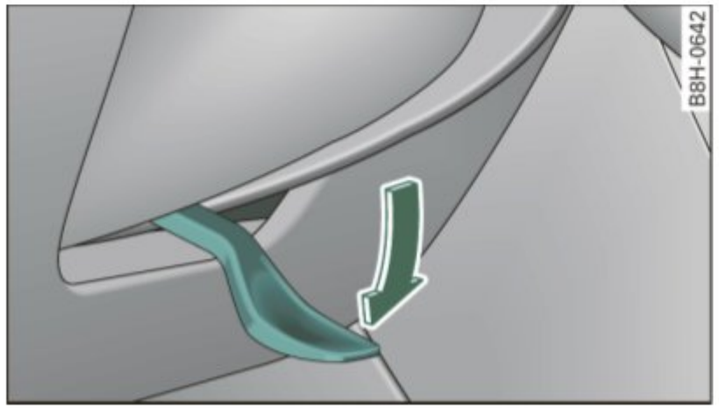


Fig. 135 Lever under the steering column

First, adjust the driver's seat correctly.

– Push the lever ⇒ fig. 135 -Arrow- ⇒ ⚠.

– Move the steering wheel to the desired position.

– Push the lever against the steering column until it locks.

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the center of the steering wheel . If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇒ *page 96,* “Power seat adjustment”.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

- **Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.**
- **Always make sure that the adjustment lever is securely pushed up so that the position of the steering wheel cannot be changed unintentionally when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel ⇒ *page 148,* fig. 154. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.**
- **Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is pointed towards your chest.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.** ■

Ignition lock and ignition switch

Ignition lock

The ignition key starts or stops the engine.

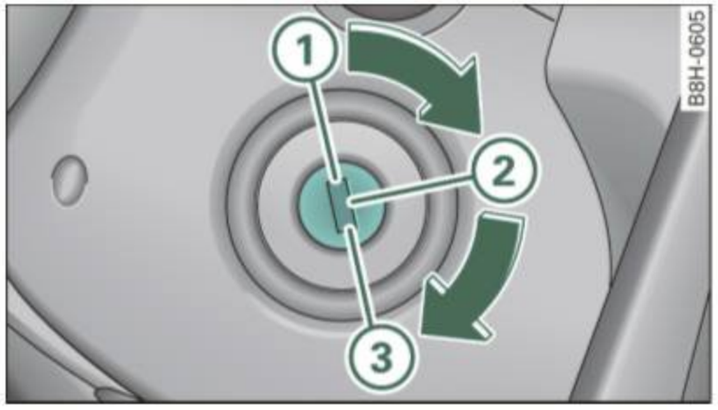


Fig. 136 Ignition lock positions

Ignition off (1)

In position ⇒ fig. 136 (1) both the ignition and engine are off, and the steering is locked.

To **lock the steering** after you have removed the ignition key, turn the steering wheel in either direction until you hear it lock into place. You should always lock the steering whenever you leave your vehicle. This makes a vehicle theft even more difficult ⇒ ⚠.

Ignition on (2)

If it is difficult to turn the key after you have inserted it into the ignition lock, turn the steering wheel back and forth. This will take the load off the steering lock mechanism and you will be able to turn the key freely and start the engine.

Starting the engine (3)

In this position the engine starts. While the engine is starting, the power supply to the headlights and other electrical consumers is temporarily interrupted to conserve battery power. After the engine has started, release the key and it will return to position (2).

Before the starter can be operated again the key must be turned back to position (1). The **non-repeat lock** prevents you from damaging the starter when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never remove the key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is moving. The steering wheel will lock causing loss of control.**
- **If you have to leave your vehicle- even for just a minute- always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This is especially important if you are going to leave children behind in the vehicle. The children could start the engine or use other vehicle controls. Unsupervised use of vehicle controls (for example, power windows) can cause serious personal injuries.**

Tips

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, then you must leave the key in position (2) for about 5 seconds before you can start the engine. ■

Ignition key safety lock

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in the "P" (Park) position.

After switching off the ignition, the ignition key can only be removed from the ignition lock when the selector lever is in the "P" (Park) position. After you have removed the key, the selector lever is locked and cannot be moved. ■

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The engine can only be started with your original Audi key.

– Set the parking brake.

– Move the selector lever to the neutral position (automatic transmission: selector lever in P or N) ⇒ ⚠.

– On vehicles with manual transmission, fully depress the clutch pedal.

– Turn the ignition key to position (3) ⇒ *page 119,* fig. 136 - do not depress the gas pedal when starting the engine!

– Let go of the key as soon as the engine starts.

A cold engine may at first be loud after it has been started. This is due to the hydraulic valves building up the oil pressure. This normal and no need for concern.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop trying after 10 seconds and then try to restart the engine about 30 seconds later.

What to do if the engine does not start

- ⇒ *page 304,* “Starting with jumper cables”
- ⇒ *page 306,* “Emergency towing with commercial tow truck”.

⚠ WARNING

Never start or let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can be fatal if inhaled.

- **Never leave the engine idling unattended. An unattended vehicle with a running engine poses a danger of personal injury or theft.**

Note

- Avoid high engine speeds, fast acceleration or heavy engine loads while the engine is still cold. This could damage the engine.
- The engine cannot be started by pushing or towing the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

To avoid unnecessary engine wear and to reduce exhaust emissions, do not let your vehicle stand and warm up. Be ready to drive off immediately after starting your vehicle. Maintain moderate speed until the engine is completely warm. Remember, the engine performs best at operating temperature. ■

Stopping the engine

– Turn the ignition key to position (1) ⇒ *page 119,* fig. 136.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **The brake booster and servotronic only work when the engine is running. With the ignition turned off, you have to apply more force when steering or braking. Since you cannot steer and stop normally, this can lead to accidents and serious injuries.**
- **The radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes even after you have turned off the engine and removed the ignition key. The radiator fan can also turn on again if the engine coolant heats up because of intense sunlight or heat build-up in the engine compartment.**

Note

Do not stop the engine immediately after hard or extended driving. Keep the engine running for approximately two minutes to prevent excessive heat build-up. ■

Parking brake

Parking brake

When the parking brake is set, it prevents the vehicle from rolling away unintentionally.

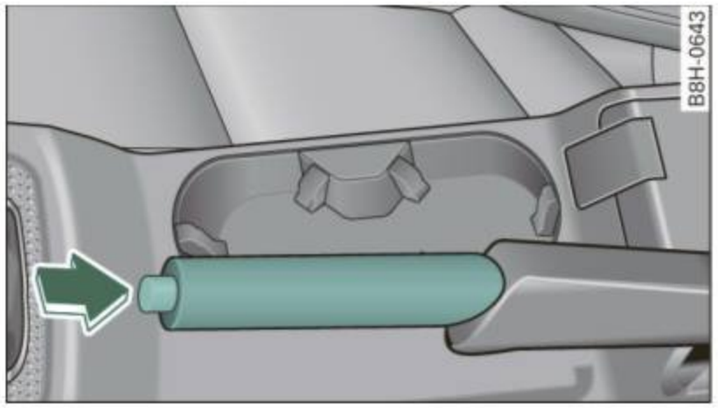


Fig. 137 Center console: Parking brake set

Setting the parking brake

– Pull the parking brake lever all the way up.

Releasing the parking brake

– Pull the parking brake lever up slightly *and* press the release button at the same time ⇒ fig. 137 -arrow-.

– Keep the release button pressed and lower the parking brake ⇒ ⚠.

If you should drive off with the parking brake still set, a warning tone will sound and the following will appear in the instrument cluster to remind you to release the parking brake:

Parking brake set

The parking brake warning comes on only after you have driven for longer than 3 seconds and faster than 5 mph (5 km/h).

The parking brake warning light Brake (Canada: (!)) illuminates when the parking brake is set and you switch on the ignition.

WARNING

Always release the parking brake completely. A partially engaged brake will overheat the rear brakes, reduce their effectiveness and cause excessive wear. This could lead to brake failure and an accident.

Note

Only after the vehicle has come to complete stop, should you firmly set the parking brake and either move the gearshift lever into 1st. gear (manual transmission) or move the selector lever into P (Automatic transmission). ■

Parking

To prevent a parked vehicle from rolling away, there are a few things you should do.

When you park your vehicle, do the following:

– Stop the vehicle using the brake pedal.

– Set the parking brake firmly.

– Move the selector lever into the **P** position ⇒ ⚠. ▶

– Switch off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition lock.

What else you should do when parking your vehicle on an incline or decline

Turn the steering wheel so that if the vehicle should start to roll, it will roll into the curb.

If you are parking on a **decline** (the front of your vehicle facing downhill), turn the front wheels to the right so that they point *toward the curb*.

If you are parking on an **incline** (the font of your vehicle facing uphill), turn the front wheels to the left so that they point *away from the curb*.

Move the selector lever into the **P** position.

⚠ WARNING

This is how you can reduce the risk of injury when leaving your vehicle.

- **Never park the vehicle where it can come in contact with dry grass, spilled fuel or any other flammable materials.**
- **Never allow anyone - especially small children - to remain in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to access the passenger compartment in the event of an emergency. Danger to life!**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. Children could release the parking brake or move the gearshift lever out of gear. The vehicle could start to roll away and cause an accident.**
- **No matter what the season is, the temperature in a parked vehicle can reach dangerous levels.** ■

Acoustic park assist

Applies to vehicles: with 4-channel acoustic park assist

Rear acoustic park assist

The rear acoustic park assist warns you of obstacles or objects behind your car.

How it works

The acoustic park assist warning system (4-channel acoustic park assist) uses ultrasonic sensors to warn you when you are *backing* your vehicle close to an obstacle. The system's 4 sensors are located inside the rear bumper.

Activating

The rear acoustic park assist is activated whenever you shift into **Reverse**. You will hear a warning tone when the system is on.

Reverse

With the car backing up in reverse gear, the collision warning sound sets in at the following *approximate* distances to obstacles:

straight aft	5 ft (1.5 m)
angling aft off vehicle corners	2 ft (0.6 m)

As the distance shrinks, the time interval between the audible tones grows shorter.

The sound changes to a continuous tone as soon as the remaining distance to an obstacle closes to less than about 1 ft. (0.3 m). The steady tone cautions you that you have backed up hazardously close and you risk collision by backing up any further.

Malfunctions in the system

If a warning tone is audible for about five seconds when you turn on the ignition, there is a malfunction in the system. Have the problem corrected by your authorized Audi dealer. ▶

Keep the sensors in the rear bumper clean and free from ice so that the acoustic park assist system can function properly.

WARNING

- **Sensors have dead spaces in which objects cannot be detected. Be especially alert for small children and animals, since they are not always detected by the sensors.**
- **The acoustic park assist system is not a substitute for the driver's own caution and alertness. Ultimate responsibility always remains with the driver during parking and similar maneuvers. Always watch where you are driving.**

Note

- Remember that low obstacles for which a warning has already been issued may "dive" below the system's sensing zone if the vehicle is being backed up closer. In this case, the warning sound shutting off does **not** indicate that you have cleared the obstacle. Instead, impact is imminent.
- Objects such as trailer hitches, barrier chains, narrow posts or fences covered by a thin layer of paint may not always be detected by the system. They can still damage your vehicle without a warning.

Tips

Keep the sensors in the rear bumper clean and free of snow and ice so that the acoustic parking assist system can function properly. ■

Cruise control

General information

The cruise control system allows you to maintain a constant speed.

The cruise control system allows you to maintain a constant driving speed when driving faster than 18 mph (30 km/h) - to the extent this is possible with the given engine power and braking characteristics. This allows you to take your foot off the "gas" and rest it, especially on long trips.

The indicator light (U.S. models: CRUISE, Canadian models:) in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system is on.

WARNING

- **To help keep the vehicle under control, do not use the cruise control system when driving on winding or slippery roads (as caused by heavy rain or loose gravel on the road surface), or in heavy or varying traffic.**
- **Only use the cruise control when traffic, road and weather conditions allow you to drive at a steady speed.**

Tips

The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when driving downhill. The vehicle will accelerate under its own weight. Downshift to a lower gear or use the brakes to slow down. ■

Storing a speed

You must set and then store a vehicle speed using the cruise control.

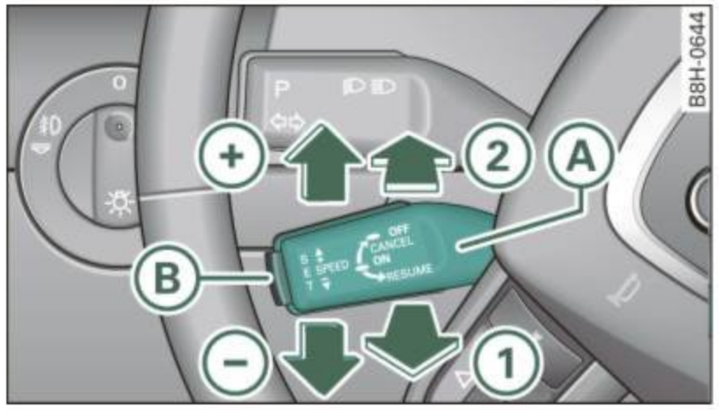


Fig. 138 Cruise control switches

– Accelerate until you reach the driving speed you want to store.
– Pull lever (A) towards the steering wheel (1) ⇒ fig. 138 to switch the system on.
– Press button (B).

After you release button (B), the current vehicle speed is stored and maintained. ■

Changing a stored speed

You can change a stored speed.

Accelerate (faster)

– Lift lever (A) toward (+) ⇒ fig. 138.
– Release the lever to store the new speed.

Decelerate (slower)

– Lower lever (A) toward (-) ⇒ fig. 138.
– Release the lever to store the new speed.

You can also increase the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed will increase as long as you keep the accelerator pedal depressed. When you let up on the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed will automatically return the to previously stored vehicle speed in the cruise control.

If the actual vehicle speed exceeds the stored vehicle speed in the cruise control for longer than five minutes and by more than 6 mph (10 km/h), the cruise control will automatically erase the stored vehicle speed and you will have to reset the cruise control again.

Tapping the lever lightly (A)

By lightly tapping the lever (A) toward (+) ⇒ fig. 138, you can increase vehicle speed by approximately 1 mph (2 km/h).

By lightly tapping the lever (A) toward (-) ⇒ fig. 138, you can decrease vehicle speed by approximately 1 mph (2 km/h). ■

Switching the system off temporarily

Either of the following actions will temporarily deactivate the cruise control:

– pressing the brake pedal, or
– pressing the clutch pedal (on manual transmission models), or
– moving the lever (A) up in direction (2) (not engaging) ⇒ fig. 138.

When you temporarily deactivate the cruise control for a brief period, the previously stored vehicle speed remains in the memory. ▶

To resume the previously stored vehicle speed, release the brake (or clutch) pedal, or you pull lever (A) toward the steering wheel (1).

If no vehicle speed was stored when you switched off the system temporarily, you must reset a new vehicle speed: Accelerate to the desired speed and press button (B) (SET) ⇒ *page 124,* fig. 138.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the cruise control if the stored vehicle speed is faster than existing traffic conditions permit. ■

Switching off the cruise control system

While driving

– Move lever (A) into position (2) until it engages ⇒ *page 124,* fig. 138.

When the vehicle is at a standstill

– Switch off the ignition. ■

Transmission

tiptronic® (6-speed automatic transmission)

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

General information

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled automatic transmission. Upshifting and downshifting takes place *automatically*.

The transmission is also equipped with tiptronic®. It allows the driver to shift gears *manually* if desired ⇒ *page 130*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Driving the automatic transmission

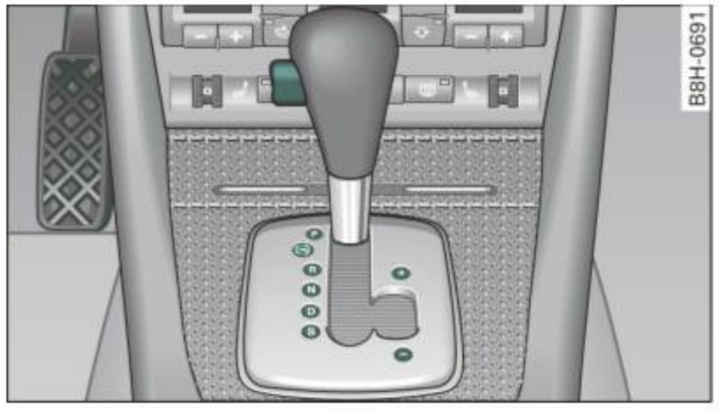


Fig. 139 Shift gate on the center console: selector lever with release button

Starting the engine

– The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**.

Starting off

– Press and hold the brake pedal.

– Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle and move the selector lever from **P** or **N** to **D** or **S** and release the button ⇒ ⚠.

– Wait briefly until the transmission has shifted (you will feel a slight movement).

– Remove your foot from the brake pedal and accelerate.

Maneuvering

– Shift only between **D** and **R** when the vehicle is at a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

Stopping

– Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

– Keep the brake pedal depressed so that the vehicle cannot roll forward or backward while it is idling ⇒ ⚠.

– Once stopped, *do not* depress the accelerator pedal to rev up the engine ⇒ ⚠.

Parking

– Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

– Set the parking brake firmly ⇒ *page 121*, “Parking”.

– Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle, move the selector lever into **P** and then let go of the release button ⇒ ⚠.

▶

The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**. If one of the driving positions is engaged a safety switch will prevent the engine from being started. See also ⇒ *page 120*.

Before you move the selector lever from the **P** position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

- **Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious injury.**

  – **When the selector lever is in a driving position, the vehicle may creep, even at idle speed. Therefore do not release the parking brake or foot brake until you are ready to move, because power is transmitted to the wheels as soon as a driving position is engaged.**

  – **Do not accelerate while selecting a driving position. At this time the engine must be at idle speed so that undue stress is not placed on the clutches in the transmission.**

  – **Remember: - even when stopped briefly with the automatic transmission in "D", "S" or "R", engine power is being transmitted to the wheels. Your vehicle could "creep" forward or backward. When stopped, keep the brake pedal fully depressed and use the parking brake if necessary to keep the vehicle from rolling.**

- **If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N while you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to return to idle speed before selecting a driving position.**
- **Never shift into "R" or "P" when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running.**
- **If you must get out of the vehicle, move the selector lever securely into the P position and apply the parking brake firmly.**
- **If the engine must remain running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever has securely engaged and is locked in "P" with the parking brake firmly set ⇒ *page 242*, "Engine compartment". Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied. ■**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Selector lever positions

This section describes the selector lever positions and driving ranges.



Fig. 140 Display in the instrument cluster: selector lever in position D

The selector lever position engaged appears next to the selector lever as well as in the instrument cluster display.

P - Park

In this selector lever position the transmission is mechanically locked. Engage **P** only when the vehicle is *completely stopped* ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the automatic transmission" on *page 126*.

To shift in or out of position **P**, you must *first* press and hold the brake pedal *and then* press the release button in the selector lever handle while moving the selector lever to or from **P**. You can shift out of this position only with the ignition on. ▶

R - Reverse

The transmission will automatically select the **lowest gear ratio** when you shift into reverse.

Select **R** only when the vehicle is at a *full stop* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the automatic transmission" on *page 126*.

Before you move the selector lever to **R**, press *both* the button in the handle of the selector lever *and* the brake pedal at the same time.

When the ignition is on, the backup lights illuminate when the selector lever is moved into **R**.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in neutral in this position. Shift to this position for standing with the brakes applied ⇒ *page 128*.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the footbrake before and while moving the lever out of **N**.

D - Normal position for driving forward

Position **D** is for normal city and highway driving. It ranges from zero to top speed and all six gears shift automatically, depending on engine load, driving speed and automatically selected shift programs. The gear engaged is shown in the right of the display ⇒ *page 127*, fig. 140.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to **D** out of **N**.

In certain circumstances it may be advantageous to temporarily switch to the manual shift program to manually select gear ratios to match specific driving conditions ⇒ *page 130*.

S – Sport position

Select this position for sportier performance. In this position, the transmission will not upshift as soon, allowing the vehicle to use the increased power available at higher engine speeds to achieve livelier acceleration.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to **S** out of **N**.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the automatic transmission" on *page 126*.

Note

Coasting downhill with the transmission in N and the engine not running will result in damage to the automatic transmission and possibly the catalytic converter. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

The Automatic Shift Lock safeguards you against accidentally shifting into a forward or the reverse gear and causing the vehicle to move unintentionally.

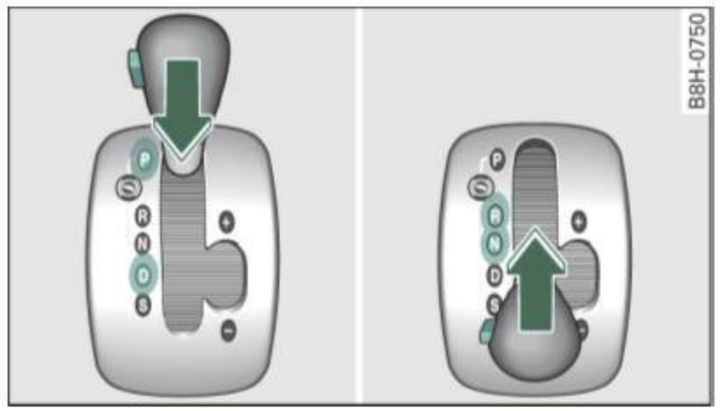


Fig. 141 Shift gate: selector lever lock positions and interlock button highlighted

The selector lever lock is released as follows: ▶

– Turn the ignition on.
– Step on the brake pedal. *At the same time* press and hold the interlock button on the side of the gear selector knob ⇒ *page 128,* fig. 141 with your thumb until you have moved the selector lever to the desired position.

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** positions when the ignition is turned on. To move the lever from these positions the driver must depress the brake pedal. As a reminder to the driver, the following warning appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector is in **P** and **N**:

When stationary apply footbrake while selecting gear

In addition, the symbol will light up on the shift gate at the base of the selector lever.

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the **N** position (going from **R** to **D**). The locking element will lock the selector lever if the lever is left in N (Neutral) for more than approximately 1 second, without the brake pedal being pressed.

At speeds above about 3 mph (5 km/h) the Automatic Shift Lock is automatically deactivated in the **N** position.

Interlock button

The lock button on the selector lever prevents the lever from being accidentally shifted into certain positions. Pressing this button deactivates the selector lever lock. Depending on the direction of the shift, the selector lever locks at different positions. The positions are highlighted in the illustration ⇒ *page 128,* fig. 141.

Ignition key safety interlock

The key cannot be removed from the ignition unless the selector lever is in the **P** park position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the **P** position. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Kick-down

The kick-down feature allows the vehicle to generate maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point that is reached at full throttle, the transmission will select a lower gear ratio based on vehicle speed and engine RPM. The engine RPM will be controlled to produce maximum vehicle acceleration as long as you continue to press the accelerator pedal beyond this resistance point.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when using the kick-down feature on slippery roads. Rapid acceleration may cause the vehicle to skid. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Dynamic shift program (DSP)

The automatic transmission is electronically controlled.

The transmission is self adapting and will **automatically** select the best shift program suited to the driving conditions and driving style.

The transmission will select one of the **economy** programs when you drive at a steady speed or a gradually changing speed without heavy acceleration. This achieves optimum fuel efficiency, with early upshifting and delayed downshifting.

The transmission will automatically select the **sporty** shift programs when you drive at higher speeds, or with heavy acceleration and frequently changing speeds. Upshifts are delayed to make full use of engine power. Downshifting takes place at higher engine speeds than in the economy programs. ▶

The selection of the most suitable shift program is a continuous, automatic process. The driver can also make the transmission switch to a sporty program by **quickly** pressing down the gas pedal.

This causes the transmission to shift down to a lower gear to achieve rapid acceleration, e.g. for quickly passing another vehicle. You do not need to press the gas pedal into the kick-down range. After the transmission has upshifted, the original program is selected according to your driving style.

An additional shift program allows the automatic transmission to select the proper gear for uphill and downhill gradients.

This keeps the transmission from shifting up and down unnecessarily on hills. The transmission will shift down to a lower gear when the driver presses the brake pedal on a downhill gradient. This makes use of the braking effect of the engine without the need to shift down manually. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Manual shift program

Using the manual shift program you can manually select gears.

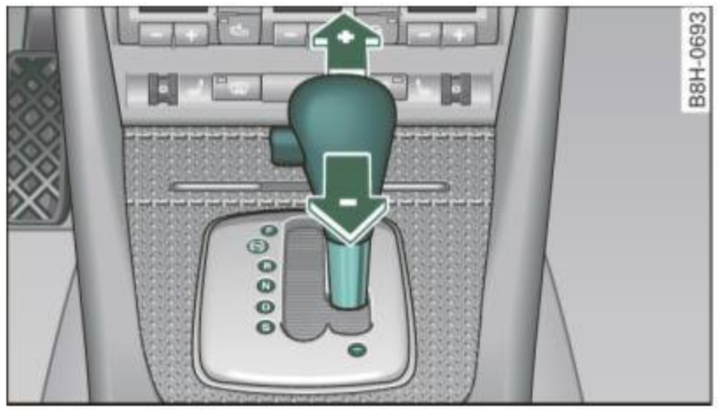


Fig. 142 Center console: shifting the tiptronic® manually



Fig. 143 Display: manual shift program, selected gear highlighted

Switching to manual shift program

– With the selector lever in **D**, push the lever to the right. The display will show **6 5 4 3 2 1** as soon as the selector lever is moved. The gear you select will also be highlighted ⇒ fig. 143.

To upshift

– Push the selector lever forward to the plus position ⊕ ⇒ fig. 142.

To downshift

– Push the lever to the minus position ⊖.

When accelerating, the transmission will automatically shift into the next higher gear before the engine reaches the maximum RPM.

If you apply a light throttle when accelerating, tiptronic® will automatically shift from 1st to 2nd gear to save fuel. If you apply a heavy throttle, the transmission will stay in 1st gear until near maximum RPM is reached, or until the driver shifts into 2nd gear.

If you take your foot off the accelerator pedal when driving down a steep incline, tiptronic® will downshift from the selected gear into the next lower gear until it reaches 1st gear, based on road speed and engine RPM. Automatic downshifting is interrupted as soon as you apply the throttle again. ▶

Tips

- When you shift into the next lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when there is no possibility of over-revving the engine.
- When the kick-down comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear, depending on vehicle and engine speeds.
- The tiptronic® is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Steering wheel with tiptronic®

The shift buttons on the steering wheel allow the driver to shift gears manually.

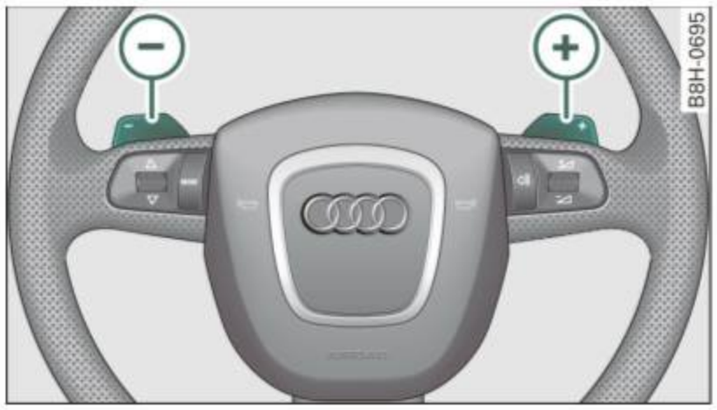


Fig. 144 Steering wheel: Shift buttons

– To downshift, touch the button on the left (–).
– To upshift, touch the button on the right (+).

The shift buttons are activated when the selector lever is in D, S or in the manual shift program (tiptronic).

Of course, you can continue to use the manual shift program with the selector lever on the center console. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Fail-safe mode

If tiptronic® suffers a malfunction, the fail-safe mode maintains minimum driveability.

In the event of particular system malfunctions, the automatic transmission switches to the fail-safe mode. This is signalled by all the segments in the display illuminating or going out.

You can continue to move the selector lever to all positions. The manual shift program (tiptronic) is switched off in the fail-safe mode.

In selector lever positions D and S and in the manual shift program, the transmission remains in 3rd gear if 1st, 2nd or 3rd gear was engaged previously. The transmission remains in 5th gear, if 4th, 5th or 6th gear was engaged previously.

The next time you drive off or start the engine, 3rd gear is engaged.

You can continue to use reverse gear. But the electronic lockout for reverse gear is turned off.

Note

If the transmission switches to fail-safe mode, you should take the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealership as soon as possible to have the condition corrected. ■

multitronic®

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

General information

Your vehicle is equipped with a electronically controlled continuously variable transmission (multitronic®). Inside the multitronic® system, the gear ratios are not shifted in finite steps as in a conventional automatic transmission, but rather **continuously**. As a result, ▶

engine power is applied smoothly and comfortably, and better fuel economy is achieved.

The transmission selects the appropriate gear ratio (upshifts and downshifts) automatically based on set driving programs ⇒ *page 136*.

You can also manually select a shift program (tiptronic®) ⇒ *page 136*.

You should note, that the multitronic transmission differs from a conventional Automatic Transmission. In the multitronic transmission the engine power is transferred via a link-plate chain, rather than by a conventional torque converter. The multitronic transmission greatly reduces vehicle "creep"" when at a standstill and the transmission is in **D S** or **R**. ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Driving the multitronic®

The gear ratio is continuously adapted to vehicle speed and load.

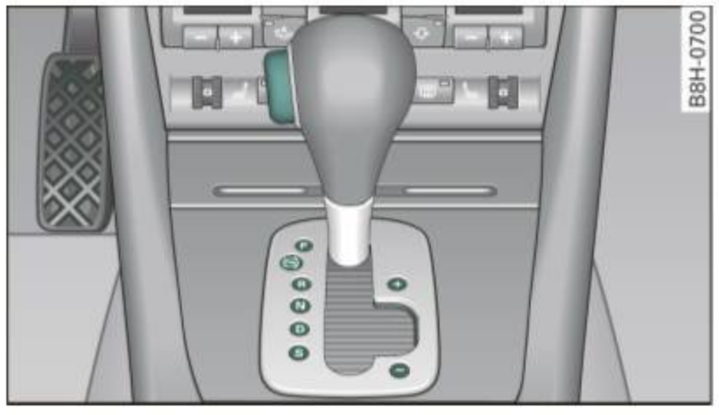


Fig. 145 Section of the center console: selector lever with lock button

Starting the engine

– The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**.

Starting off

– Press and hold the brake pedal.

– Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle and move the selector lever from **P** (alternatively **N**) to **D** (alternatively **S**) and release the button.

– Wait briefly until the transmission has shifted (you will feel a slight movement).

– Remove your foot from the brake pedal and accelerate ⇒ ⚠.

Rocking back and forth to become unstuck

– Shift only between **D** and **R** when the vehicle is at a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

Stopping

– Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

– Keep the brake pedal depressed so that the vehicle cannot roll forward or backward while it is idling ⇒ ⚠.

– Once stopped, *do not* depress the accelerator pedal to rev up the engine ⇒ ⚠.

Parking

– Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

– Set the parking brake firmly ⇒ *page 121,* "Parking".

– Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle, move the selector lever into **P** and then let go of the release button ⇒ ⚠.

Your vehicle is equipped with a **starting assist** that allows for easier starting on inclines. The system is activated when the brake pedal is depressed for a **few seconds**. After releasing the brake pedal, the brake power is held for a moment to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting.

The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**. If one of the driving positions is engaged a safety switch will prevent the engine from being started. See also ⇒ *page 120*.

Before you move the selector lever from the **P** position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

- **Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious injury.**

  – **When the selector lever is in a driving position, the vehicle may creep, even at idle speed. Therefore do not release the parking brake or foot brake until you are ready to move, because power is transmitted to the wheels as soon as a driving position is engaged.**

  – **Do not accelerate while selecting a driving position. At this time the engine must be at idle speed so that undue stress is not placed on the clutches in the transmission.**

  – **Remember: - even when stopped briefly with the automatic transmission in "D", "S" or "R", engine power is being transmitted to the wheels. Your vehicle could "creep" forward or backward. When stopped, keep the brake pedal fully depressed and use the parking brake if necessary to keep the vehicle from rolling.**

  – **If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N while you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to return to idle speed before selecting a driving position.**

  – **Never shift into "R" or "P" when the vehicle is in motion.**

  – **Never get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  – **If you must get out of the vehicle, move the selector lever securely into the P position and apply the parking brake firmly.**

  – **If the engine must remain running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever has securely engaged and is locked in "P" with the parking brake firmly set ⇒ *page 242*, "Engine compartment". Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Selector lever positions

This section describes the selector lever positions and driving ranges.



Fig. 146 Display in the instrument cluster: selector lever in position P

The selector lever position engaged appears next to the selector lever as well as in the instrument cluster display.

P - Park

In this selector lever position the transmission is mechanically locked. ▶

Engage **P** only when the vehicle is *completely stopped* ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the multitronic®" on *page 132*

To shift into or out of position **P**, you must *first* press and hold the brake pedal *and then* press the release button in the selector lever handle while moving the selector lever to **P**.

R - Reverse

The transmission will automatically select the **lowest gear ratio** when you shift into reverse.

Select **R** only when the vehicle is at a *full stop* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the multitronic®" on *page 132*.

Before you move the selector lever to **R**, press *both*, the button in the handle of the selector lever *and* the brake pedal at the same time.

When the ignition is on, the backup lights illuminate when the selector lever is moved into **R**.

N - Neutral

Shift to this position for standing with brakes applied ⇒ *page 135*.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the footbrake before and while moving the lever out of **N**.

Do not use **N** for coasting downhill.

D - Normal driving position for forward

Depending on the load on the engine, vehicle speed and the dynamic control program, the transmission will select the **optimal** gear ratio.

In certain circumstances it may be advantageous to temporarily switch to the manual shift program to manually select gear ratios to match specific driving conditions ⇒ *page 136*.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the footbrake before and while moving the lever to **D** out of **N**.

S – Sport position

Select this position for sportier performance. In this position, the transmission will not upshift as soon, allowing the vehicle to use the increased power available at higher engine speeds to achieve livelier acceleration.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to **S** out of **N**.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the multitronic®" on *page 132*.

Note

Coasting downhill with the transmission in N and the engine not operating will result in damage to the automatic transmission and possibly the catalytic converter. ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

The Automatic Shift Lock safeguards you against accidentally shifting into a forward or the reverse gear and causing the vehicle to move unintentionally.

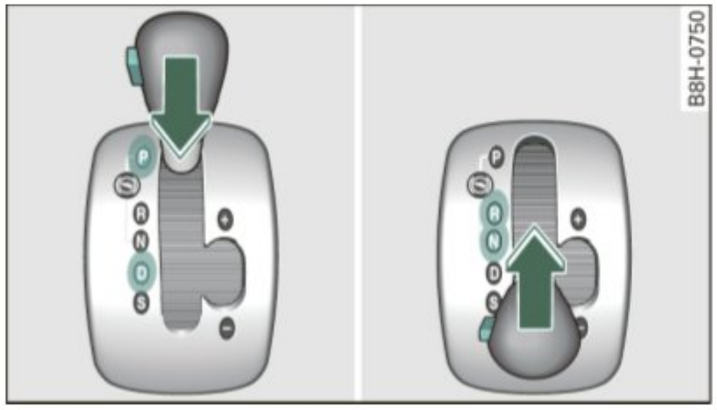


Fig. 147 Shift gate: selector lever lock positions and interlock button highlighted

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

- Turn the ignition on.
- Step on the brake pedal. *At the same time* press and hold the interlock button on the side of the gear selector knob ⇒ *page 128,* fig. 141 with your thumb until you have moved the selector lever to the desired position.

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** positions when the ignition is turned on. To move the lever from these positions the driver must depress the brake pedal. As a reminder to the driver, the following warning appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector is in **P** and **N**:

When stationary apply footbrake while selecting gear

In addition, the symbol will light up on the shift gate at the base of the selector lever.

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the **N** position (going from **R** to **D**). The locking element will lock the selector lever if the lever is left in N (Neutral) for more than approximately 1 second, without the brake pedal being pressed.

At speeds above about 3 mph (5 km/h) the Automatic Shift Lock is automatically deactivated in the **N** position.

Interlock button

The lock button on the selector lever prevents the lever from being accidentally shifted into certain positions. Pressing this button deactivates the selector lever lock. Depending on the direction of the shift, the selector lever locks at different positions. The positions are highlighted in the illustration ⇒ fig. 147.

Ignition key safety interlock

The key cannot be removed from the ignition unless the selector lever is in the **P** park position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the **P** position. ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Kick-down

The kick-down feature allows the vehicle to generate maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point that is reached at full throttle, the transmission will select a lower gear ratio based on vehicle speed and engine RPM. The engine RPM will be controlled to produce maximum vehicle acceleration as long as you continue to press the accelerator pedal beyond this resistance point.

WARNING

Be careful when using the kick-down feature on slippery roads. Rapid acceleration may cause the vehicle to skid. ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Dynamic shift program (DSP)

The multitronic® transmission is electronically controlled.

The transmission selects the appropriate gear ratio (upshifts and downshifts) automatically based on preset driving programs.

The transmission will select one of the **economy** programs when you drive at a steady speed or a gradually changing speeds without heavy acceleration. This gives best fuel efficiency, with early upshifting and delayed downshifting.

The transmission will automatically select the **sporty** shift programs when you drive at higher speeds, or with heavy acceleration and frequently changing speeds. Upshifts are delayed to make full use of engine power. Downshifting takes place at higher engine speeds than in the economy programs.

The selection of the most suitable shift program is a continuous, automatic process. The driver can also make the transmission switch to a sporty program by **quickly** pressing down the gas pedal.

This causes the transmission to shift down into a lower gear ratio and makes quick acceleration possible (to pass another vehicle) You do not need to press the gas pedal into the kickdown range. After the transmission has upshifted, the original program is selected according to your driving style.

An additional shift program allows the automatic transmission to select the proper gear for uphill and downhill gradients.

This prevents the transmission from shifting up and down unnecessarily on hills. The transmission will shift down to a lower gear ratio when the driver presses the brake pedal on a downhill gradient. This makes use of the braking effect of the engine without the need to shift down manually.

If you are driving in hills and mountains, the transmission will continuously adjust the gear ratio to the road grade. If you press the brake pedal when driving downhill, the transmission will downshift automatically. This increases the braking effect of the engine.

If the cruise control is on when you are traveling downhill, the transmission will automatically select a lower gear ratio in order to maintain the set vehicle speed. This will cause the engine speed to increase. ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

tiptronic® manual shift program

Using the manual shift program (tiptronic®) you can manually shift between seven pre-programmed gear ratios (transmission positions).



Fig. 148 Center console: shifting manually



Fig. 149 Display: manual shift program, selected gear highlighted

Switching to manual shift program

– With the selector lever in **D**, push lever to the right. The display will show **7 6 5 4 3 2 1** as soon as the selector lever is switched over. The gear you select will also be highlighted in the display ⇒ *page 136,* fig. 149.

To upshift

– Push the selector lever forward to the plus position ⇒ *page 136,* fig. 148 (+).

To downshift

– Push the lever to the minus position (-).

When accelerating, the transmission will automatically shift into the next higher gear before the engine reaches the maximum RPM.

When accelerating, if you apply a light throttle, the tiptronic® will automatically shift into the next higher gear to save fuel. If you apply a heavy throttle, the transmission will stay in gear engaged until near maximum RPM are reached, or until the driver manually shifts into a higher gear.

If you take your foot off the accelerator pedal when driving down a steep incline, the tiptronic® will downshift from the selected gear into the next lower gear based on road speed and engine RPM. The automatic downshifting is interrupted as soon as you apply throttle again.

Tips

- When you shift into the next lower gear, the engine will downshift only when there is no possibility of over-revving.
- When the kick-down comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear depending on vehicle and engine speeds.
- The tiptronic® is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode. ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Steering wheel with tiptronic®

The shift buttons on the steering wheel allow the driver to shift gears manually.

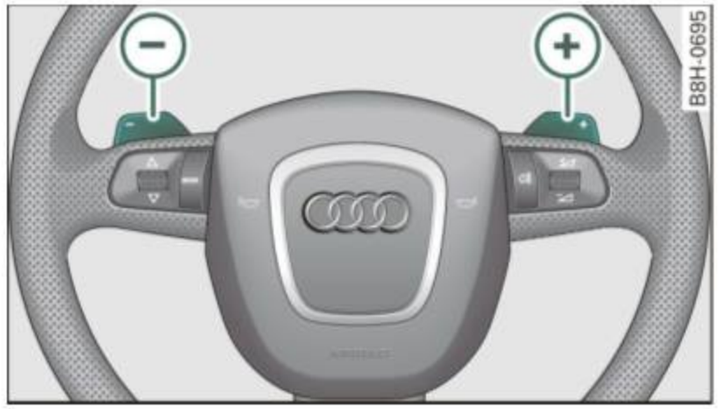


Fig. 150 Steering wheel: Shift buttons

– To downshift, touch the button on the left (-).

– To upshift, touch the button on the right (+).

The shift buttons are activated when the selector lever is in D, S or in the manual shift program (tiptronic).

Of course, you can continue to use the manual shift program with the selector lever on the center console. ■

Applies to vehicles: with multitronic® Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Fail-safe mode

If the multitronic® suffers a malfunction the fail-safe mode maintains minimum driveability.

In the event of particular system malfunctions, the automatic transmission switches to the fail-safe mode. This is signalled by all the segments in the display illuminating or going out. ▶

You can continue to move the selector lever to all positions. The manual shift program (tiptronic) is switched off in the fail-safe mode.

You can continue to use reverse gear. But the electronic lockout for reverse gear is turned off.

Note

If the transmission switches to fail-safe mode, you should take the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealership as soon as possible to have the condition corrected. ■

HomeLink®

Universal remote control

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

General information

The HomeLink® feature can learn up to three radio frequency codes for most current transmitters used for operating garage doors, estate gates, home or outdoor lighting systems, and other devices.

You must first program the HomeLink® transmitter before you can use the system ⇒ *page 140,* "Programming the HomeLink® transmitter".

In order to program the HomeLink® transmitter for devices utilizing rolling code, a second person on a ladder who can safely reach the garage door opener motor is recommended. It is also necessary to locate the "learn" button on your garage door opener motor. Refer to the operating instructions for the opener, as the location and color of this button may vary by manufacturer.

You can still use the original remote control for the device at any time.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use the HomeLink® transmitter with any garage door opener that does have not the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.**
- **A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **For safety reasons never release the parking brake or start the engine while anyone is standing in front of the vehicle.**
- **A garage door or an estate gate may sometimes be set in motion when the HomeLink® remote control is being programmed. If the device is repeatedly activated, this can overstrain motor and damage its electrical components - an overheated motor is a fire hazard!**
- **To avoid possible injuries or property damage, please always make absolutely certain that no persons or objects are located in the range of motion of any equipment being operated.**

Tips

- If you would like more information on HomeLink®, where to purchase the HomeLink® compatible products, or would like to purchase the HomeLink® Home Lighting Package, please call toll-free: 1-800-355-3515.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 320.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

Programming the HomeLink® transmitter

The transmitter is programmed in two phases. For rolling code transmitters, a third phase is also necessary.

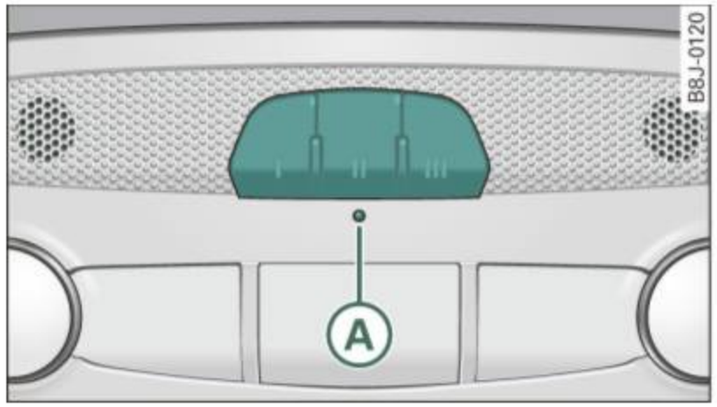


Fig. 151 Overhead console: HomeLink® keypad



Fig. 152 Front bumper, driver side: location of transmitter unit

Phase 1: programming the overhead keypad

1. Make sure your vehicle is within operating range of the remote controlled garage door opener.
2. Set the parking brake ⇒ ⚠ in "General information" on *page 139*.
3. Turn the ignition on. Do not start the engine!
4. Press and hold the two outside HomeLink® buttons Ⓘ and Ⓘⅈⅈ for approximately 20 seconds until indicator light Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 151 begins to flash. Then release both buttons. Do not hold the buttons for longer than 30 seconds.

– This procedure only needs to be performed **once**. It erases the factory-set default codes and does not have to be repeated to program additional remote controls.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink® button Ⓘ, Ⓘⅈ or Ⓘⅈⅈ until the indicator light Ⓐ starts flashing *slowly*. Release the button.

– *The system will remain in programming mode for 5 minutes. Go to the front of the vehicle and proceed with phase 2.*

Phase 2: programming the bumper mounted transmitter

6. Hold the *original remote control* at a distance between 0–6 in. (0–15 cm) from the bumper below the appropriate headlight for your vehicle⇒ fig. 152 (use the shortest distance possible).
7. Aim the remote control just below the **driver side** headlight.
8. Press and hold the activation button on the remote control.

– May be different in Canada. If so, press and re-press (cycle) the activation button on your remote control every two seconds.

9. The emergency flashers will flash **three times** (after about 15–60 seconds) when the programming is successful. Release the button on the remote control.

– *To program more devices, repeat steps 4 to 9.*

10. Press and hold the trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light (A) ⇒ *page 140,* fig. 151.

– If the indicator light is solid/continuous, programming is complete and your device should activate when you press and release the trained HomeLink® button.

– If the indicator light blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and is then a solid/continuous light, proceed with phase 3 to program a rolling code device.

Phase 3: rolling code programming

– A second person on a ladder who can safely reach the garage door opener motor is recommended.

11. Locate the "learn" button on the garage door opener motor (refer to the operating instructions for the opener, as the location of this button may vary by manufacturer).

12. Press and release the learn button on the garage door opener motor.

– **Note:** once the button is pressed, there are **30 seconds** in which to initiate the next step.

13. On the HomeLink® keypad inside the vehicle, firmly press and hold the HomeLink® button previously programmed in phases 1 and 2 for two seconds and release. Repeat this sequence **twice**.

– Some vehicles may require the press/hold/release sequence up to three times to complete the training process.

– *HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device.*

If the 5 minute time limit is exceeded, the **emergency flashers will flash one time** to indicate that the process has been terminated. In this case, repeat steps 4 through 9.

If the emergency flashers do not flash *three* times (after about 15–60 seconds), programming was not successful. In this case, repeat steps 4 through 9.

Remote control units for garage door openers in Canada are set to stop transmitting radio frequency signals after two seconds. This time may not be sufficient for the HomeLink® system to learn the radio frequency signal. Perform all other steps as described above. ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

Operating the HomeLink® transmitter

The HomeLink® transmitter works in the same manner as the original handheld remote control that came with the system.

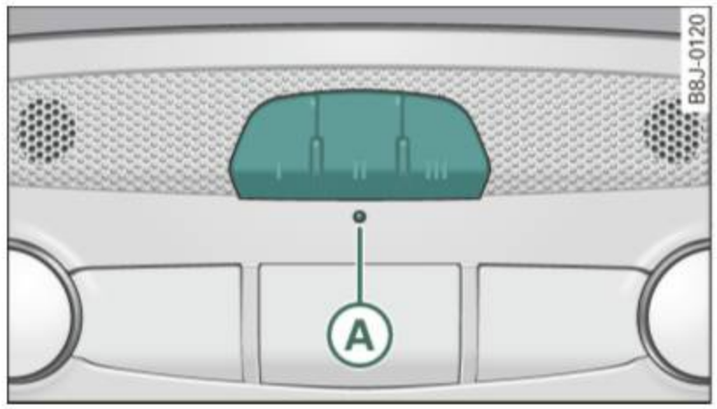


Fig. 153 Close-up: HomeLink® keypad

– Press the appropriate programmed button (I), (II) or (III) to activate the desired remote control function ⇒ ⚠ in "General information" on *page 139*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

Reprogramming a single button

A HomeLink® button can be reprogrammed individually without affecting the other button allocations.

Programming the overhead keypad

– Press the appropriate HomeLink® button until the indicator light begins flashing slowly.

Programming the bumper mounted transmitter

1. Hold the *original remote control* at a distance between 0–5 in. (0–13 cm) from the bumper below the appropriate headlight for your vehicle (use the shortest distance possible).
2. Aim the remote control just below the **driver side** headlight.
3. Press and hold the activation button on the remote control.
4. The emergency flashers will flash **three times** (after about 15–60 seconds) when the programming is successful. Now release the button on the remote control.

– If the device utilizes a rolling code, please follow phase 3 of ⇒ *page 140,* "Programming the HomeLink® transmitter" for rolling code programming.

This procedure will cause the existing programming on the HomeLink® button to be erased! ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

Erasing the programming of the HomeLink® transmitter

When you erase the programming, the programming on all three of the transmitter channels with be lost!

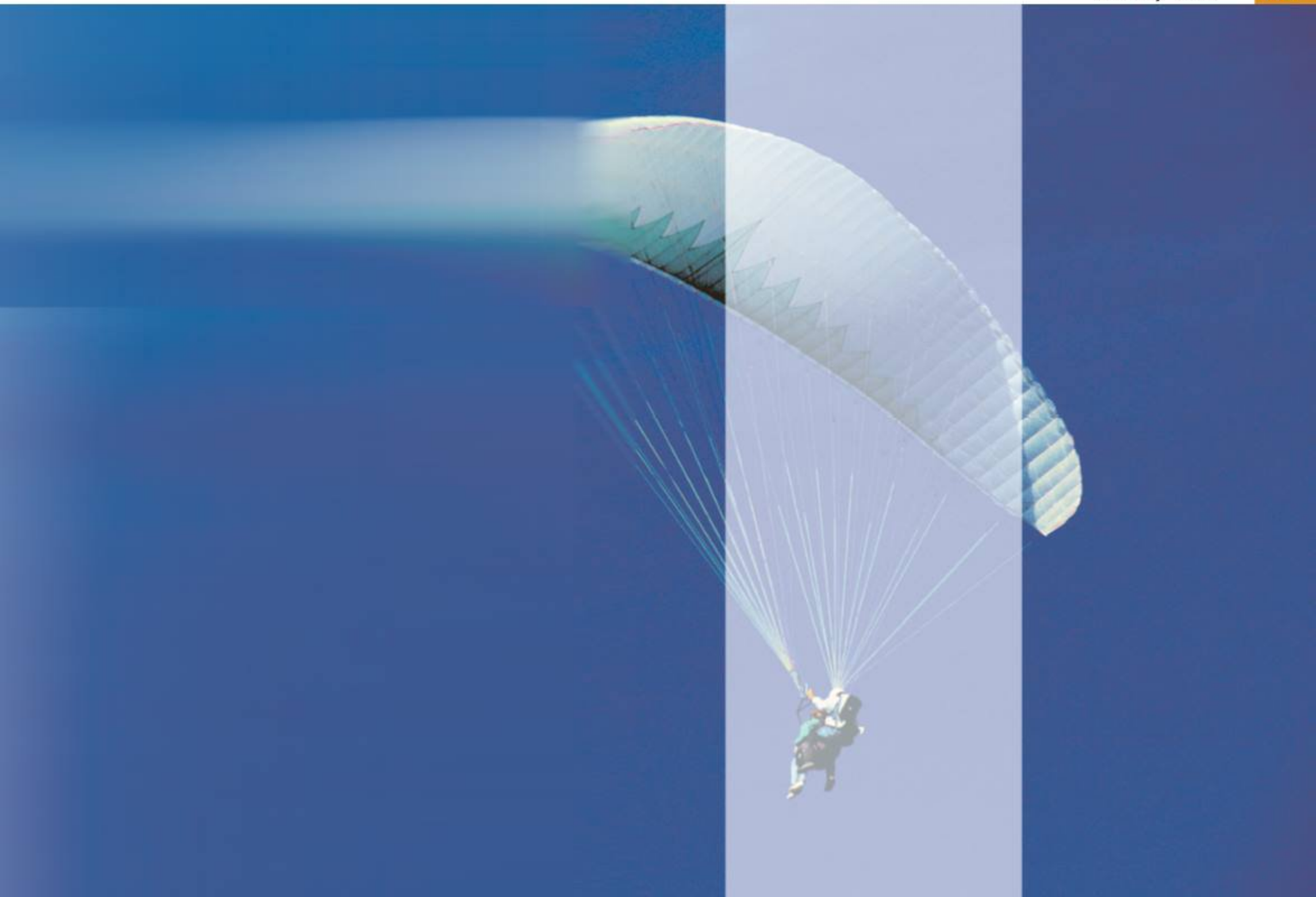
– Perform steps 1 to 4 as described on ⇒ *page 140,* "Phase 1: programming the overhead keypad".

When completed, the HomeLink® system will be in the programming mode and is then ready to learn the codes for remote controlled devices.

Tips

- Programmed buttons cannot be erased individually.
- For security reasons you are advised to erase the programming of the HomeLink® system before you sell your vehicle. ■





Driving Safely

General notes

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, the active rollover protection system, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as for that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.**
- **Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.**
- **Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.** ■

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident. The following is a listing of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- safety belt pre-tensioners for the outboard seating positions,
- front airbags,
- knee airbags for the front seats,
- side airbags in the front seats,
- LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always properly adjusted and properly used!

Safety is everybody's responsibility! ■

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

– Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
– Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
– Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
– Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇒ *page 107*.
– Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
– Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
– Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
– Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇒ *page 190,* “Child Safety”.
– Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇒ *page 92,* “General recommendations”.
– Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇒ *page 159*. ■

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver’s ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇒ ⚠. Therefore:

– Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
– NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
– Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
– ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
– Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
– Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used. ■

Proper occupant seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

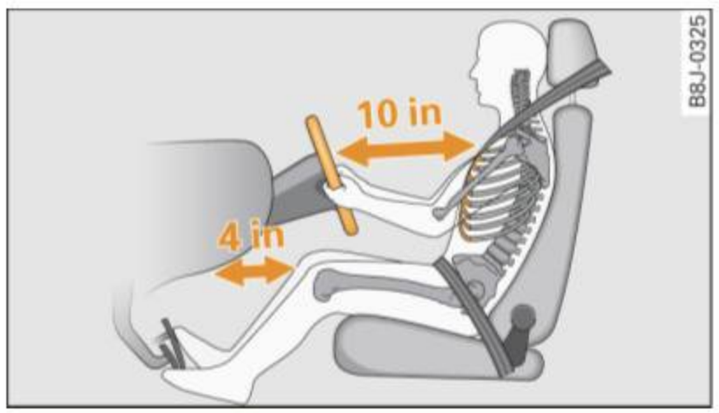


Fig. 154 The correct distance between driver and steering wheel

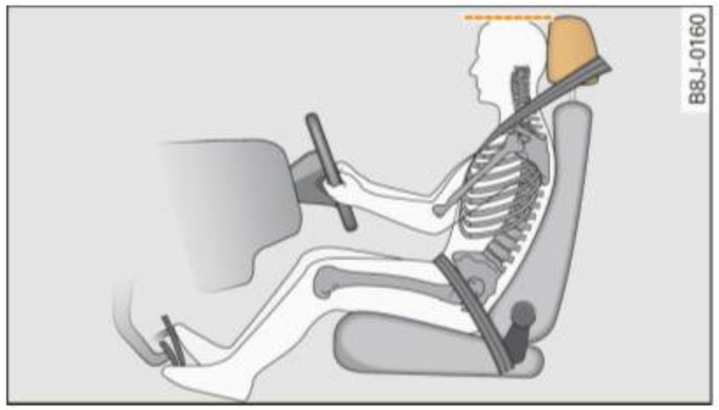


Fig. 155 Correct head restraint position for driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

– Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇒ fig. 154. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.

– Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but no lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ fig. 155.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇒ *page 163*.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇒ *page 93* and ⇒ *page 96*.

⚠ WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it deploys. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates**
- **Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.**
- **Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.**
- **Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.**
- **Children must always ride in child seats ⇒ *page 190*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 168*.** ■

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible. There must be a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between the breastbone and the instrument panel ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but not lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ *page 151*.

– Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇒ *page 163*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇒ *page 92*.

⚠ WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury: ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.**
- **Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.**
- **Always make sure that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.**
- **Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.**
- **Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.**
- **Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.**
- **Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.**
- **Children must always ride in child seats ⇒ *page 190*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 168*. ■**

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

– Make sure that the seatback of the front seats are securely latched in the upright position ⇒ *page 99*.
– Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
– Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇒ *page 163*.
– Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇒ *page 190*.

⚠ WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

- **Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.**
- **Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts! ■**

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

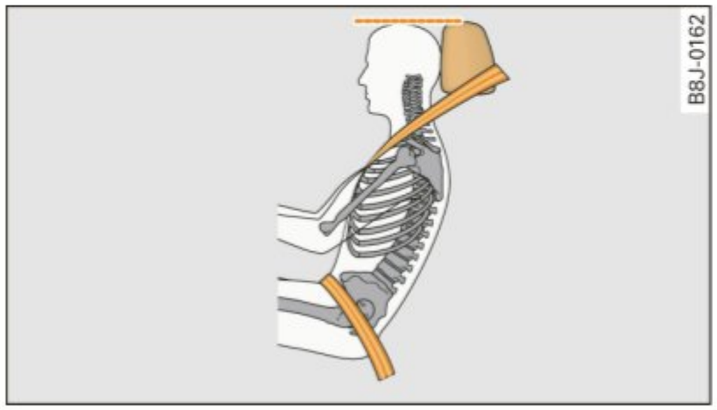


Fig. 156 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the restraint is level with the top of your head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ fig. 156.

Adjusting head restraints ⇒ *page 95* and ⇒ *page 98*.

The head restraints on the rear seats are fixed and cannot be adjusted ⇒ *page 101*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- **Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.**
- **Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Each head restraint must be adjusted according to occupants' size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.**
- **Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.**
- **Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇒ *page 190*.**

Tips

In the event of a rear collision, the shape of the seat specifically supports the upper part of the body and the head is supported at an early stage. This increases the protective action and decreases the risk of whiplash. ■

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys ▶

and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇒ ⚠.

The following bullets list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- never stand up in the vehicle
- never stand on the seats
- never kneel on the seats
- never ride with the seatback reclined
- never lie down on the rear seat
- never lean up against the instrument panel
- never sit on the edge of the seat
- never sit sideways
- never lean out the window
- never put your feet out the window
- never put your feet on the instrument panel
- never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- never ride in the footwell
- never ride in the cargo area

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.** ■

Driver and passenger side footwell

Important safety instructions

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

- **No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.**
- **No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.** ■

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions. ▶

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

- **Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!**
- **Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.** ■

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

– Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇒ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.**
- **Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.**
- **Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.**
- **Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.** ■

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment. ▶

– Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.**

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

- **Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:**
  - **Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.**
  - **Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.**
- **Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.**
- **Please observe information on safe driving ⇒ *page 146*.**

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

- **Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:**
  - **Close all windows,**
  - **Close the power top,**
  - **Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,**
  - **Switch off the air recirculation,**
  - **Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.**

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the power roof and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

- **After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.**
- **Never let children play in or around the vehicle.**
- **Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.**

Tips

- Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging when the power top is closed. Stale air escapes to the outside through slots in the trim panels on both sides of the luggage compartment. Make sure that these slots are not blocked.

- The tire pressure must correspond to the load - see the tire pressure sticker on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. ■

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)

or write to:

Administrator
NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll free hotline:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0371

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Road Safety and Motor Vehicle Regulation Directorate
Transport Canada
Tower C, Place de Ville,
330 Sparks Street
Ottawa, ON K1A 0N5

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/menu.htm ■

Automatic rollover protection system

Function

The automatic rollover protection system helps to protect the passengers in case the vehicle turns over.

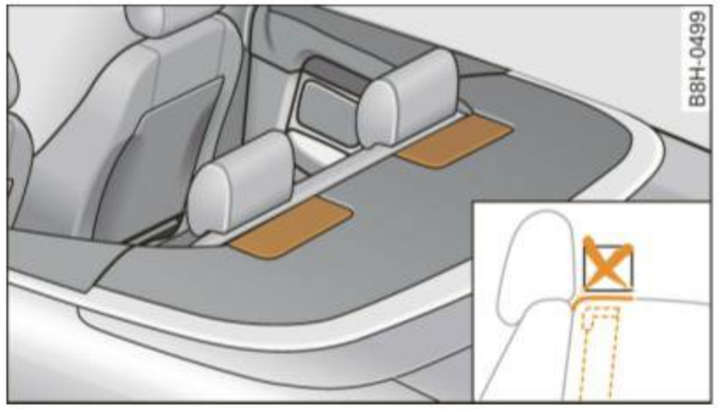


Fig. 157 Rear seats: extension area of roll-over bars

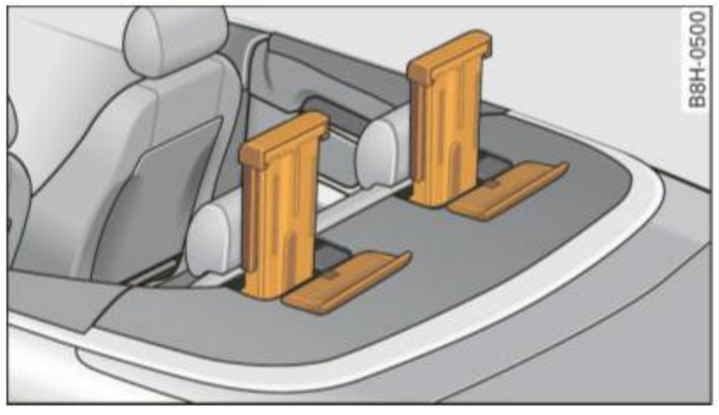


Fig. 158 Rear seats: rollover bars up and fully deployed

The automatic rollover protection system consists of these components:

- two solid rollover bars
- the safety belts with belt tensioners
- the windshield frame
- the rollover sensor system.

The automatic rollover protection system provides additional protection in case the vehicle rolls over. As the vehicle starts to tilt, the sensors activate the two rollover bars located behind the rear seats to shoot up within a fraction of a second ⇒ fig. 158.

In combination with the reinforced windshield frame and the belt tensioners, the rollover protection bars help to protect the passengers in the front and in the rear in case of a rollover.

The automatic rollover protection system activates with the power top open *and* closed.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place any objects in the area behind the rear seats ⇒ fig. 157. This is the exact area where the rollover bars will shoot up when the system is triggered. Any objects sitting in this space will be catapulted into the interior. Depending on their weight, objects placed there can also slow down rapid deployment of the rollover bars. - Risk of serious injury or death! ■

When is the rollover protection system triggered?

The rollover protection system is triggered in a collision or if the vehicle overturns in an accident.

The electronic control unit processes the signals from the on-board sensors, evaluates vehicle motion and forces acting on the vehicle. Depending on the severity of the collision, the control unit then activates the rollover protection system.

If the vehicle rolls sideways beyond a certain angle, the first action is to extend the rollover bars. If the vehicle rolls further, the system will additionally activate the front belt tensioners and, if there are passengers on the rear seats and they are wearing the safety belts, the rear belt tensioners as well.

To provide extra safety, the rollover protection system is also activated in head-on, side and rear-end collisions if the impact is severe enough. ■

Lowering the rollover protection bars after deployment

Lower the rollover protection bars only if the bars were automatically deployed without the vehicle actually colliding or overturning.

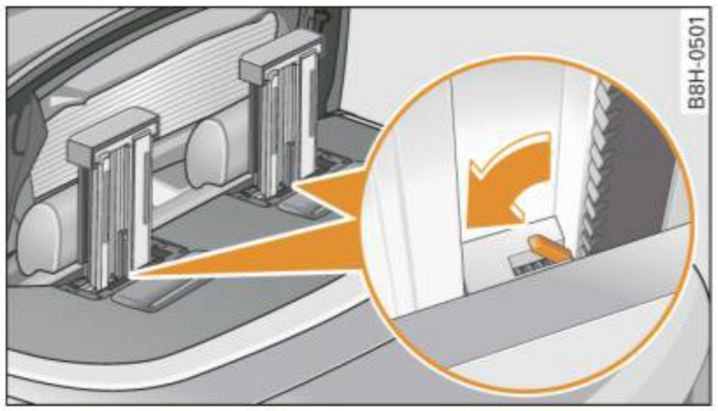


Fig. 159 Extended rollover bar with release lever.

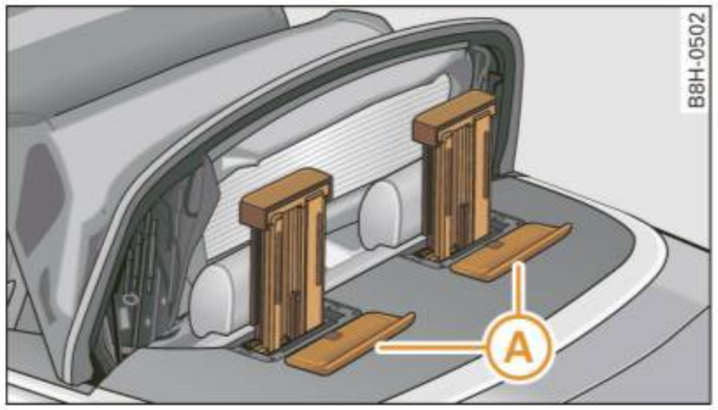


Fig. 160 Rollover bar with the power top base frame raised straight up

If the rollover protection system deployed the rollover bars without the car actually overturning or colliding, you can lower the roll bars yourself without having to use a special tool. Once it has been lowered, the rollover protection system is once again fully operational. If you do not feel comfortable doing this sort of work, have it done by a professional mechanic.

With the power top open

- Push the lever ⇒ fig. 159 downward to the left in the direction indicated by the arrow and keep holding it down.
- Now simultaneously push the rollover bar down.
- Release the lever an inch or two before you push it back in completely.
- Then press the rollover bar all the way down until you hear it engage.
- Check to make sure the rollover bar is securely engaged before you release your grip on the bar.
- Close the cover (A) ⇒ fig. 160.
- Perform the same procedure on the second rollover bar.

With the power top closed

- Turn on the ignition.
- Press the power top switch to raise the base frame with the rear window until it stands straight up ⇒ fig. 160.
- Press the lever ⇒ fig. 159 down and to the left in the direction indicated by the arrow and keep holding it down.
- Now simultaneously push the rollover bar down.
- Release the lever an inch or two before you push it back in completely.

– Then press the rollover bar all the way down until you hear it engage.

– Check to make sure the rollover bar is securely engaged before you release your grip on the bar.

– Close the cover (A) ⇒ *page 157,* fig. 160.

– Perform the same procedure on the second rollover bar.

– You can now open and close the power top again.

⚠ WARNING

• If there is a problem in the rollover protection system, the system must be checked by a professional mechanic as soon as possible. If this is not done, there is a risk that the rollover protection system may not be activated in the event of an accident.

• No modifications of rollover protection system components are permitted.

• Work on the rollover protection system must only be done by a professional mechanic. Improperly performed work can cause the system to fail or release unintentionally, possibly causing an injury!

• Always have your vehicle serviced whenever the service interval display indicates that it is time for service. This will ensure that the system will operate properly over the long term. The rollover protection system must be checked by a professional mechanic every two years or sooner. ■

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

– Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.** ■

Number of seats

Your vehicle has a total of four seating positions: two in the front and two in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.**
- **Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.**
- **Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.** ■

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 161 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

– Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly. ▶

– Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.

– Protect your children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning sound.

After the ignition is switched on, the warning tone will come on for about 6 seconds along with a warning light in the instrument cluster if the driver has not fastened his safety belt. As soon as the driver has fastened his safety belt, the warning tone will stop and the warning light will go out.

If the driver has not buckled-up within about 24 seconds after the warning tone has stopped, the warning tone will sound again for about 6 seconds. The warning tone will sound repeatedly for about 6 seconds at 24 second intervals until the driver has buckled-up. The safety belt warning system is active for about 5 minutes and during this time the warning light in the instrument cluster will stay on.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts. ■

Why safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.



Fig. 162 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 163 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times! ▶

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇒ *page 160,* fig. 162, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇒ *page 160,* fig. 163.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions. ■

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 164 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 165 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇒ fig. 164. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇒ fig. 165. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger. ■

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 166 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained! ■

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

– Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
– Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- **Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are properly restrained.**
- **For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the body.**
- **Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any single safety belt.**
- **Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.**
- **Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never let any person ride with feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.**
- **Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.**
- **Never wear belts twisted.**
- **Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.**
- **Never wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.**
- **Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce their effectiveness.**
- **Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.**
- **Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the correct use of some child restraint systems.**
- **Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.**
- **Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.**
- **Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇒ *page 242,* "Safety belts".** ■

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Seat first - everybody buckle up!



Fig. 167 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇒ *page 92,* "General recommendations".

– Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒ ⚠.

– Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ fig. 167.

– Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇒ *page 20,* "Airbag system AIR BAG".

Switchable locking feature

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a switchable locking feature that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇒ *page 200.*

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇒ *page 164,* "Safety belt position".

- **Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.**
- **Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.**
- **A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.**
- **Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇒ *page 202.* ■**

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

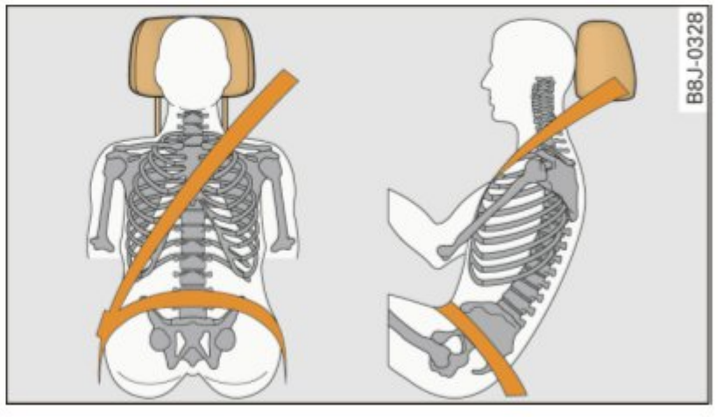


Fig. 168 Head restraint and safety belt position as seen from the side

Use the height adjustment to change the position of the shoulder straps of the front seat belts.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.**
- **The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body ⇒ fig. 168. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.**
- **The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇒ fig. 168. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.**
- **A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ *page 162*. ■**

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.

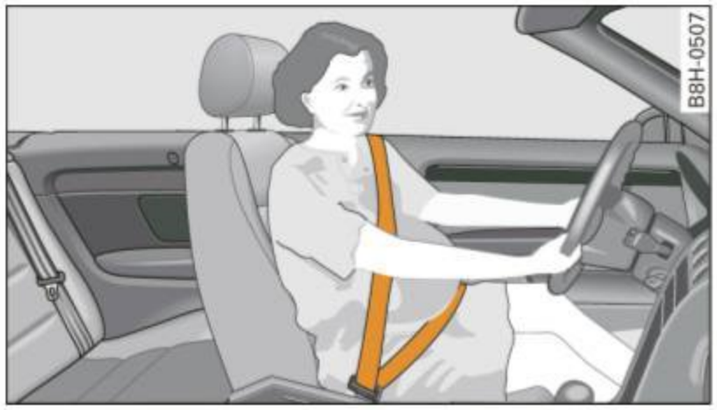


Fig. 169 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇒ *page 164*.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ *page 92*, "General recommendations".

– Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒ fig. 169, ⇒ ⚠.

– Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ *page 163*, fig. 167.

– Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ ⚠ in "Fastening safety belts" on *page 163*. ■**

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.



Fig. 170 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

– Push the red release button on the buckle ⇒ fig. 170. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇒ ⚠.

– Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed. ■

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ *page 162*.** ■

Safety belt pretensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇒ ⚠ in “Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner” on *page 167*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

Tips

The safety belt pretensioner can only be activated once.

- In minor frontal and side collisions, in rear-end collisions, in a rollover and in accidents involving very little impact force, the safety belt pretensioner are not activated.
- When the safety belt pretensioners are activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
- Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you. ■

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

- **The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.**
- **Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.**
- **Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.**
- **For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.**

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you. ■

Airbag system

Important things to know

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇒ *page 148*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇒ *page 93*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇒ *page 162*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇒ *page 190*.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger are not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇒ *page 148,* "Proper occupant seating positions". For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇒ *page 93* and ⇒ *page 96*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇒ *page 190*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer CARE at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, ▶

repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇒ *page 159*.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to held you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**
- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇒ *page 163,* "Safety belts".**
- **Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.**
- **Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.**
- **Never ride with the backrest reclined.**
- **Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇒ *page 148,* "Proper occupant seating positions".**
- **Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.**
- **Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.**

⚠ WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- **Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.**
- **Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.** ■

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

– Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇒ *page 190*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the Requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if a child up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ *page 192*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
- will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇒ *page 179*, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇒ *page 192*), or
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 148*, "Proper seating position for the driver".

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations ▶

as defined in the electronic control unit ⇒ *page 180,* “PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light”.

Always remember, a child safety seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇒ *page 190,* “Child Safety”.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.**
- **Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.**

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ *page 179,* “Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System”.**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.**
- **Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.**

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.**
- **An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**
- **Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.** ■

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 171 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 172 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the front seats have "pretensioners" that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇒ fig. 171 and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 172. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG".

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

⚠ WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- **Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.**
- **Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.**

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

- **Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.**
- **The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the "low risk" option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.**
- **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.**
- **For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.** ■

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low risk" requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇒ *page 192,* "Child restraints and Advanced Airbags".

"Suppression" requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

- a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ *page 192,*
- weight less than a threshold level stored in the control unit is detected on the front passenger seat.

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇒ *page 192*),
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) if:

- a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat
- a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇒ *page 179*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇒ *page 168*.**

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door, or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child restraints in the back seat.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.**

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.** ■

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
- A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
- An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 179*.
- The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇒ *page 180,* fig. 174 and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
- A sensor below the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit “decide” whether the front airbag for the front ▶

passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇒ *page 170,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

- A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.

- **Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.**
- **Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.**
- **Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.**
- **Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.**
- **Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.**
- **Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.**
- **Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.**
- **Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.**
- **Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.**
- **If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer. ■**

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioner depends on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash. ▶

When the electronic control unit registers a low severity crash and the safety belt is being used, the airbag will not deploy. If the safety belt is not being used, the first stage deploys, followed by the second stage after a much later time in the crash sequence.

If the electronic control unit registers a crash of medium severity, the first stage of the airbag deploys followed by the second stage at a much later time in the crash sequence - regardless of whether the safety belt is being used or not. In higher severity crashes as registered by the electronic control unit, both the first and second stages deploy almost at the same time.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if one of the child safety seats that has been certified under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been recognized on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒ *page 170,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇒ *page 168*.** ■

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 173 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

- safety belts are worn properly,
- the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
- and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms ▶

or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers,
- when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

- when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

- **To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇒ *page 170*.**

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.**

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- **Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.**
- **Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.**
- **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.

- **Never tilt the front passenger seat backrest forward when the vehicle is moving. An inflating airbag will force the backrest backward and can injure rear seat occupants.**

⚠ WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

- **To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.**
- **If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.**
- **Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.**
- **If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water. ■**

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light AIR BAG

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensor circuits and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag monitoring indicator light AIR BAG will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG:

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
- comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will first start flashing to catch the driver's attention and then stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- **If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer. ■**

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 174 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 174.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will flash for a few seconds and:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
- will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on** if the ignition is on and

- a car bed has been installed on the front seat, or
- a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇒ *page 170,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know" and ⇒ *page 190,* "Child Safety".

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

- reactivate the system by turning the ignition off and then turning it on again;
- remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
- make sure that the convertible locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇒ *page 200*.
- make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child safety seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
- make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat back and forth;
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes ▶

the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

- take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇒ *page 148,* "Proper occupant seating positions",
- the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
- accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,
- a safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

In addition to the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel, the message **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** or **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will briefly appear in the instrument cluster display. This is to inform the driver of the current front passenger airbag status. ■

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- **If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.**

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, in a rearward-facing child safety seat or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.**
- **Always install forward or rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **If you must install a rearward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

- **A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.**
- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**

⚠ WARNING

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.**

Tips

If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will stay on. ■

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- **Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.**
- **Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.**
- **Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.**
- **All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.**
- **For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:**
  - **Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.**
  - **Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.**
  - **Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.**
- **The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has the technical information, training and special equipment necessary.**
- **The airbag system can be deployed only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.**
- **In accidents when an airbag is deployed, the vehicle battery separates the alternator and the starter from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.**
  - **Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified dealer - risk of an accident!**
  - **If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.** ■

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

The sensors in the safety belt buckle for the driver and front passenger seat tell the electronic control module if the safety belt is latched or not. If the safety belt is being used, the front airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of vehicle deceleration than if the safety belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it is possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used. It is important that nothing interfere with the safety belt buckles so that the sensors can send the correct information about safety belt use to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- **Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.**
- **Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.**

⚠ WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors in the buckle to send the wrong information to the electronic control module and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

- **Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.**

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you. ■

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

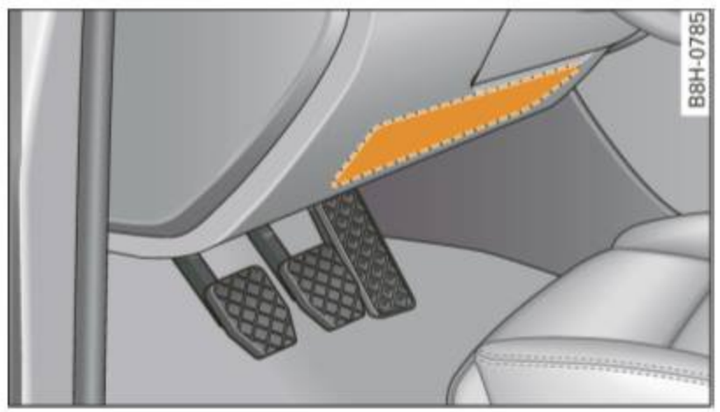


Fig. 175 Driver's airbag

The airbag for the driver is located in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 175, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas as a supplement to the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions above a certain severity ⇒ *page 177,* "More important things to know about front airbags".

Besides their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in case of a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This ▶

is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒ *page 159,* "General notes".

The safety belt buckle for the driver and front seat passenger have switches that tell the airbag control module if the safety belt is being used or not. If the safety belt is being used, the knee airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of deceleration than if the belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it is possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with airbags.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

- The electronic control module
- Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
- The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

- when the ignition is turned off
- in front-end collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
- in side collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers
- in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light illuminated) ⇒ *page 20.*

WARNING

- **Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇒ *page 177.***
- **If the airbag indicator light comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. The airbag may not work properly when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to deploy the airbag. See also ⇒ *page 20.* ■**

How knee airbags work

The risk of injury to the leg area is reduced by fully deployed knee airbags.

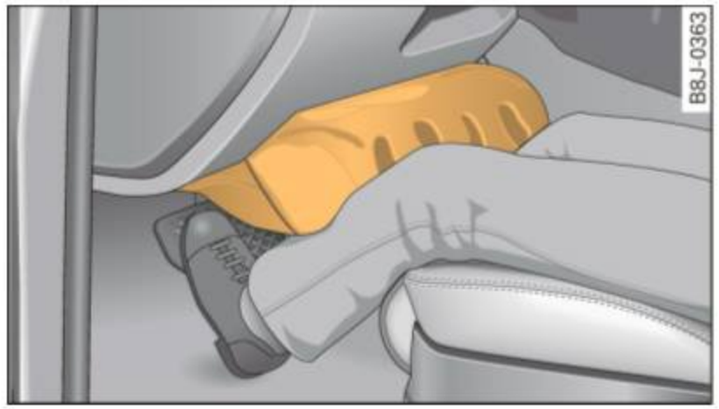


Fig. 176 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger are deployed in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions above a certain severity.

When the system is deployed, the airbags start to fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇒ *page 177,* fig. 173.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All this takes place instantaneously, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk. ■

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

⚠ WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **The airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:**
  - **10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.**
  - **4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.**
- **The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.**
- **Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.**
  - **No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.**
  - **No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.**
- **Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.**
- **If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇒ *page 190,* "Child Safety". ■**

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 177 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇒ fig. 177 facing the doors. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG".

The side airbag system basically consists of:

- the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
- the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
- the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇒ *page 188,* "Important safety instructions on the side airbag system".

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒ *page 159,* "General notes".

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

- when the ignition is turned off
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low

- in front-end collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

⚠ WARNING

- **Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇒ *page 188*.**
- **If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. The airbag may not work properly when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag. ■**

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 178 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked "AIRBAG". It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇒ *page 190*, "Child Safety". Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇒ fig. 178.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ■

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

⚠ WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:**

WARNING (continued)

– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.

– Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.

– Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,

– Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.

- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.

– Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seat backs that have not been specifically approved by Audi.

– Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.

– Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.

- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.

– Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.

– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

WARNING (continued)

- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.

- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.

- Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.

- If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇒ *page 190,* "Child Safety".

- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

- In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.

– Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.

– Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.

– Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.

– Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.

– Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. ■

Child Safety

Important things to know

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇒ *page 161,* "What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?". But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇒ *page 193,* "Important safety instructions for using child safety seats". Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

⚠ WARNING

- **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.**
- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.**
- **A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.**

⚠ WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.**

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
- **Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.** ■

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low-risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. ■

Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child safety seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its “footprint”, the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its “footprint” vary for different kinds of child ▶

restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old child, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to "decide", whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off. ■

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different 'footprints,' the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

A. Car beds, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:

- Cosco Dream Ride 02-719

B. Rear facing child restraint systems, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:

(When the restraint system comes equipped with a removable base, compliance has to be certified with or without the base).

- Britax Handle with Care 191
- Century Assura 4553
- Century Smart Fit 4543
- Cosco Arriva 02727
- Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212
- Evenflo First Choice 204
- Graco Infant 8457

C. Forward-facing convertible child restraint systems, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:

- Britax Roundabout 161
- Britax Expressway
- Century Encore 4612
- Century STE 1000 4416
- Cosco Olympian 02803
- Cosco Touriva 02519
- Evenflo Horizon V 425
- Evenflo Medallion 254
- Safety First Comfort Ride 22-400

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.**

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function. ■

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

– Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇒ *page 195*.

– Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇒ *page 200*.

– Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. ▶

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).**
  - **When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.**
  - **Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.**
  - **Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.**
- **Never allow children under 57 inches (1.5 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.**
- **Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.**
  - **Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.**
  - **The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.**
  - **The child and the passenger can also injure each another in an accident.**
- **Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**
- **Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:**
  - **Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
  - **Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.

– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.

– Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.

• Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.

• Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 159,* "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 168,* "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 190,* "Child Safety".

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

• Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.

• Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately. ■

Child safety seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 22 lbs or 10 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.

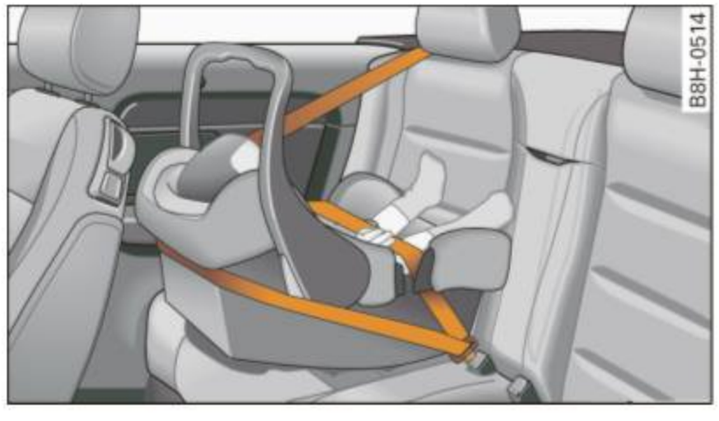


Fig. 179 Rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇒ *page 200* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.

– Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

Infants up to about one year (22 lbs. or 10 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash. These child safety seats must never be used in the front seat because of the risk of serious injury or death should the airbag deploy in a crash ⇒ fig. 179. ▶

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- **Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door ⇒ *page 170,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**
- **Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 159,* "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 168,* "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 190,* "Important things to know".** ■

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (10 and 20 kg) in a crash.



Fig. 180 Rear seat: smaller child in a properly installed forward-facing convertible child safety seat

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇒ *page 200* or install the seat using the LATCH attachment.

– Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇒ *page 200*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 22 lbs. (10 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 22 lbs (10 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) should be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇒ fig. 180.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest ▶

place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- **Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 159,* "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 168,* "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 190,* "Important things to know".**

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

WARNING (continued)

- **Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**
- **Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.**
- **Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.**
- **Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the light does not stay on, perform the checks ⇒ *page 179,* "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.** ■

Booster seats

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. tall.



Fig. 181 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder.
- Always make sure that the shoulder portion of the safety belt never rests against or across the child's neck.
- Always make sure that the child can properly wear the lap portion of the belt low across the thighs or pelvis and *never* over the stomach or abdomen.

Children up to about 40 lbs (18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they should not use the vehicle safety belts ⇒ *page 198,* fig. 181.

Children who weigh more than 40 lbs. (18 kg) may generally use the available three point combination lap and shoulder belts when they sit on an appropriate booster seat. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection. This applies whenever a child uses the vehicle's safety belts, even when the child is big enough to use them without a booster seat. Children age 12 and under should *always* ride in the rear seat.

Children should not ride in the front seat unless no other seating position is available because crash statistics show that children are better protected in the rear seat.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant including a child who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat in exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's or other occupant's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal crashes.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- **Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the three-point belt over the middle of child's shoulder.**
- **Never let the shoulder portion of the belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.**
- **Always make sure the lap belt portion of the three-point belt is worn snug and passes as low as possible across the child's pelvis. Never let the belt pass over the soft abdomen.**
- **Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇒ *page 159*.**
- **Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.**
- **Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.**
- **Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.**
- **Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ *page 179*, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 159*, "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 168*, "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 190*, "Important things to know". ■**

Safety belts and older children

Properly worn three point lap and shoulder belt can help protect children weighing more than 80 lbs. (36 kg) and who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. tall.



Fig. 182 Child taller than 4 ft. 9 in. properly restrained on the rear seat

Children who weigh more than about 80 lbs (36 kg) and are at least 4 ft. 9 in. tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Children should use a lap belt only in very exceptional situations and only if no child restraint system for the child's size and weight or safer alternative means of transportation of the ▶

child is available. In these exceptional situations, the use of a lap belt is better than permitting the child to remain totally unrestrained. But remember: a lap belt cannot provide the same level of protection as a proper child restraint or a three-point lap and shoulder belt if the child is big enough. Also, using a lap belt for younger children, who should be using a child restraint, may violate laws in your state or Province.

Never use a lap belt alone to restrain a child that weighs less than about 80 lbs (36 kg) and who is less than 4'9" tall. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belts. If a lap belt is only restraint system available, then the child's safety absolutely requires that the lap belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis let a lap belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

⚠ WARNING

Using wrong child restraints or improperly installed child restraints can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

- **Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in a crash. The lap belt portion of the three point belt as well as any lap belt alone must always pass as low as possible across the pelvis, never over the stomach or abdomen.**
- **An improperly worn safety belt will not provide the best protection in a crash and may cause serious personal injury. Always make sure that children and other vehicle occupants properly wear available restraint systems. Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturers of child restraints.** ■

Installing a child safety seat

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- **Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.**
- **Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision**
- **If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and**

WARNING (continued)

will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 190*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 170*, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

- Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ *page 179*, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".

WARNING (continued)

- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.**
- **A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.** ■

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

– Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.

– Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.

– Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇒ ⚠.

– Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.

– Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.

– Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.

– You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.

– Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.

– Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

- **Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.**
- **Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seat back with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 190*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 170*, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know". ■**

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

– Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.

– Guide the belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- **Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 190*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 170*, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know". ■**

Additional Information

What types of child restraint anchors are available and how are they related to child safety?

For years, child restraints have been installed using the safety belts already present in every vehicle.

Since September 1, 1999, child restraint manufacturers have been providing tether straps that attach the top of the child restraint to the vehicles structure, on most of their forward-facing systems in order to comply with U.S. Federal regulations for child restraint performance in a crash. Vehicle manufacturers are required to phase-in tether anchorages for attachment of the tether strap in their U.S. vehicles beginning September 1, 1999.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchors and **T**ether for **Ch**ildren".

(The term "ISOFIX" regarding lower anchorages had been used by Audi and other manufacturers in the past, but LATCH is now the standard name for the new child restraint anchorage system.)

Some child restraint system manufacturers have been providing tether straps on certain models of their child restraint systems, either as standard equipment or as a retrofit, for several years. Check with the manufacturer of the child restraint system for tether strap availability.

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, U.S. Federal regulations require the phase-in of lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraint systems to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

Child restraint system manufacturers will probably offer two kinds of lower anchorages on their child safety seats

They could come with:

- hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps or
- rigid latches on bars that extend out the back of the child restraint and are released with release buttons at the bottom of the child restraint.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, both of these child restraint systems use tether straps to help keep the child restraint system firmly in place.

Tether anchorages

Your Audi Cabriolet is **not** equipped with a *LATCH* system. It is **not** equipped with top tether anchorages. It is equipped with lower anchorages only.

Your Cabriolet is equipped with the Active Rollover Protection System, which is integrated into the backrest of the rear seat. The Active Rollover Protection System deploys upwards to help provide additional protection in certain collisions and crash situations. For this reason, your vehicle is **not** equipped with top tether anchorages for use with forward-facing child restraints.

In Canada, provincial law requires that forward-facing child restraints use both top tether anchorages and lower anchorages; therefore, it is **not possible** to install a forward-facing child restraint in this vehicle.

In the United States, child restraint installation must conform with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Check the instructions that come with the child restraint or contact the manufacturer to determine if the child restraint may be installed facing forward without securing the top tether strap.

WARNING

- **Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.**
- **Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages.** ■

Where can I get additional information about child restraint application and usage?

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and usage:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: (888) DASH-2-DOT
www.nhtsa.dot.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign

Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Transport Canada
Tel.: (800) 333-0371
www.tc.gc.ca

Audi Client Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834 ■

Lower anchorages and tether for children (LATCH)

Location

LATCH is the acronym for Lower Anchors and Tether for Children and designates a special child safety seat restraint system. In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorages bars") are used to describe the system.

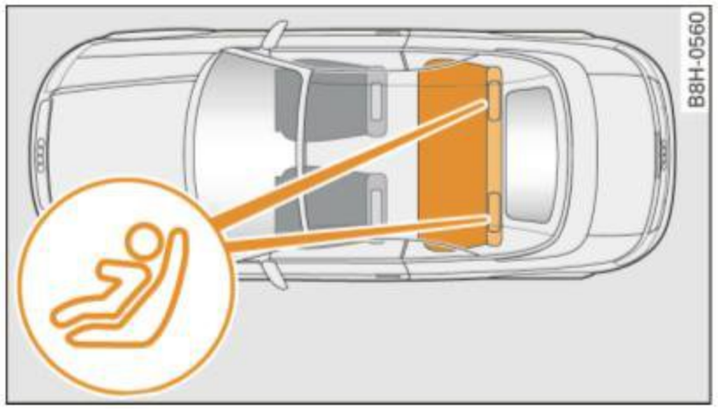


Fig. 183 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration ⇒ fig. 183 shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower universal anchorages system. ■

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.

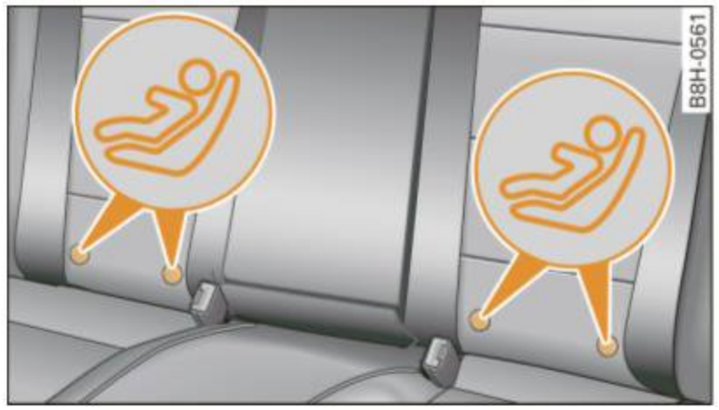


Fig. 184 Rear seatbacks: locator buttons for lower anchorages

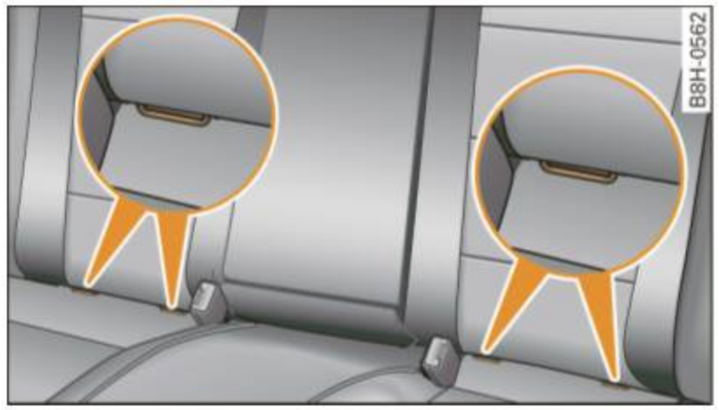


Fig. 185 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Attachment locator markers for lower anchorages

Circular locator buttons on the rear seatback indicate the lower anchorage locations on the rear seating positions ⇒ fig. 184. ▶

Lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇒ fig. 185.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

- **Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.**
- **Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇒ *page 190,* "Child Safety".** ■

Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages

Special guidance fixtures increase the convenience of the lower anchorages and are available from your authorized Audi dealer.

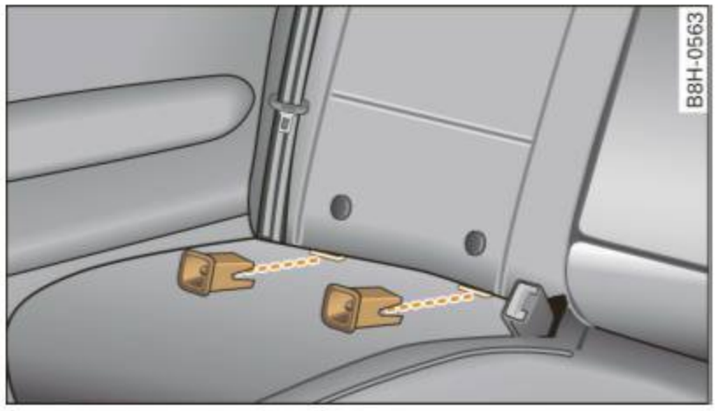


Fig. 186 Installing the guidance fixtures on the rear seat

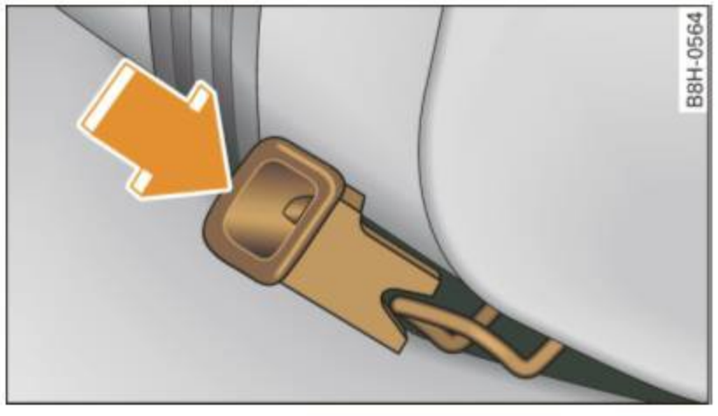


Fig. 187 Close-up: fitting the guidance fixture over the lower anchorage bracket

The lower anchorage attachment points are located on the rear seats between the seatback and the seat cushion. Special guidance fixtures increase the convenience of the lower anchorages and help protect the seat material from possible damage when installing child restraints that have rigid lower anchorages and not straps with hooks. ▶

Installing the guidance fixtures

– Push down on the seat cushion so that the lower anchorages are visible.

– Hold the guidance fixture with the part number facing downward and push it in the direction of the arrow onto the anchorage ⇒ fig. 187.

– Make sure that each of the two guidance fixtures per seat snaps into place.

Removing the guidance fixtures

– Remove the child restraint according the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Push down on the seat cushion so that the lower anchorages are visible.

– Pull off the guidance fixtures from the lower anchorages.

– Always remove the guidance fixtures and keep them in a safe place when not in use.

You may find it easier to install child restraints equipped with hooks attached to straps without the guidance fixtures in place. If this is the case, remove the guidance fixtures by pulling them off the anchorages. However, the guidance fixtures can help you to locate the *LATCH* anchorages.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of tether anchorages or lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in a crash.

- **Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for proper installation and use of child restraint systems.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never use the *LATCH* or tether anchorages to attach safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.**
- **Child restraint tether attachments and lower attachments are only designed to secure a child restraint that has been equipped to use these anchorages.**
- **Tether anchorages and lower anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances can they be used safely for adult or child safety belts or harnesses.**
- **Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a lower anchorage point. Attaching two child restraints to a single anchorage point can cause the anchorage to fail and cause serious personal injury in a crash.**

Note

If you leave the guidance fixtures installed for several days, they could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area that the guidance fixtures were installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the guidance fixtures. This applies especially to leather seats.

Tips

- Always remove the guidance fixtures when not in use.
- Please keep the guidance fixtures in a safe place with the vehicle when not in use. ■

Installing a child restraint using the lower anchorages of the LATCH system

Child safety seats equipped with the LATCH system can quickly and easily be secured to the rear seats.



Fig. 188 LATCH-type seat with both rigid latch bars extended

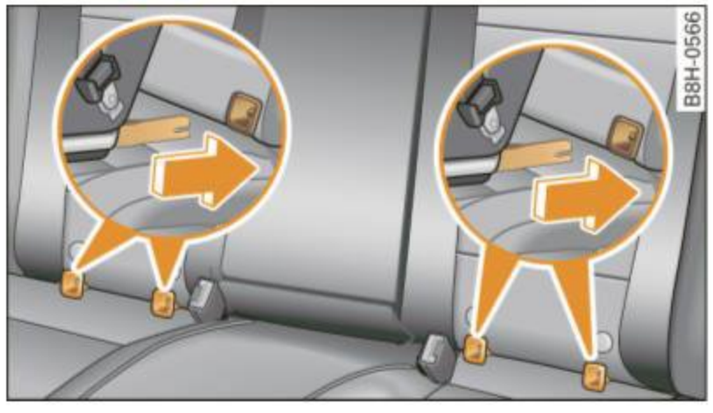


Fig. 189 Installation of child safety seat with rigid latches on bars

Whenever you install a child restraint always refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Install the guidance fixtures ⇒ *page 206*.

– Insert the latches onto the lower anchorages ⇒ fig. 189.

– Make sure you hear the child restraint click securely into place. This indicates that the seat is securely mounted on the anchors.

– Pull on the child restraint once you have mounted it to make sure it is secure.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

- **These anchors were developed solely for child safety seats using the "LATCH" system.**
- **Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.**
- **Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

- **Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**
- **Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇒ *page 190*, "Child Safety". ■**

Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook

If you use a child restraint system with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

Mounting

– Press the anchorage hook with the spring catch release onto the lower anchorage so that the anchorage hook locks into place.

– Pull on the anchorage hook to make sure that it has securely engaged the lower anchorage.

– Tighten the strap following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

– Loosen the tension on the strap following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Depress the spring catch on the hook or push button to release the push-on connector catch.

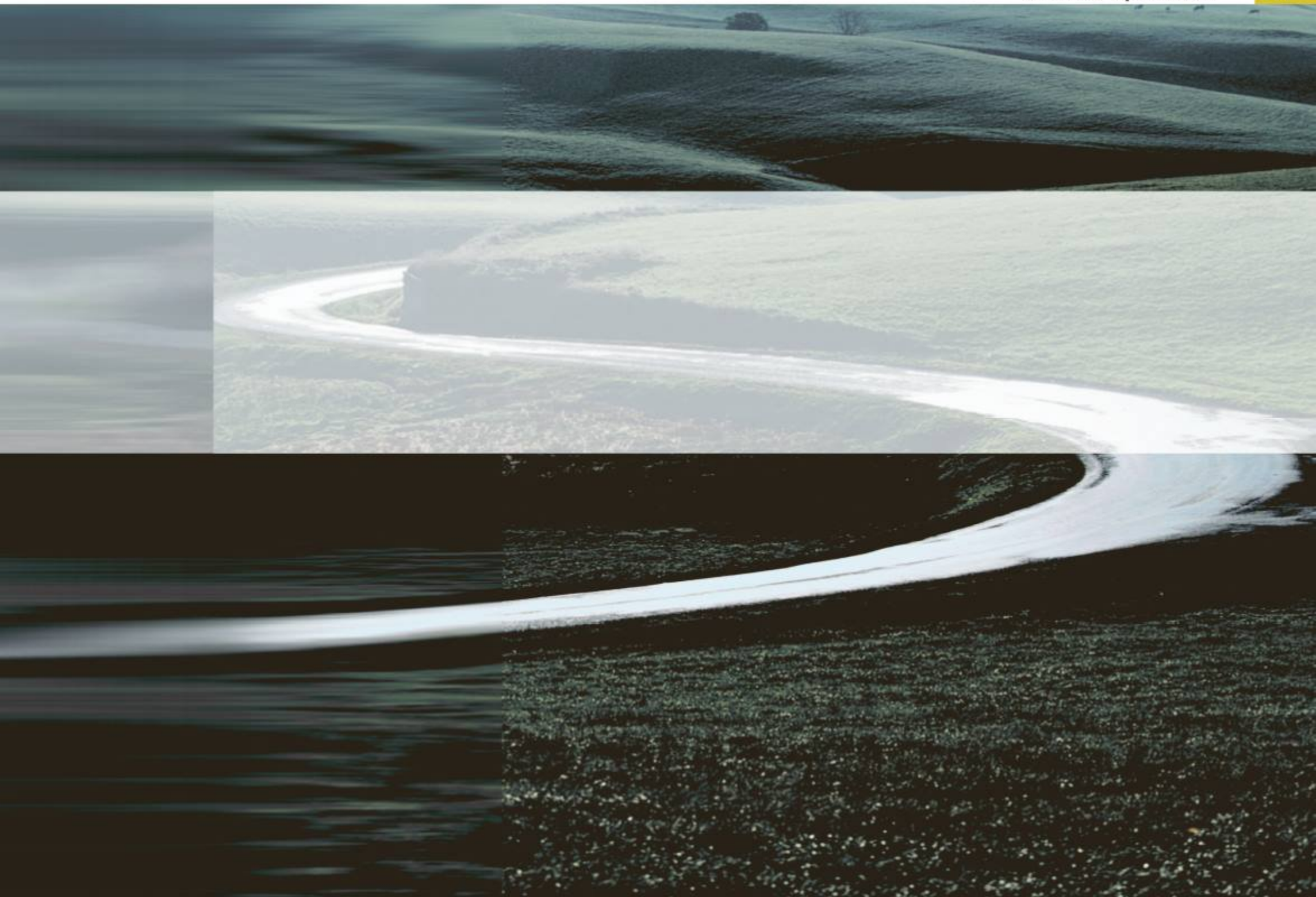
– Hold the spring catch in depressed position.

– Move the hook in the direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the anchorage hook from the lower anchorage.

⚠ WARNING

- **Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injuries in a crash.**
- **Always refer to the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.** ■





Intelligent technology

Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is not equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR), installed by some manufacturers for the express purpose of capturing data for retrieval after an accident or crash event. EDR's are sometimes called "crash recorders".

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDR's that were installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Although your vehicle is not equipped with an EDR, it is equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as, for example, engine function, emission control, as well as for the airbags and safety belts.

These electronic control modules also record vehicle-related data during normal vehicle operation for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capacity of the electronic control modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded) and only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time and stored when a system fault or other condition is sensed by a control unit. Some of the data then stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, braking as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash or other condition. Stored data can only be read and downloaded with special equipment. ■

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)

General information

The ESP improves the vehicle stability.



Fig. 190 Center console with ESP switch

ESP is designed to help you maintain vehicle control in situations where the car approaches the limits of "grip", especially when accelerating and cornering. ESP reduces the risk of skidding and improves stability under all road conditions.

The system operates across the entire speed range in combination with the ABS system. If the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) malfunctions, the ESP will also shut down.

How the system works

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) and the Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR) are integrated in the electronic stabilization program. In addition to the data provided by these functions, the ESP control unit requires additional measurement data provided by high performance sensors. The rotational speed of the vehicle about its vertical axis, the lateral acceleration acting on the vehicle, the brake pressure and the steering angle are all measured. ▶

The direction in which the driver wishes to travel is determined with the aid of the steering angle and vehicle speed and is continually compared with the actual behavior of the vehicle. If the two do not match, - for example, when the vehicle starts hydroplaning on a wet road - , ESP will automatically brake the appropriate wheel to correct the problem.

The vehicle is then stabilized by the forces acting on the wheel during braking. If the vehicle is *oversteering* (rear tends to skid out of the turn), the brakes are mainly applied on the wheel that is on the outside of the curve. In the case of a vehicle that is *understeering* (tendency to slide out of the curve), the brakes are applied at the rear wheel that is on the inside of the curve. An acoustic signal indicates when ESP brake application cuts in ⇒ ⚠.

The system operates across the entire speed range in combination with the ABS system ⇒ *page 216*. If the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) malfunctions, the ESP will be out of action as well.

Activation

When you turn on the engine, ESP will automatically be activated and will perform a self-test.

The system can be activated or deactivated by pressing the button ⇒ *page 212,* fig. 190. The warning light comes on when the system is switched off.

Normally, the ESP should always be on, however, it may be advantageous to turn off the system in certain special cases when some degree of wheel spin is desired such as:

- when driving with snow chains
- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface (to allow the wheels to dig in to reach firm ground)
- when trying to "rock" the vehicle free when it has become stuck.

The system should be reactivated once you are no longer in such situations.

Both, the ABS and EDL systems are still functioning even if the ESP is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

The Electronic Stabilization Program is nevertheless subject to the laws of physics. It is particularly important to pay attention to this fact on wet and slippery roads. It is therefore important that you always adapt your driving to the condition of the road and traffic conditions. Do not allow the increased safety provided by the Electronic Stabilization Program system to lull you into accepting additional safety risks.

- **Please note that when ESP is deactivated, the drive wheels can spin on icy and slippery roads and the vehicle can break away - danger of skidding!** ■

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The electronic differential lock monitors the rotational speed of the drive wheels.

General notes

The electronic differential lock (EDL) helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient on surfaces providing poor or almost no grip. Without EDL, this would be difficult, if not impossible.

How the system works

The EDL operates automatically. It monitors the rotational speed of the drive wheels on an axle with the help of the ABS sensors ⇒ *page 216*. If a noticeable *difference in rotational speed* between the drive wheels on one axle is detected (e.g. on slippery ground *on one side*), the spinning wheel is braked, thereby transferring power to the other drive wheel or wheels (all-wheel drive). This is done up to a speed of about 60 mph (100 km/h). Noises from the brake system signal that wheel spin is being controlled. ▶

Driving off

When driving off, always be sure to keep road conditions in mind as you accelerate. If one drive wheel spins because it is on a surface with less grip, gradually increase the pressure on the accelerator pedal until the car starts to move. The wheel less able to transfer power spins.

Overheating of brakes

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating if subjected to excessive loads, the EDL cuts out temporarily. The vehicle remains operational and behaves in the same way as a vehicle without EDL.

As soon as the brake has cooled down, EDL switches on again automatically.

WARNING

- **When accelerating on slippery surfaces, such as on ice or snow, always be careful when depressing the accelerator pedal. Even with the EDL working, the drive wheels can spin and reduce your ability to control your car. - Risk of crash!**
- **The increased safety afforded by EDL does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.**

Tips

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the EDL is also not functioning. This is indicated by the ABS warning light ⇒ *page 20*. ■

Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR)

The Anti-Slip Regulation System prevents the driven wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating.

General notes

The Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR) is integrated in the electronic stabilization program (ESP). When the vehicle starts up and accelerates, the wheels are prevented from spinning by adjusting the engine power to match the amount of grip available from the road surface.

How the system works

ASR performs automatically, i.e. without the driver's intervention. With the aid of the ABS sensors ⇒ *page 216*, ASR monitors the speed of the driven wheels. If the wheels start to spin, the engine power is reduced automatically until the tires find enough grip to lock onto the road surface. The system is active across the entire speed range.

The ASR works in conjunction with the ABS. If a malfunction should occur in the ABS, the ASR will also be out of action.

WARNING

The increased safety afforded by ASR does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.

Tips

To ensure that the ASR works properly, all four wheels must be fitted with identical tires Any differences in rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired. See also ⇒ *page 279*, “New tires and replacing tires and wheels”. ■

Braking

General information

What affects braking efficiency?

Operating conditions and driving habits

The brakes on today's automobiles are still subject to wear, depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits ⇒ ⚠. On vehicles that are either driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or are driven hard, the brake pads should be checked by your authorized Audi dealer more often than specified in the **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. Failure to have your brake pads inspected can result in reduced brake performance.

On steep slopes, you should use the braking effect of the engine. This way, you prevent unnecessary wear on the brake system. If you must use your brakes, do not hold the brakes down continuously. Pump the brakes at intervals.

Moisture or road salt

If you are driving faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) and the windshield wipers are on, the brake pads will briefly touch the brake discs in regular intervals so as to improve reaction time when braking on wet surfaces. You, the driver, will not notice anything.

Under certain conditions, for example, when driving through water or very heavy rain, or even after washing your vehicle, the braking effect can be reduced due to moisture (or in freezing conditions ice) on the brake pads. A few cautious brake applications should dry off the brake pads or remove any ice coatings.

At speeds *over* 80 km/h and with the windshield wiper turned *on*, the brake pads are applied briefly to the brake discs. This occurs at regular intervals without the driver noticing and provides for better brake response time under wet conditions.

The effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced when the vehicle is driven on a salt-covered road and the brakes are not used. Likewise, you clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few cautious applications of the brake ⇒ ⚠.

Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is not driven regularly or only for short trips with little use of the brakes.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇒ ⚠.

Faults in the brake system

If you should notice a *sudden* increase in brake pedal travel, then one of the two brake circuits may have failed ⇒ ⚠.

Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

Brake lining wear status

Brake lining wear may be checked by visual inspection of the condition of the brake pads through the openings in the wheel. If necessary, the wheel may be removed for this inspection ⇒ *page 293*, "Wheel change".

⚠ WARNING

- **You should perform braking maneuvers for the purpose of cleaning the brake system only if road conditions permit. Other road users must not be put at risk - you may cause an accident!**
- **Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving position. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.**
- **Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Cautiously apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.**
- **Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest Audi dealer or qualified workshop.** ■

Brake booster

The brake booster adds extra braking power.

The brake booster works with vacuum pressure which is created only when the engine is running ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.**
- **If the brake booster is not working, for example when towing your vehicle, or because the brake booster has somehow been damaged, the brake pedal must be pressed considerably harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.** ■

Functioning of Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking.

The ABS contributes effectively to vehicle control since it prevents the wheels from *locking* when the brakes are applied. This means that the vehicle remains steerable and is less likely to skid.

With ABS you do not need to *pump* the brake. Just hold the brake pedal down.

However, do not expect that the ABS shortens braking distance under *all* circumstances. When driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow on top of icy surfaces, braking distance may be even longer, therefore, under these circumstances, it is especially important that you drive slowly and with great care.

How the ABS system works

An automatic check is made when a speed of about 4 mph (6 km/h) is reached. When this happens, a pumping noise can be heard.

If an individual wheel begins to rotate too slowly in relation to vehicle speed and tends to lock, the ABS automatically reduces brake pressure to prevent that wheel from locking.

This automatic adjustment process will cause a **slight vibration** of the brake pedal and some noises to alert you that vehicle speed must be adapted to existing road and traffic conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Although the ABS is very effective, always remember that braking capability is limited by tire traction. Always adjust your driving speed according to the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

extra safety afforded by the ABS tempt you into taking extra risks. The ABS cannot overcome the laws of physics.

Tips

- If ABS is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on. See ⇒ *page 20*.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS, the EDL is also not functioning. This is indicated by the ABS warning light. ■

Brake assistant

The brake assistant is designed to achieve the optimum braking effect.

The brake assistant helps to increase the *effective* braking power and thus to achieve a shorter stopping distance. If the driver presses the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assistant automatically boosts the braking force to the maximum level, up to the point where the anti-lock brake function (ABS) intervenes to stop the wheels from locking. You should then keep the brake pedal pressed until the vehicle has braked to the required speed. The brake assistant switches itself off as soon as you release the brake pedal.

The brake assistant will not be operative if there is a malfunction in the ABS.

⚠ WARNING

Please remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive too fast, especially in corners or on a slippery road, or if you follow the vehicle ahead of you too closely. An increased accident risk cannot be compensated even by the brake assistant, so always maintain a safe speed. ■

Servotronic® - advanced power steering system

The power steering systems uses the power of the running engine to allow precise steering with little effort.

The advanced *Servotronic®* power steering system senses the road speed and electronically adjusts power assistance to provide comfortable and safe steering response exactly matched to the vehicle speed.

Power steering will not work if the engine is off. As a result, the steering wheel will be hard to turn.

The power steering fluid level is checked during the scheduled maintenance services.

Note

If there is an electronic malfunction, *servotronic* will still function like a conventional power steering system, providing a constant steering support force that is no longer proportionate to the vehicle speed. This is most noticeable when turning the steering wheel at low speeds (for example when parking), - more effort will be required than usual.

- Be aware of the different than usual steering response and adjust your steering force accordingly.
- Have the problem checked and set right by an Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Tips

- When the engine is running, never hold the steering wheel turned all the way to the right or to the left for longer than 15 seconds. The power steering pump will overheat the hydraulic fluid if you keep holding the steering wheel turned all the way. This is likely to damage the power steering system. ▶

- If the power steering system should fail entirely, or if the engine is not running (for example, while being towed), you will still be able to steer the vehicle. However, *considerably* more effort will be required to do so.
- If the power steering system should have a leak, or is not functioning properly, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
- The power steering system requires a specially formulated hydraulic fluid. The power steering reservoir is the one located most forward on the left side of the engine compartment ⇒ *page 251*. The correct fluid level in the reservoir is important for proper functioning of the power steering. ■

Driving with your quattro®

With All Wheel Drive, all four wheels are driven.

General information

With All Wheel Drive, power is distributed to all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving style and the road conditions at the time. See also ⇒ *page 213,* "Electronic differential lock (EDL)".

Winter tires

When driving in the winter, your vehicle with All Wheel Drive has an advantage, even with regular tires. In winter road conditions it may be advisable to mount winter tires (or all-season tires) for improved driveability and braking: these tires must be mounted on **all four wheels**. See also ⇒ *page 284,* "Winter tires".

Snow chains

Where snow chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive ⇒ *page 285,* "Snow chains".

Replacing wheels/tires

Vehicles with All Wheel Drive must always have tires of the same size. Also avoid tires with different tread depths. For details see page ⇒ *page 279,* "New tires and replacing tires and wheels".

Off-Road driving?

Your Audi does not have enough ground clearance to be used as an off-road vehicle. It is therefore best to avoid rough tracks and uneven terrain as much as possible. Also refer to ⇒ *page 221*.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your driving to road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the all-wheel drive tempt you into taking extra risks.

- **Although the quattro® all-wheel drive is very effective, always remember that braking capacity is limited by tire traction. You should therefore not drive at excessive speeds on icy or slippery road surfaces.**
- **On wet road surfaces, be careful not to drive too fast because the front wheels could begin to slide on top of the water (hydroplaning). If this should occur, you will have no warning from a sudden increase in engine speed as with a front-wheel drive vehicle. Always drive at speeds which are adjusted to the road conditions – risk of crash!** ■

Driving and environment

The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards

New engine

The engine needs to be run-in during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

For the first 600 miles (1,000 kilometers):

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the top speed marked on the speedometer.
- Avoid high engine speeds.

From 600 to 1,000 miles (1,000 to 1,500 kilometers):

- Speeds can *gradually* be increased to the maximum permissible road or engine speed.

During and after break-in period

- Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

After the break-in period

- Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.
- Upshift into the next higher gear *before* reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale ⇒ *page 12*.

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 kilometers).

Note

Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced. However, these RPM-limits were programmed for an engine well run-in, not a new engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds - upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment. ■

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive particularly careful for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking. ■

New brake pads

Remember that new brake pads do not have a full braking effect during the first 250 miles (400 kilometers) after they are installed.

New brake pads have to be "burnished in" before they have optimal grab ⇒ ⚠.

During the break-in period, you should avoid putting severe loads on the brakes. Severe loads include, for example, sudden hard braking, in particular at very high speeds or, for example, on mountain passes.

⚠ WARNING

New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 100 to 150 miles (150 to 200 kilometers) of normal city driving. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed. ■

Catalytic converter

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

– Always use lead-free gasoline ⇒ *page 244,* "Fuel supply".

– Never run the tank down all the way to empty.

– Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇒ *page 255,* "Adding engine oil".

– Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.**
- **Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.**

Note

- Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
- Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇒ *page 255.*
- Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
- Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
- To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  – Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline. ■

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles. ■

Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution

General

Your personal style of driving will determine the economy of your vehicle, as well as exhaust and noise levels.

Fuel economy, environmental impact, and wear on your engine, brakes and tires largely depend on three factors:

- your personal driving style
- operating conditions
- technical limitations

If you anticipate what you need to do next and drive economically, you can easily cut your fuel consumption by 10-15 percent. This section will give you some tips on how you can help the environment and your pocketbook.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc. ■

Drive smoothly and keep a lookout ahead

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating.

– Avoid unnecessary accelerating and braking.

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating. If you anticipate what is going to happen next, you will need to brake less and, thus, accelerate less. Let the vehicle coast whenever possible - for example when you see that the next traffic light is red. ■

Avoid full throttle

Driving at moderate speeds saves fuel and improves your mileage.

– Try and keep well below your car's maximum speed.

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption, engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by ▶

one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permit. ■

Reducing unnecessary idling

Even when your car is just idling it burns up fuel.

– Shut the engine off when you are not driving the vehicle.

– Do not warm up the vehicle by letting the engine run at idle.

It makes sense to shut off the engine in traffic jams, when waiting for trains to pass at railroad crossings, or at traffic lights that have long waits on red. Turning the engine off for just 30-40 seconds saves more fuel than is burned starting the engine again.

It takes a long time for the engine to warm up fully when it is running at idle. However, wear and noxious emissions are especially high when the engine is warming up. So you should drive away as soon as you start the engine and avoid running at high rpms while the engine is still warming up.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property. ■

Regular maintenance

A badly tuned engine unnecessarily wastes a lot of fuel.

– Have your vehicle serviced at regular intervals.

By having your vehicle regularly serviced by an Audi dealer helps to ensure that it runs properly and economically. The condition of your vehicle not only affects its safety and ability to hold its value, it also affects **fuel consumption**.

Check your oil each time you fill your tank.

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5,000 kilometers) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

Note

- Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
- Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
- Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components. ■

Fewer short trips

Fuel consumption will always be relatively high on short trips.

– Try to avoid driving short distances with a cold engine. ▶

The engine and catalytic converter have to reach their optimal **operating temperature** to reduce fuel consumption and noxious emissions effectively.

Just after starting, a cold engine in a mid-size car only achieves a fuel economy of 6-8 miles per gallon (30-40 l/100km). After about a half a mile, fuel economy climbs to 12 mpg (20 l/100 km). After about *2.5* miles (4 km), the engine is at its proper operating temperature and fuel economy has reached a normal level. So you can see that you should avoid short trips whenever possible.

The **outside temperature** is also critical in this regard. Your car consumes more fuel in the winter than in the summer. ■

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reasons, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense. ■

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇒ ⚠.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under "Full load"on the sticker on the right door-jamb. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Have the headlights adjusted as necessary so that you can see the road ahead but not blind oncoming traffic.

Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance stands up to the additional strain. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your authorized Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

⚠ WARNING

After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers. ■

Operating instructions

Maximum trailer weight

A trailer for your vehicle is limited to a typical class 1 or class 2 trailer.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to guard against shifting, be it forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving instructions".

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under "Full load" on the sticker on the right doorjamb. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Adjust as necessary so that you can see the road ahead but not blind on-coming traffic.

Check proper working of vehicle and trailer lights.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch. ■

Driving instructions

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.

To obtain the best possible handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- Do not tow a loaded trailer when your car itself is not loaded.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Observe speed limits.
- Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed.
- Always apply brakes early.
- Monitor the temperature gauge.

Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more under unfavorable load, weather or wind conditions - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇒ *page 13* must be observed carefully. If the needle moves close to the upper end of the scale, reduce speed immediately and/or switch off the air conditioner.

If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing, pull off the road, stop and let the engine *idle* for about two minutes to prevent heat build-up.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi. ■

Trailer towing tips

Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have completely become familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite of that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop.

To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

Tips

- Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇒ *page 316*. ■

Parking on a slope

Do not park with a trailer on a slope. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

When parking:

– Apply the foot brake.

– Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.

– With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until wheel blocks absorb the load.

– Turn the wheels towards the curb.

– Apply the parking brake.

– Place an automatic transmission in **P**, respectively a manual transmission in first or reverse gear.

When restarting after parking:

– Start the engine.

– Shift transmission into gear.

– Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel blocks.

– Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel blocks.

Tips

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to **P** before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the **P** position. ■





Cleaning and protection

General information

Regular care preserves vehicle value.

Any automobile is exposed to industrial fumes, corrosive road salt, muddy dog feet, etc. A well cared for Audi can look like new many years after purchase. Regular and correct care will contribute to maintaining the beauty and value of your Audi.

Furthermore, good care may be a condition for substantiating a warranty claim should corrosion damage or paint defects occur.

Your authorized Audi dealer has a variety of **dedicated vehicle-care products** and can advise which ones to use for cleaning the exterior and interior of your vehicle.

Whether you use products recommended by Audi or other commercially available cleaning agents, please make sure you apply them correctly.

WARNING

- **Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Keep them out of the reach of children.**
- **Heed all caution labels.**
- **Always read directions on the container before using any product. Follow the directions carefully.**
- **Most chemical cleaners are concentrated and have to be diluted.**
- **Use spot removing fluids only in well ventilated areas.**
- **Do not use gasoline, kerosene, diesel fuel, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways. Do not wash, wax or dry the vehicle with the ignition on or the engine running.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Do not clean the undersides of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Moisture and ice on brakes may impair braking efficiency ⇒ *page 215,* "General information". Test the brakes carefully each time you wash the vehicle.**

For the sake of the environment

Select only environmentally friendly cleaning products. Leftover cleaning products should not disposed of in the household waste. ■

Care of exterior

Washing

Frequent washing protects the vehicle.

The best protection against environmental influences is *frequent* washing and waxing.

How often this is required depends on:

- How much the vehicle is used
- Where the vehicle is parked (garage, in the open under trees, etc.)
- The seasonal and weather conditions
- Environmental influences

The longer bird droppings, insects, tree resin, road and industrial grime, tar, soot, road salt and other materials remain on the vehicle body, the more lasting their destructive effects will be. ▶

High temperatures, as from exposure to intense sunlight, intensify the corrosive effect particularly when humidity is high as well.

Under certain circumstances, **weekly** washing may be necessary. Under other conditions, a monthly washing and waxing may be adequate.

After the winter, the **underside** of the vehicle should be thoroughly washed preferably in a professional car wash.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230*. ■

Automatic car wash

The vehicle can be washed in almost any modern automatic car wash.

The vehicle paint is so durable that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the facility, the filtering of the wash water, the type of wash and care material, etc. If the paint has a dull appearance after going through the car wash or is scratched, bring this to the attention of the operator immediately. If necessary, use a different car wash.

The power top does not require special precautions before passing through a car wash. **However, the car must not be treated with hot wax after the wash cycle!** The wax could adversely affect the power top and even damage the fabric over a period of time.

The power top does not have to be washed every time you use a car wash. The power top can be spared if the car wash facility is equipped with manually adjustable roof brushes or rollers.

Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows and power top. The factory-fitted antennas for the radio, car phone and navigation system* are all located inside the vehicle interior.

If you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle - such as spoilers, etc. - it is best to ask the car wash operator if these should be removed.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230*. ■

Washing the vehicle by hand

A lot of water is needed when washing a vehicle by hand.

– Before you start washing, make sure you have read and understood the WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in “General information” on *page 230*.
– First soak all dried dirt until it is soft, then rinse it off.
– As you clean your vehicle, start with the roof and work your way down to the bottom, using a sponge, a sponge glove or a clean brush.
– Rinse the sponge or the sponge glove often, flushing it clean each time.
– Use special car shampoo only for very persistent dirt.
– Rinse the car thoroughly with water.
– Use a chamois leather to gently wipe the exterior dry.

Use a separate sponge for cleaning the wheels, door sills and other regions exposed to road dirt. In this way, you will not scratch the paint with coarse particles imbedded in the sponge the next time you wash the car. ▶

WARNING

- **Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 230*.**

Note

- Never try to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge, since this could scratch your vehicle's paint or windows.
- Never wash your car in bright sunlight. Drops of water act as magnifying lenses and may damage your paint.
- When you wash your car in the winter: if you rinse your vehicle with a hose, be careful not to aim the stream of water directly at locks, or at door or hatch openings - they can freeze shut.
- Never use sponges designed to remove insects, or any kitchen scouring sponges or similar products. They can damage your paint finish.
- Never use a dry cloth or sponge to clean the headlights. Only use wet cloths or sponges to prevent scratches. It is best to use soapy water.

For the sake of the environment

In the interest of the environment, the vehicle should only be washed in special wash bays. ■

Washing your vehicle with a power washer

Cleaning the exterior of your car with a high-pressure power washer is safe as long as you observe a few simple rules.

– Before using the power washer, make sure you have read and understood the WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "General information" on *page 230*.

– Always follow the operating instructions for the power washer.

– Make sure that the jet on the spray hose produces a "fan shaped spray".

– Do *not* hold the spray nozzle *too close* to soft materials.

When cleaning the vehicle with a power washer *always* follow the operating instructions. This applies particularly to the **operating pressure** and the **spraying distance**. Maintain a sufficient distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses and sound/vibration deadening materials (particularly on the underside of the engine hood). Do not use a jet which sprays water in a **direct stream** or one that has a **rotating** jet.

Water temperature should not exceed 140 °F (60 °C).

WARNING

Never wash tires with a jet that sprays water in a direct stream. This could cause invisible damage to the tires and weaken them, even if the spray is from a relatively long distance and for a short time. Damaged and weakened tires can fail and cause accidents and personal injury.

Note

- Never use a power washer to clean the power top itself. ▶

- To avoid damaging your vehicle, always make sure that there is enough distance between the sprayer and soft materials like rubber hoses, plastic parts and sound-deadening materials. Never aim the sprayer at the same point for a relatively long period of time. This also applies to cleaning headlights and painted bumpers. Remember: the closer the nozzle is to the surface of the material, the greater the stress on the material. ■

Power top care

The power top requires special care.

Keeping your top looking great and making certain that it lasts a long time depend to a great extent on proper use and care. Remove bird droppings as soon as possible, since the corrosive chemicals in them will cause the rubber impregnation in your top to swell and possibly allow the fabric to leak.

With *normal soiling*, all you need to do is clear the top with a soft brush and clear water. Always brush in the direction of the fabric from front to rear.

If the top is *very dirty* and has *spotted areas* clean it with a brush using a convertible top cleaner. Always brush in the direction of the fabric from front to rear. Rinse with plenty of clear water, and allow the top to air-dry.

Chamois are not suitable for drying the top.

Never use gasoline, spot remover, benzene, paint thinner or solvents to remove spots. We recommend that you only use cleaners especially formulated for use on convertible tops, and that you follow the produce use directions carefully. Authorized Audi deals can provide detailed information.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information
⇒ *page 230*.

Note

Never use a high-pressure power washer to clean the power top. ■

Wind deflector

Clear the wind deflector with water or, if it is heavily soiled, a chemically neutral cleaning solution.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information
⇒ *page 230*. ■

Waxing

Wax protects the vehicle's paint.

– Use a manually applied car wax occasionally to protect the paint.

A good wax coating protects the vehicle paint to a large extent against the environmental factors listed under ⇒ *page 230*, "Washing" and even against slight scratches.

You can use a liquid car wax to protect your paint as soon as one week after your vehicle has been delivered.

Even if you regularly use a **waxing** process in automatic car washes, we recommend that you manually apply a coat of wax to give the paint extra protection, particularly if water no longer beads on the clean paint.

Protect plastic body parts with car wax in the same way as the vehicle body.

During warm weather dead insects tend to collect on the front bumper and on the forward area of the hood. They are much easier to remove from paint that is waxed *often*.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ ***page 230.***

Note

Do not use car wax on

- matte or anodized metal trim
- rubber or rubber-like trim. ■

Polishing

Polishing restores the gloss to the paint.

Polish your vehicle only if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax.

If the polish used does not contain preservative compounds, the paint must be waxed afterwards ⇒ *page 233,* “Waxing”.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ ***page 230.***

Note

Do not treat matte anodized metal trim, plastic or rubber parts with polish or wax. ■

Trim strips

Metal trim needs special care.

For environmental reasons, Audi fabricates the bright trim strips and trim pieces from pure chromium-free aluminum.

Dirt and marks on the trim strips should be removed with a **pH-balanced** cleaning agent (do not use a chrome cleaner). Audi dealers carry cleaning products which have been tested for use on your vehicle and are not harmful to the environment.

To avoid corrosion on the exterior trim strips, only a pH-balanced solution should be used for the windshield washer.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ ***page 230.*** ■

Plastic and vinyl

Plastics needs special care.

Use a clean, damp cloth or sponge to remove dust and light surface dirt. For other soil, use a lukewarm all-purpose cleaning solution or a mild saddle soap for vinyl trim. Remove water spots and soap traces with a clean, damp cloth or sponge. Use a clean, soft cloth to rub dry.

Grease, tar or oil stains can be removed with a clean cloth or sponge soaked with all-purpose cleaner or with a solvent designed especially to clean vinyl.

Occasionally apply a colorless vinyl or leather preservative to retain the material’s luster and pliability. ▶

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230.* ■

Aluminum trim

Use only **neutral-pH** products to remove spots and deposits from aluminum surfaces. Chrome care products and alkaline cleaners will attack aluminum surfaces and can damage them over time.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230.* ■

Touch-up paint

Minor paint damages should be touched up immediately.

– Use either a touch-up paint stick or spray paint to cover minor scratches and nicks.

Your Audi dealer has touch-up paint for minor scratches and stone chips. Scratches should be touched up soon after they occur to prevent corrosion.

If a spot starts to rust, however, a simple touch-up job will not be enough. The affected surface must be smoothed with sand paper and covered with an anti-rust primer before the painted finish can be restored.

The number for the original vehicle paint can be found on the vehicle identification label ⇒ *page 312*.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230.* ■

Windows

Clear vision to all sides.

Clean all windows regularly to remove road film and carwash wax buildup.

– Remove snow from windows using a brush.
– Use a plastic ice scraper to remove ice from windows and mirrors.
– Remove other residue on the windows with a spray-on glass cleaner.
– Wipe the windows dry with a clean piece of cloth or kitchen paper towel.

The best way to remove snow from windows and mirrors is to use a brush. Use a non-abrasive **plastic ice scraper** - better still, a spray deicer - to remove **ice** from windows and mirrors.

The windows must not be cleaned with insect remover or wax since these can interfere with the function of the windshield wiper blades (chatter).

Oil, grease or silicone residue can be removed with **glass cleaner** or **silicone remover**. However, wax residue requires the use of a specially formulated solvent. Please contact your Audi dealer for advice on safe products for wax removal.

Windows should also be cleaned on the inside at regular intervals. ▶

Never dry windows with the same chamois that you use to dry painted surfaces. Wax residue on the chamois can impair vision through the windows.

WARNING

- **The windshield must not be treated with water-repellent materials. They can increase glare under poor visibility conditions such as wetness, darkness, or when the sun is low on the horizon. In addition, they can cause the windshield wipers to chatter.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 230*.**

Note

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack.
- To prevent damage to the wires of the rear defogger, do not place any adhesive stickers on the inside of the rear window over the wires.
- To help prevent dirt from scratching the window, always scrape in a forward direction - pushing the scraper away from you - never back and forth. ■

Weatherstrips

Complete car care includes the weatherstrips as well.

– Apply a suitable rubber conditioner to the weatherstrips from time to time.

To be able seal properly, the weatherstrips around the hood, doors, rear lid, etc. must remain pliable. Spray the weatherstrips with silicone or coat them with talcum powder or glycerine to retain the flexibility of the rubber and to protect them against freezing in the winter.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230*.

Tips

Keep silicone sprays off the windshield to avoid wiper smear in rain. ■

Applies to vehicles: with steel wheels (e.g. if refitted with winter tires)

Steel wheels

The wheels also have to be cleaned.

– Always include the hub caps and wheel rims when washing your vehicle to remove road dirt, salt sprays and brake dust.

If necessary, use a commercial wheel cleaner to remove accumulated brake dust.

The wheel rims are easier to keep clean if they are regularly coated with liquid wax.

Paint scratches should be touched up as soon as possible to prevent corrosion ⇒ *page 235,* “Touch-up paint”.

WARNING

- **Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency - ⇒ *page 215,* “General information”. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230*.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with Cast alloy wheels

Cast (light) alloy wheels

Cast (light) alloy wheels require special care.

– Wash the wheels with a sponge or hose brush every other week.
– For deep cleaning afterwards, use only a dedicated **acid-free** cast alloy wheel cleaner.
– Rub a coat of **liquid wax** onto the rims every three month. Be sure to reach and treat all parts of the rim.

To preserve the decorative appearance of the cast alloy wheels, some special care is necessary. In addition to road dirt and salt, brake dust is also corrosive. If left on for too long, brake dust can cause pitting.

Use only special *acid-free* cleaners formulated for alloy rims. Safe products are available at your Audi dealer. Never leave the cleaner on the rims longer than specified on the label. If not rinsed off promptly, the acid contained in some cleaners can attack the threads on the wheel bolts.

Never use abrasive or metal polishing cleaning agents. If the protective coating has been chipped, e.g. by kicked up road dirt, touch it up as soon as possible.

WARNING

- **Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency ⇒ *page 215,* "General information". Test the brakes carefully each time you wash the vehicle.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 230.* ■**

Body cavity sealing

The body cavity sealing does not need to be checked.

All body cavities which could be affected by corrosion have been given thorough protection at the factory.

This sealing does not require any inspection or additional treatment. If any wax should seep out of the cavity when the ambient temperature is high, it can be removed with a plastic scraper and a suitable solvent.

WARNING

Solvents can be dangerous.

- **Benzine is flammable and toxic. If you use benzine for removing the wax, keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away. Never dump benzine on the ground, into open streams or down sewage drains.**
- **Be sure to observe all safety and environmental regulations. Follow all instructions on the container.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230.* ■**

Chassis

Have the undercoating checked for damage from time to time.

The lower body shell of your Audi is also thoroughly protected against corrosion.

Any damage to the undercoating caused by road hazards should be repaired promptly.

WARNING

Too much undercoating in the wrong places can cause a fire.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. While driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 230.* ■

Care of interior

Aluminum trim

Use only **neutral-pH** products to remove spots and deposits from aluminum surfaces. Chrome care products and alkaline cleaners will attack aluminum surfaces and can damage them over time.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230.* ■

Fabrics and fabric coverings

Fabrics and fabric coverings (e.g. seats, door trim panels, etc.) should be cleaned at regular intervals with a vacuum cleaner. This removes surface dirt particles which could become embedded in the fabric through use. Steam cleaners should not be used, because the steam tends to push the dirt deeper into the fabric and lock it there.

Normal cleaning

Generally, we recommend using a soft sponge or a lint-free microfiber cloth to the clean fabric. Brushes should only be used for carpets and floor mats, since other fabric surfaces could be harmed by brushes.

Normal surface stains can be cleaned using a commercially available foam cleaner. Spread the foam on the surface of the fabric with a soft sponge and work it in gently. Do not saturate the fabric. Then pat the foam dry using absorbent, dry cloths (e.g. microfiber cloth) and vacuum it after it has dried completely.

Cleaning stains

Stains caused by beverages (e.g. coffee, fruit juice, etc.) can be treated with a mild detergent solution. Apply the detergent solution with a sponge. In the case of stubborn stains, a detergent paste can be applied directly to the stain and worked into the fabric. Afterwards, use copious amounts of clean water to remove the remaining detergent. Apply the water with a damp cloth or sponge and pat the fabric dry with an absorbent, dry cloth.

Stains from chocolate or makeup should have detergent paste (e.g. ox-gall soap) rubbed into them. Afterwards, remove the soap with water (damp sponge).

Alcohol can be used to treat stains from grease, oil, lipstick or a ballpoint pen. Melted grease or dye must be patted off using absorbent material. It may be necessary to retreat the areas with detergent paste and water.

In the case of general soiling of the upholstery and cover material, we recommend hiring a specialist that has the equipment to clean the seat covers and other fabric surfaces by shampooing and spray extraction.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ *page 230.*

Tips

Open Velcro fasteners on your clothing can damage the seat cover. Please make sure that Velcro fasteners are closed. ■

Plastic parts and instrument panel

Always use a clean cloth moistened in clear water to clean these areas. For persistent dirt use an Audi approved **solvent-free** plastic cleaner/protectant.

WARNING

Solvents can change the properties of some plastics and make it harder for the airbag to deploy.

- **Never clean the instrument panel or the surface of Airbag modules with cleaning products that contain solvents.**
- **Products containing solvents will make the surface of this part porous.**
- **Serious injuries can result if plastic parts come loose when the airbag is deployed.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information** ⇒ *page 230*.

Note

Cleaning agents containing solvents will attack the material and can change the way it behaves. ■

Applies to vehicles: with natural leather

Natural leather

Audi makes great efforts to maintain the properties, natural look and feel of interior leather.

General

We offer many different types of leather on our vehicles. Most are different types of nappa leather, which has a smooth surface and comes in various colors.

The intensity of the color determines the visual characteristics and appearance. If the surface of the leather has a typical natural look, then the leather is a nappa leather that has been left in a relatively natural condition. This leather offers particularly good comfort and breathes well. Fine veins, closed grains, insect bites, skin folds, and subtle variations in color remain visible. These characteristics demonstrate that the material is natural.

Natural nappa leather is not covered by a color finish. It is therefore more sensitive to soiling and wear, which is something you need to consider if children, animals or other factors might prove to be particularly hard on the leather.

By contrast, leather types that are covered by a colored finish layer are more durable. This has a positive effect on the leather's resistance to wear and soiling in daily use. On the other hand, the typical characteristics of natural leather are barely or not apparent. However, this does not mean that the leather itself is of inferior quality.

Care and handling

Because of the exclusive nature of the types of leather that Audi uses and their unique properties (such as sensitivity to oils, grease, soiling, etc.), you will need to be somewhat careful with these leathers, and a certain type of care is required. For example, dark clothing materials can discolor leather seats (especially if such clothing is damp and was not dyed correctly). Dust and dirt particles ▶

in pores, folds, and seams can have an abrasive effect and can damage the leather surface as well as weaken seams.

The leather should be cleaned regularly as needed. After having been used for a relatively long time, your leather seats will acquire a rich aged finish. This is a characteristic of natural leather and a sign of true quality.

In order to maintain the value of this natural product over the life of your vehicle, you should follow the recommendations below:

Note

- To keep your leather from bleaching out, do not allow it to be exposed to bright sunlight for long periods of time. If you have to leave the vehicle parked outside for long periods, cover the leather to protect it from direct exposure to sunlight.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zippers, rivets or sharp pieces on belts can leave permanent scratches or scrape marks on the surface of the leather.

Tips

- After each time you clean the leather and at regular intervals, use a leather preservative creme that contains UV-blockers and that works into the leather. This creme will nourish and moisturize the leather, helping it to breathe and stay supple. It also helps to build up a protective coating on the surface.
- Clean the leather every 2 - 3 months, and clean any areas that get soiled.
- Remove fresh marks made by ballpoint pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc. as soon as possible.
- Preserve the color of the leather as needed by using a special colored leather care creme to touch up areas of uneven color. ■

Applies to vehicles: with natural leather

Cleaning and caring for leather upholstery and trim

Natural leather requires special care and attention.

Normal cleaning

– Clean soiled areas with a slightly moistened cotton or woolen cloth.

More stubborn dirt

– More stubborn dirt can be removed using a cloth saturated with a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons mild liquid soap).

– Never allow the soap solution to saturate the leather, and make certain that no water soaks into the seams.

– Wipe off the soap solution with a soft, dry cloth.

Cleaning spots

– Remove fresh **water-based** spots (such as coffee, tea, juices, blood) with an absorbent cloth or paper towel.

– Remove fresh **grease or oil-based spots** (such as butter, mayonnaise, chocolate) with an absorbent cloth or paper towel, or use the cleaner from the leather care kit if the spot has not yet penetrated into the surface of the leather.

– Use an oil/grease dissolving spray, if **oil/grease spots have dried on**.

– Remove specific kinds of spots (ballpoint pen, felt marker, fingernail polish, water-based paint, shoe polish, etc.) with a spot remover specifically formulated for leather.

▶

Leather care

– Every half year use an approved leather care product (available from your Audi dealer) to care for the leather.

– Apply the product very sparingly.

– Wipe it off with a damp cloth.

If you have any questions about cleaning and caring for the leather in your vehicle, it is best to contact your authorized Audi dealer, who will be glad to help you and tell you about our full range of leather care products, such as:

- Leather cleaning and care kit
- Cremes to care for colored leather
- Spot removers for ballpoint pens, shoe polish, etc.
- Oil/grease dissolving spray
- New and upcoming products.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ ***page 230.***

Note

- Never use chemical solvents (e.g. lighter fluid, turpentine), waxes, shoe polish or similar products on the leather surfaces in your Audi.
- To avoid damage, have stubborn stains removed by a commercial cleaning specialist. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Alcantara upholstery

Cleaning Alcantara® (synthetic suede)

Removing dust and dirt

– Moisten a cloth, *squeeze out excess water* and wipe down the seat surfaces.

Removing stains

– Moisten a cloth with lukewarm water or with diluted **ethyl (rubbing) alcohol**.

– Dab at the stain. Start at the outside and work inwards.

– Once the stain is no longer visible, use a soft dry cloth or tissue to soak up the moisture.

Do not use leather cleaning products on Alcantara.

You may use a suitable shampoo for removing dust and dirt.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the car is left standing in the sun for long periods, the Alcantara should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. Slight color variations will develop in normal use and are not an indication of material deterioration.

Note

- Never use chemical solvents (e.g. lighter fluid, turpentine), waxes, shoe polish or similar products on Alcantara® surfaces.
- To avoid damage, have stubborn stains removed by a commercial cleaning specialist.
- Do not use brushes, stiff sponges or similarly abrasive cleaning aids. ■

Safety belts

Only well-maintained safety belts work reliably when needed.

Heavily soiled safety belts may not retract properly.

– Keep belts clean.

– For cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. Let belts dry thoroughly and away from direct sunlight.

– Do not allow inertia reel safety belts to retract before they are completely dry.

– Check the condition of your safety belts *regularly*.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged safety belts can break in a crash.

- **Anything that might damage your safety belts could mean that you and your passengers would not be adequately protected in an accident.**
- **Safety belt performance depends on correct installation. Never remove belts from the vehicle to clean them.**
- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents, bleach or dyes. They have corrosive properties which weaken the webbing.**
- **When cleaning your safety belts, inspect them for damage. If you discover damage, see your Audi dealer.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information** ⇒ *page 230.* ■

Engine compartment

Be especially careful when cleaning the engine compartment.

Always switch off the ignition before cleaning the engine ⇒ ⚠.

Plenum panel

Remove leaves from the plenum panel in front of the windshield under the engine hood. This prevents the water drain holes from becoming blocked, and it prevents debris from entering the vehicle interior through the heating and ventilation ducts.

Corrosion protection

The engine compartment and transmission have been corrosion-protected at the factory.

Good anti-corrosion treatment is very important, particularly in the winter. If the vehicle is frequently driven on salt treated roads, the entire engine compartment and plenum panel should be thoroughly cleaned at the end of winter and retreated to prevent salt damage. At the same time, the underside of the vehicle should be washed as well.

If the engine compartment is cleaned at any time with grease removing solutions[2)], or if you have the engine washed, the anti-corrosion treatment is almost always removed as well. It is therefore essential to have a long-lasting corrosion protection reapplied to all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Be aware: The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.

- **Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to read the information** ⇒ *page 242.*

2) Use only the correct cleaning solutions. Never use gasoline or diesel fuel.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Before reaching into the front plenum panel, always remove the ignition key. Otherwise, the windshield wiper system could unintentionally be switched on, possibly causing personal injury from the moving wiper linkage.**
- **Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the ignition is off.**
- **Do not wash, wax or dry the engine with the engine running. Moving or hot parts could injure you.**
- **Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information**

⇒ *page 230.* ■

Fuel supply and filling your fuel tank

Gasoline

Fuel supply

Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.

Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. See also ⇒ *page 314,* "Data". Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located either on the driver's side B-pillar (visible when the door is open) or inside the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

Use unleaded gasoline only. Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇒ *page 245*.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

- Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI
- Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON+MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

Note

- Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
- Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions. ■

Blended gasoline

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents. ▶

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must not contain more than 10% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
- If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel. ■

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ■

Fuel tank

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇒ *page 248*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in **Technical Data** ⇒ *page 314*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇒ *page 244*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an on-board refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

⚠ WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86).

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter. ■

Refuelling

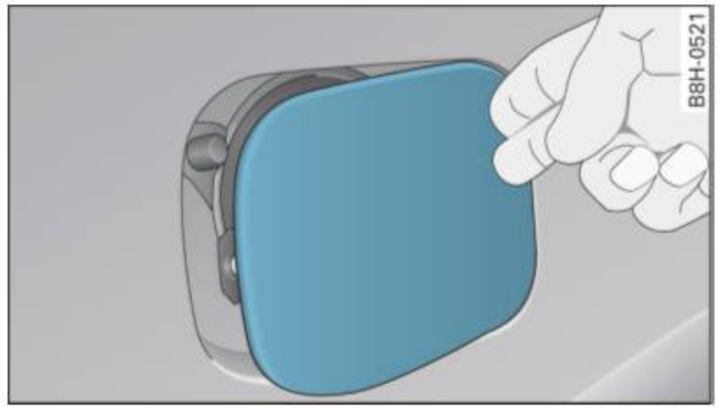


Fig. 191 Right vehicle side, standing behind the rear wheel: opening the fuel filler flap,

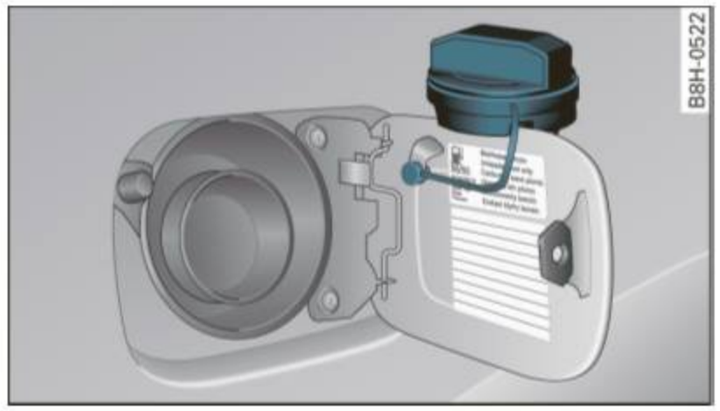


Fig. 192 Fuel cap sitting on the opened fuel filler flap

When adding fuel, the ignition and any cellular phones in the vehicle must be switched *off*.

Taking the fuel cap off

– Press the right side of the fuel filler flap to open it ⇒ fig. 191.

– Unscrew fuel filler cap counter-clockwise and hang it on the fuel filler flap. ▶

Refuelling procedure

– Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.

– Select a medium refuelling rate so that the nozzle switches off automatically when the tank is full.

Putting the fuel cap back on

– After filling your tank, twist the fuel filler cap clockwise until you hear a definite click.

– Close the fuel filler flap.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel filler cap properly and completely. An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause a message in the driver information display ⇒ *page 27* or cause the MIL lamp ⇒ *page 27* to come on.

⚠ WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.

- **Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.**
- **Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the fuel filler neck could cause fuel to spray out of filler neck or to overflow. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel can cause a fire.**
- **Never use a cellular telephone while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.**
- **Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.

- **Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.**
- **For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.**
- **If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:**
  - **Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**
  - **Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.**
  - **Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.**
  - **If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.**
  - **Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.**
  - **Always observe local and state/provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.**
  - **Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852–86).**

Note

If any fuel has spilled onto the car, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage to the paint. ▶

For the sake of the environment

As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled - causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.

Tips

- Running your engine while refuelling may cause vapors to escape or even cause fuel to spill out of the tank. This would then shut off the fuel nozzle before the tank is full.
- Do not refuel your vehicle with the ignition turned on. The fuel gauge may otherwise not indicate the correct fuel level after refuelling. ■

Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand

You can open the fuel filler flap by hand if the power locking system should fail.

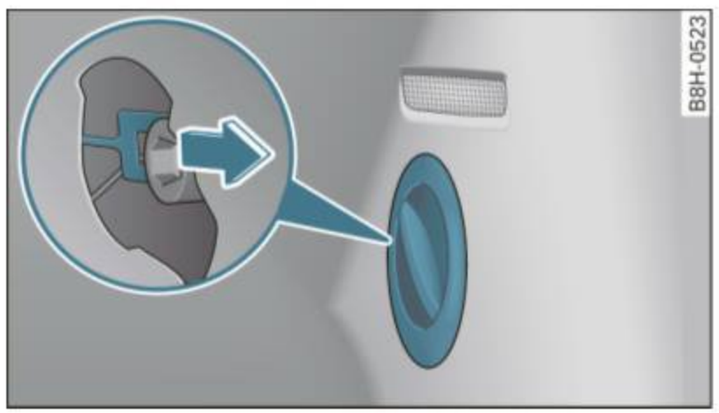


Fig. 193 Inside the luggage compartment: Opening the fuel filler flap by hand

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually:

– Open the rear lid.

– Open the round cover in the side trim panel on the right side.

– Pull the actuator in the direction of arrow to release the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 193.

– Open the fuel filler flap. ■

Checking and filling

Engine hood

Releasing the engine hood

The engine hood is released from inside the vehicle.

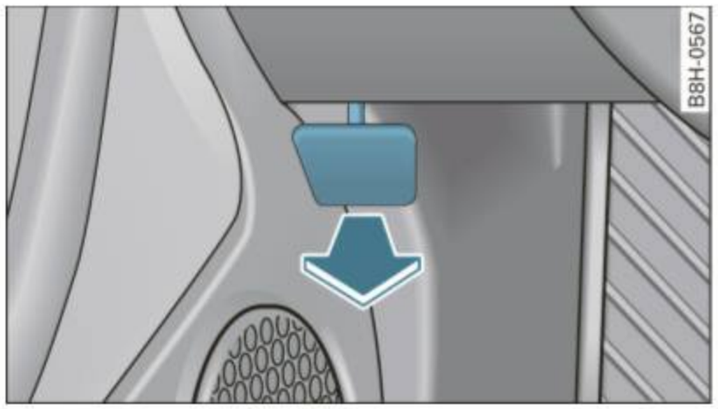


Fig. 194 Driver's side footwell: engine hood release lever

– Pull the release lever on the left under the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 194 in direction of the arrow.

The hood pops up slightly under spring pressure. ■

Opening the engine hood

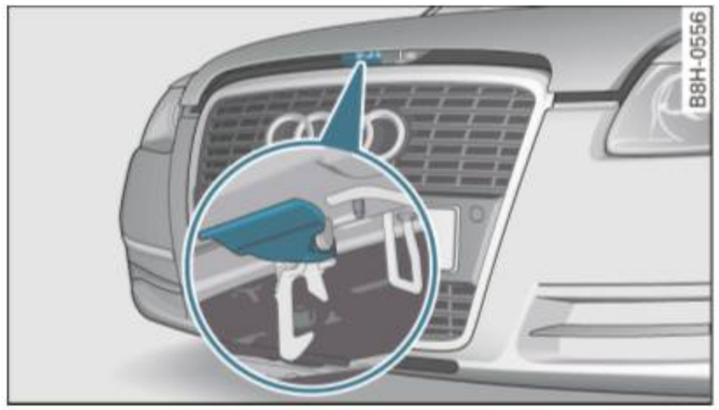


Fig. 195 Release lever under the hood

Before opening the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wipers are flat against the windshield. Otherwise, they could damage the paint on the hood.

– Lift the hood slightly ⇒ ⚠.
– Pull the release under the hood ⇒ fig. 195. This releases the catch.
– Open the hood all the way.

The hood is kept in the open position by a gas strut.

⚠ WARNING

Hot engine coolant can burn you.

- **To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.** ■

Closing the engine hood

– Pull the hood down until the pressure from the strut is reduced.

– Let the hood *drop down* and latch in place. *Do not try to push it shut*; it may fail to engage ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving.

- **When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.**
- **If you notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it. ■**

Working in the engine compartment

Be especially careful whenever you work in the engine compartment.

Whenever you must perform any work in the engine compartment, for example checking and filling different fluids, there is a risk of injury, burns and accidents. To prevent personal injury always observe the following WARNINGS. The engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

To help avoid injury, before you check anything under the hood:

- **Turn off the engine.**
- **Remove the ignition key.**
- **Apply the parking brake.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Move selector lever of automatic transmission to "P" (Park); put manual transmission in Neutral.**
- **Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.**
- **To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.**
- **Keep children away from the engine compartment.**
- **Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.**
- **Never open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is still warm. The coolant system is pressurized and hot coolant could spray out.**
- **Protect your face, hands and arm from steam or hot engine coolant by placing a thick rag over the cap when you open the coolant reservoir.**
- **If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:**
  - **Always disconnect the battery.**
  - **Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.**
  - **Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.**
- **To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:**
  - **Ignition cables**
  - **Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.**
- **If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

– First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever of automatic transmission to "P" (Park); put manual transmission in Neutral.

– Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and wear no clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.

- **Minimize exposure to emission and chemical hazards ⇒ ⚠.**

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- **Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**
- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.**

Note

When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

For the sake of the environment

To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Audi dealer. ■

Engine compartment

Applies to vehicles: with 2.0 l turbo, 4-cylinder-engine

2.0 l, 4-cylinder turbo engine (200 hp)

These are the most important items that you can check.

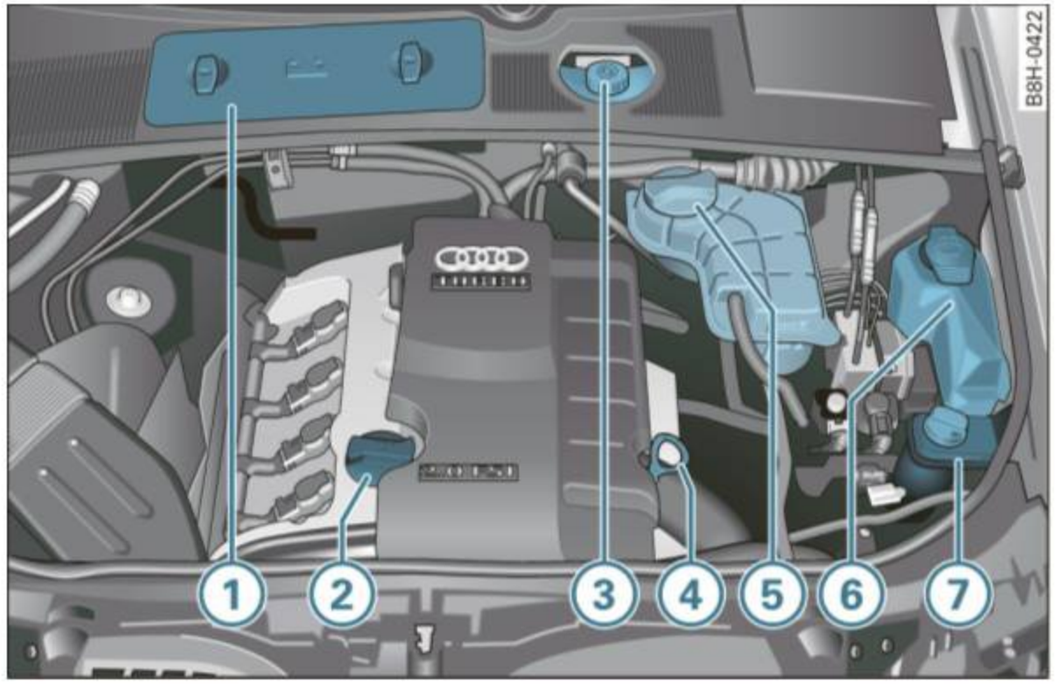


Fig. 196 Engine compartment: 2.0 l, 4-cylinder turbo

① Battery 261
② Engine oil filler cap 255
③ Brake fluid reservoir 260
④ Engine oil dipstick (orange) ..... 254 ▶

(5) Coolant expansion tank ( ) 258
(6) Windshield/headlight washer container ( ) 266
(7) Power steering reservoir 217

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with 6-cylinder engine

3.2 liter, 6-cylinder engine (255 hp)

These are the most important items that you can check.

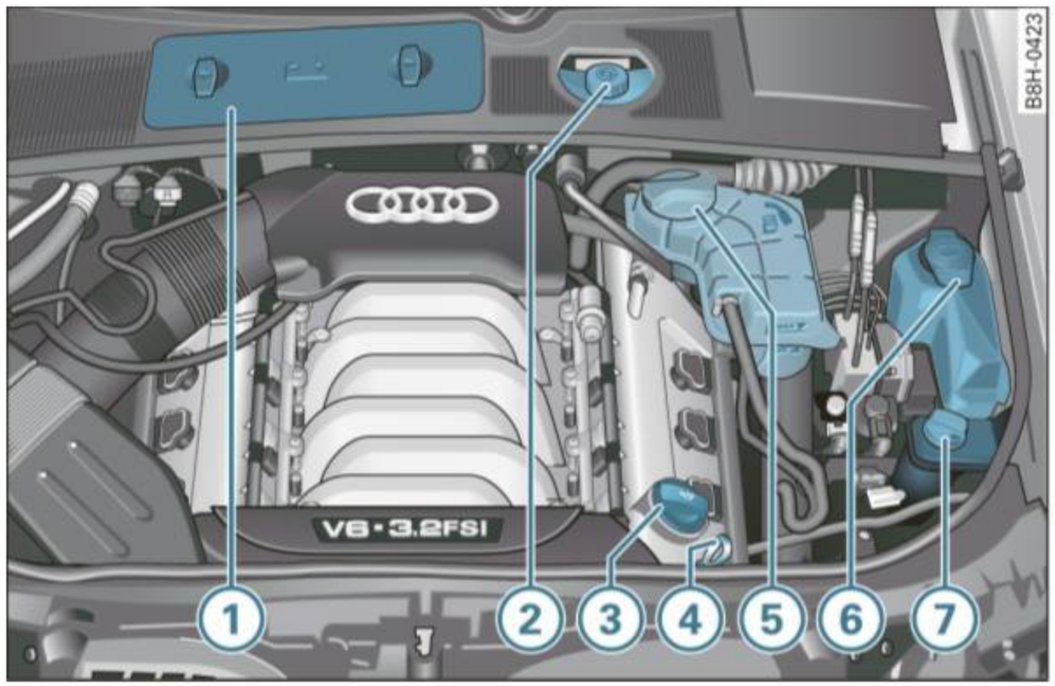


Fig. 197 Engine compartment: 3.2 liter, 6-cylinder

(1) Battery 261
(2) Brake fluid reservoir ( ) 260
(3) Engine oil filler cap ( ) 255
(4) Engine oil dipstick (orange) 254
(5) Coolant expansion tank ( ) 258
(6) Windshield/headlight washer container ( ) 266
(7) Power steering reservoir 217

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*. ■

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used in your Audi needs the right kind of oil.

The engine in your Audi is a sophisticated powerplant that was built to exacting specifications. This engine needs the right kind of engine oil that meets specifications regarding quality and viscosity so that it can run smoothly and reliably. Choosing the right oil and changing oil within the time and mileage intervals printed in your vehicle's Warranty & Maintenance booklet matters a lot more today than it did years ago. Audi has developed a special quality standard for engine oil that will help assure that your vehicle's engine will get the lubrication it needs for proper operation.

Modern engine lubrication has taken a quantum leap in the last few years. Many synthetic oils available today provide better engine lubrication that can outlast traditional petroleum-based oils, making them a smart choice for use throughout the life of your Audi.

Whether you use synthetic or petroleum-based engine oil, the oil that you use must conform to Audi's oil quality standard VW 502 00 to help keep your vehicle's engine running smoothly and help

prevent the formation of harmful deposits, sometimes called "sludge", that over time can lead to expensive repairs.

At the time of printing, engine oils available in the U.S. and Canada that meet the exacting specifications of Audi oil standard VW 502 00 are synthetic engine oils. This does not mean, however, that every synthetic engine oil will meet Audi oil standard VW 502 00. So always be sure that you use an approved oil.

To help prevent the formation of harmful deposits use only oil with the following specifications printed on the oil container:

Audi oil standard VW 502 00

Oil container labels may carry the specification singly or in combination with other designations and oil quality standards.

Viscosity

Engine oils are graded according to their viscosity. The proper viscosity grade oil for your engine depends on climactic or seasonal conditions where you drive. You can use oil with a viscosity grade of SAE 5W40 across all temperature ranges for normal driving conditions.

However, if engine oil viscosity grade SAE 5W40 is not available, you can also use viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 or SAE 0W-40 as long as it meets Audi oil quality standard VW 502 00 specifications.

Because engine oil that meets the Audi oil standard may not be available everywhere when you need it, we strongly recommend that you always carry with you an extra quart (liter) of oil that expressly conforms to the VW 502 00 specification, in case you have to top off the oil while on the road.

Only if the level of the oil is at or below the minimum mark on the oil dipstick - and no oil that expressly conforms to Audi oil standard VW 502 00 specifications is available - may you top off with a high quality engine oil, preferably synthetic-based, that meets ACEA A3, ACEA A5 or ACEA B5, API SL or ILSAC GF-3 specifications, but even then, only in viscosity grades SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, or SAE 0W-40. However, during the entire time between oil change intervals, never top off with more than a total of 0.5 qt/liter engine oil that does not conform to Audi oil specification VW 502 00.

For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca. Here you will also find a current list of oils (manufacturers, brand names etc.) that conform to Audi oil standard VW 502 00.

Changing the engine oil

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed according to the mileage (kilometers) and time intervals specified in your vehicle's Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Do not exceed these intervals – harmful deposits from old engine oil can reduce engine performance and can lead to expensive engine repairs.

Changing the oil at the recommended intervals is so very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when you have your oil changed, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should even be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or mostly under stop-and-go traffic conditions, or when you use your vehicle where temperatures stay below freezing point for long periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

It is essential that you change your oil at the recommended intervals using only engine oil that complies with Audi oil standard VW 502 00. Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Your dealer will have to deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in ▶

the form of Service or Repair Orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ■

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇒ *page 219*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible *with the oil dipstick* ⇒ *page 254*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇒ *page 255*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

Tips

- **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
- If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately. ■

Checking the engine oil level

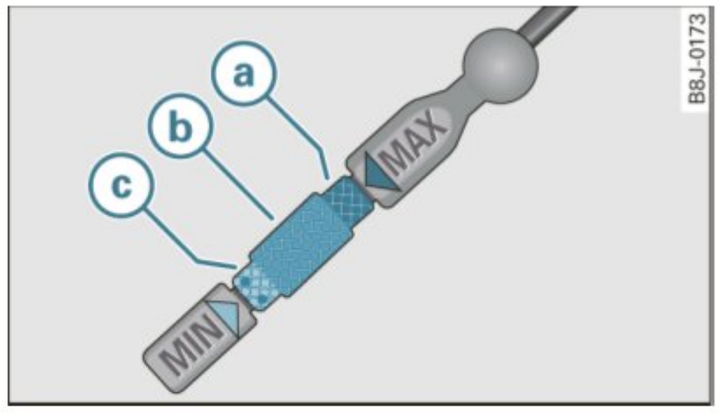


Fig. 198 Illustration of principle 1: Markers on oil dipstick

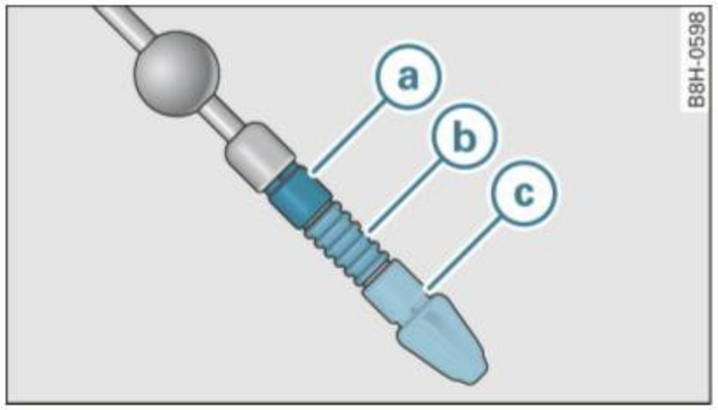


Fig. 199 Illustration of principle 2: Markers on oil dipstick

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

Determining oil level

- Park your vehicle so that it is horizontally level.
- While at operating state temperature, briefly let the engine run at idle and then shut it off.
- Wait approx. two minutes.
- Pull out the oil dipstick. Wipe off the oil dipstick with a clean cloth, and slide it back in as far as it will go.
- Pull it back out and read off the oil level ⇒ *page 254*, fig. 198 or ⇒ fig. 199. Top off the engine oil, if applicable ⇒ *page 255*.

Oil level within range (a)

- Do *not* add oil.

Oil level within range (b)

- You *can* add oil. *Afterwards*, the oil level should be within range (a).

Oil level within range (c)

- You *must* add oil. *Afterwards*, the oil level should be within range (a).

The oil level needs to be checked at regular intervals. The best times to do this are whenever you refuel and prior to long trips.

Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to 1 quart per 1.200 miles (1 liter per 2.000 km). Consumption may be higher within the first 3.000 miles (5.000 km). ■

Adding engine oil

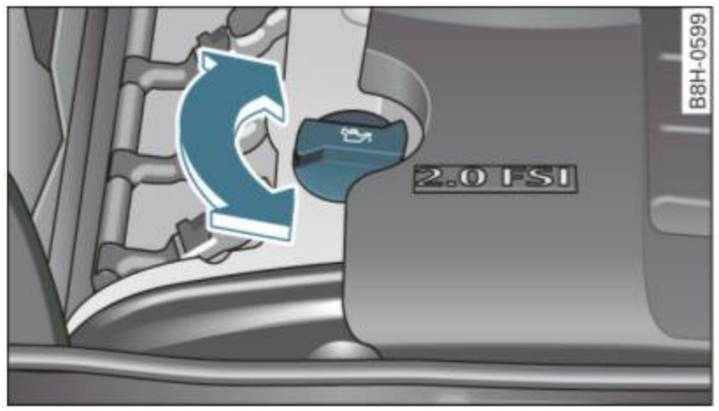


Fig. 200 Oil filler cap location: 2.0 liter, 4-cylinder turbo engine

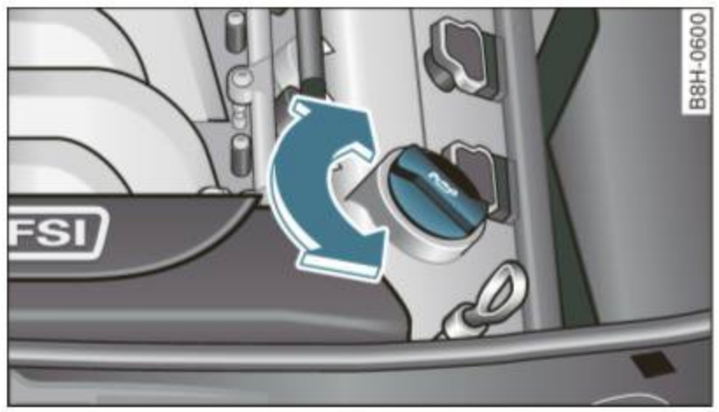


Fig. 201 Oil filler cap location: 3.2 liter, V6-engine

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

– Unscrew the cap to the engine oil filling hole ⇒ *page 255*, fig. 200 or ⇒ *page 255*, fig. 201.

– Carefully top off with the appropriate oil in 0.5 liter doses.

– Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇒ *page 254*.

– Top off the oil again, if necessary.

– Screw the cap back on the filling hole and slide the oil dipstick in as far as it will go.

⚠ WARNING

- **While topping off, the oil must not come in contact with hot engine parts - fire hazard!**
- **The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running - fire hazard!**
- **If your skin has come in contact with the engine oil, you must subsequently cleanse it thoroughly.**

Note

- The oil level must not be above range (a) - danger of converter or engine damage! Contact an authorized dealership to draw off oil, if necessary.
- **Audi does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may damage the engine and adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.**

For the sake of the environment

- Under no circumstances can the oil come in contact with the sewage network or the soil.
- Observe and follow legal regulations when disposing of empty oil containers. ■

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:

- **Wear eye protection.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.**
- **Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.**
- **Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.**

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
- Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
- Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station. ■

Engine cooling system

Coolant

The engine coolant performs two functions: it keeps the engine from overheating and it protects the engine from freezing in the winter.

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of water and the manufacturer's glycol-basedcoolant additive G12++ antifreeze with anticorrosion additives (50% for USA models; 60% for Canadian models). This mixture both assures the necessary frost protection and protects metal components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency. If the coolant frost protection is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the vehicle heating and engine cooling system.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

- - 31 °F (- 35 °C) USA
- - 40 °F (- 40 °C) Canada.

You can mix the G12++ coolant additive with other additives (G12+ or G12). Always check with your authorized Audi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

Note

- Before winter sets in, have the coolant checked to see if the coolant additive in your vehicle is sufficient to meet the climate conditions. This is especially important if you live in a region where the winter is extremely cold. If necessary, increase the proportion of coolant additive to 60%.
- When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, remember:
  - We recommend using only coolant additive G12++ (check the label) for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi dealers. Other types of antifreeze can significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and serious engine damage.
- Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ■

Checking the engine coolant level

The engine coolant level can be checked with a quick glance.

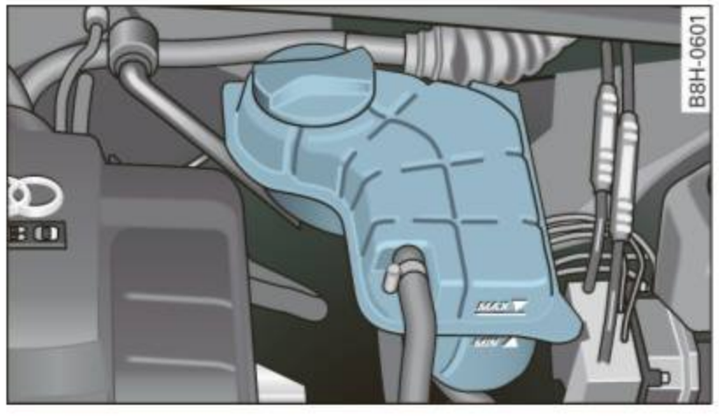


Fig. 202 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

- Turn off the ignition.
- Let the engine cool down.
- Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇒ fig. 202 and **carefully** twist the cap counter-clockwise ⇒ ⚠.
- Read the engine coolant level in the open coolant expansion tank ⇒ fig. 202. With a cold engine, the coolant level should be between the "min" and "max" markings. When the engine is warm, the level may be slightly above the "max" marking.

The location of the coolant expansion tank can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇒ *page 252*.

To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level sensor.

When the coolant level is too low, the warning light in the Auto-Check System ⇒ *page 31* will blink until you add coolant and the level has been restored to normal. Even though there is an electric coolant level sensor, we still recommend you check the coolant level from time to time.

Coolant loss

Coolant loss may indicate a **leak** in the cooling system. In the event of coolant loss, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a **sealed** system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating. ▶

WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.

- **Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.**
- **Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.**
- **Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.**
- **To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.**

Note

Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ■

Adding coolant

Be very careful when adding engine coolant.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

– Turn off the engine.

– Let the engine cool down.

– Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇒ *page 258,* fig. 202 and **carefully** twist the cap counter-clockwise ⇒ ⚠.

– Add coolant.

– Twist the cap on again *tightly*.

Replacement engine coolant must conform to exact specifications ⇒ *page 257,* "Coolant". Even in an emergency, if coolant additive G12++, G12+ or G12 is not available, do **not** use a different additive. Use plain water instead until you can get the correct additive and can restore the correct ratio. This should be done as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

Always use *new* engine coolant when refilling.

Do not fill coolant above the "MAX" mark. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.

WARNING

- **The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.**
  - **Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.**
  - **Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.**
  - **Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.**
  - **To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.**
- **Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store antifreeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children.**
- **If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked "poison".**

Note

- Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.
- If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze ⇒ *page 257* must be restored as soon as possible.

For the sake of the environment

Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant while observing all environmental regulations. ■

Radiator fan

The radiator fan switches on automatically by itself.

The radiator fan is driven by the engine via the V-belt. The viscous clutch regulates the speed of the fan according to the temperature of the coolant.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan* switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operating conditions.

After you switch the engine off, the auxiliary fan can continue running for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition off. It can even switch on again later by itself ⇒ ⚠, if

- the temperature of the engine coolant rises due to the heat build-up from the engine in the engine compartment, or
- the engine compartment heats up because the vehicle is parked in intense sunlight.

⚠ WARNING

- **To reduce the risk of personal injury never touch the radiator fan.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly even when the engine is not running.**
- **The auxiliary radiator fan switches on automatically when the engine coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.** ■

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

The brake fluid level can be checked with a quick glance.

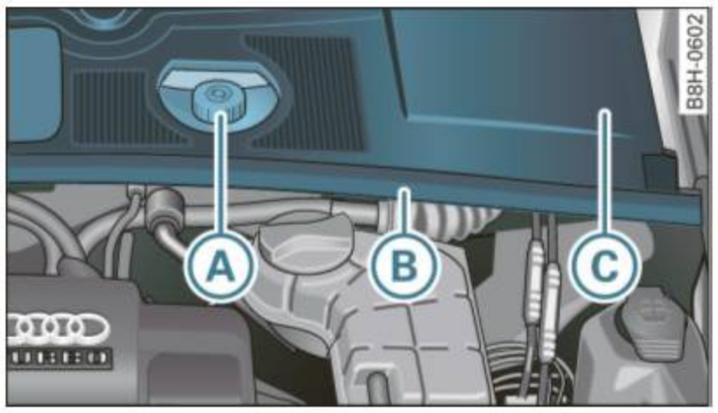


Fig. 203 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

– Pull the rubber strip (B) up partially and lift the cover (C) slightly ⇒ fig. 203.

– Read the brake fluid level from the brake fluid reservoir (A). The brake fluid level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings. ▶

The brake fluid reservoir is located at the rear partition of the engine compartment on the left side ⇒ *page 252*.

The fluid level may drop *slightly* after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is not cause for alarm.

If the brake fluid level falls *considerably* below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning/indicator light (U.S. models: **BRAKE**, Canadian models: (!)) will come on ⇒ *page 23* and ⇒ *page 30*. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and the cause corrected. If the brake fluid level is too low, the brake warning/indicator light will illuminate. Contact an authorized Audi dealer **immediately**. ■

Changing brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed by an experienced technician.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably and decrease braking performance.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed **every two years**. Always use new brake fluid which conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized **Audi dealer**. Your dealer has the correct tools, the right brake fluid and the know-how to do this for you.

⚠ WARNING

- **Brake fluid is poisonous. It must be stored only in the closed original container out of the reach of children!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:**
  - **Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also indicated on the brake fluid reservoir.**
  - **The brake fluid must be new. Heavy use of the brakes can cause a vapor lock if the brake fluid is left in the system too long. This can seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes as well as your safety. This could result in an accident.**

Note

Brake fluid will damage the paint of your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid as well as the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi dealer. ■

Battery

General information

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance. With *high* outside temperatures it is advisable however to check the fluid level at regular intervals through the transparent battery housing. Also check the fluid level each time you charge the battery. After charging the battery ⇒ *page 265*, you should likewise check the battery acid level. ▶

Have the battery checked when you take your vehicle in for service. You are well advised to replace a battery that is older than 5 years.

Disconnecting the battery terminals

Some vehicle functions (power window regulators, for example) are lost if the battery terminals are disconnected. These functions have to be relearned after the battery terminals are connected again. To prevent this, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system when absolutely necessary for repairs.

Vehicles not driven for long periods

If you are going to let your vehicle stand for a long time and not drive it, you should remember there are electrical components which are still functioning and they will draw energy from the battery and drain it, for example, the engine immobilizer. To prevent this, you can either charge the battery occasionally to keep it in good working condition or you can disconnect the negative cable on the battery.

Winter operation

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. This is because more power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your authorized Audi dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in ⇒ *page 265*. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems when the weather is cold, but will also last longer.

Replacing battery

The new battery **must have** the same capacity, voltage (12 volts), amperage, construction and plug sealing, as the original battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing. Batteries specially developed by Audi fulfill the maintenance, output, and safety requirements.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off ⇒ ⓘ.

We recommend that you use maintenance-free or **cycle-resistant/leak-proof** batteries according to the standards TL 825 06 (from December 1997) and VW 7 50 73 (from August 2001).

Replacing the battery should be carried by a qualified workshop. Please follow the instructions on the battery cover.

ⓘ Note

- All work on the battery requires technical knowledge. Please contact an Audi dealership or another authorized facility for questions about the battery - danger of acid burns and explosion hazard!
- Make sure the ventilation hose on the side of the battery is connected, otherwise fumes or battery acid can leak out.
- Battery holder and terminals always have to be secured correctly.
- Before all work on the battery follow the **warnings** below ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on *page 263*.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend your authorized Audi dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly in compliance with all environmental regulations. Disposing of vehicle batteries improperly is very dangerous to the environment. Make sure that the removed battery cannot overbalance, otherwise sulfuric acid might escape!

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged and having to be replaced. ■

Working on the battery

Be especially careful when working on or near the battery.

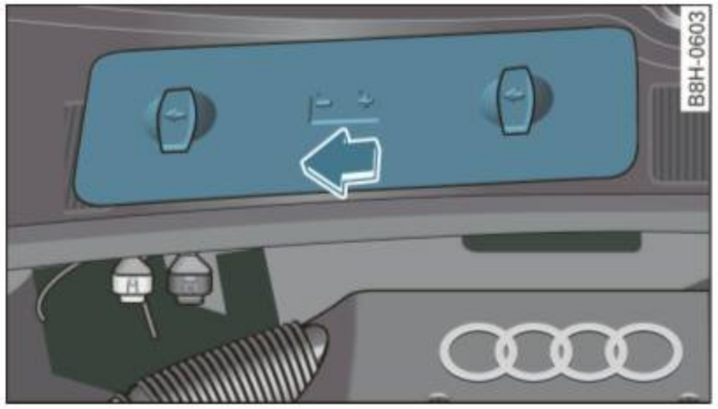


Fig. 204 Engine compartment, plenum chamber: battery cover

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

Removing the cover

– Push the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 204.

Always heed the **safety warnings**, when working on the vehicle battery or the vehicle electrical system to prevent injury.

The following WARNINGS are very important when working on the battery:

Always heed the following WARNING SYMBOLS and safety precautions when working on the battery.	
	**Always wear eye protection.**
	**Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.**
	**No - sparks - flames - smoking.**
	**When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**
	**Always keep the battery well out of reach of children.**

⚠ WARNING

Whenever working on the battery or on the electrical system, there is the risk of injury, accident and even fire. Read and heed the following WARNINGS:

- **Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing. Shield your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or other injury.**
- **Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid can cause blindness and severe burns.**
  - **Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings.**
  - **If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention.**
  - **If you should ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.**
- **Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light.**
- **Do not smoke.**
- **Do not interchange the positive and negative cables.**
- **When working on the battery, be sure not to short-circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.

- **When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**
- **Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.**
- **Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.**
- **Before performing any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine and ignition as well as any electrical equipment. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. If you are just going to replace a light bulb, then it is enough to switch off the lights.**
- **Before disconnecting the battery, switch off the anti-theft alarm system! Otherwise you will set off the alarm.**
- **When disconnecting the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable.**
- **Before reconnecting the battery, make sure all electrical consumers are switched off. Reconnect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Never interchange the cables - this could start a fire!**
- **Never charge a frozen or a thawed-out battery. It could explode! If a battery has frozen, then it must be replaced. A discharged battery can freeze over at 32 °F (0 °C).**
- **Make sure the vent hose is always attached to the opening on the side of the battery.**
- **Never use batteries which are damaged. There is the danger of an explosion! Always replace a damaged battery.**

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.**

Note

- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running, otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.
- If your vehicle is going to stand for a long period of time without being driven, protect the battery from "freezing" otherwise it will be damaged and will then have to be replaced. ■

Checking the battery acid level

The acid level of a conventional battery can be checked visually.

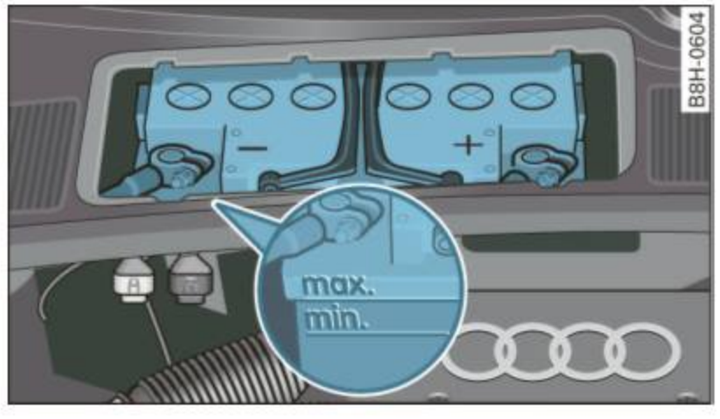


Fig. 205 Engine compartment: Battery with open battery compartment cover

– The level of acid inside the battery is visible through the case at the font. Acid level should be exactly at the "max" mark or very close below it. ▶

If the electrolyte level is below the "min" level, have an authorized workshop fill the battery cell with **distilled water**.

Note

Do not overfill the battery, otherwise battery acid will overflow through the vent opening. This can damage the paint and cause corrosion. ■

Battery charging

Starting the engine requires a well charged battery.

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on *page 263* and ⇒ ⚠.
- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
- Connect charger cables. **Charger cables must always be connected POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) and NEGATIVE (-) to NEGATIVE (-).**
- Switch on the charger.
- Make sure the charging rate is not over 6 amps.
- Turn off the charger ⇒ ⚠.
- Disconnect the charger cables.
- Connect both battery cables to the battery if necessary - *first* plus, *then* minus.

It is not necessary to remove the battery from the engine compartment, and it is also not necessary to disconnect the cables.

Normally, a battery should be charged at no more than 10 percent of its rated capacity.

For example, a charging current of 4.5 amps would be used on a battery rated at 45 Ah. Rated capacity of the battery in your vehicle is listed on the battery housing.

The battery caps should *not* be opened when charging a battery.

⚠ WARNING

Charging a battery can be dangerous.

- **Always follow the operating instructions provided by the battery charger manufacturer when charging your battery.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.**
- **Do not reuse batteries which were frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.**
- **Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.**
- **To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.**
- **Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent technician with the proper equipment.**
- **Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.**

Note

Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger. ■

Windshield/headlight washer reservoir

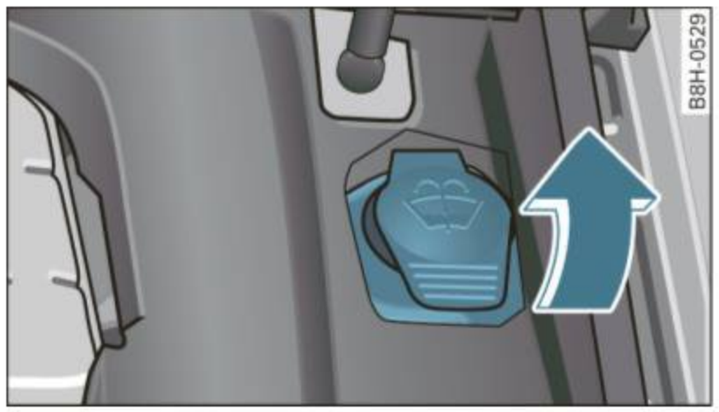


Fig. 206 Engine compartment: windshield washer fluid container

The windshield and headlight washer* container is located on the left side of the engine compartment ⇒ fig. 206. The symbol is on the cap the of the windshield washer fluid container.

- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.
- Lift the filler cap tongue to add washer fluid. You can fill the container to the top.
- Press the cap back onto the filler neck after filling the container.

You can find the reservoir **capacity** in the table in ⇒ *page 314*.

To prevent lime residue from building up on the spray jets, use distilled water when refilling. Always add a glass cleaner solution (with frost protection in the winter).

Note

Do not use engine coolant antifreeze or any other solution that can damage the vehicle paint. ■

Tires and wheels

Tires

General notes

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle.

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are, however, one of the most important parts of a vehicle, particularly considering the comparatively small patch of rubber on each tire that assures that all-important contact between you, your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining the correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, avoiding damage from road hazards and regularly inspecting tires for damage including cuts, slashes irregular wear and overall condition are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure including tread separation and blowouts.

Avoiding damage

If you have to drive over a curb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as close as possible at a right angle to the curb.

Always keep chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires.

Inspect the tires regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.

Storing tires

Mark tires when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you to be able to mount them correctly when you reinstall them.

When removed, the wheels or tires should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

Store tires in a vertical position if they are not mounted on rims, in a horizontal position if they are mounted on rims.

New tires

New tires have to be broken in ⇒ ⚠.

The tread depth of new tires may vary, according to the type and make of tire and the tread pattern.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires has been damaged. The tires must be checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire can be identified by arrows on the sidewall, that point in the direction the tire is designed to rotate. You must follow the specified direction of rotation. This is necessary so that these tires can develop their optimum characteristics regarding grip, road noise, wear and hydroplaning resistance. For more information ⇒ *page 298*.

Rims with bolted rim ring*

Light-alloy wheels with a bolted rim ring consist of several parts. These parts are screwed together with special bolts, using a specific technique. This ensures proper function, seal, safety, and true running of the wheel. For this reason, damaged rims should be replaced, and you should never repair or dismantle them ⇒ ⚠.

Rims with screw-on decorative covers*

Light-alloy wheels can be furnished with interchangeable decorative covers that are mounted to the rim with self-locking bolts. ▶

Contact a dealership if you would like to replace damaged wheel covers.

⚠ WARNING

Never loosen the screws on rims with threaded rim rings* - danger of accident!

⚠ WARNING

New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking ability.

- **New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in. To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of control, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at low speed.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**
- **If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage. ■**

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted. ▶

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures then the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires my be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇒ *page 268,* "Cold tire inflation pressure".

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures then the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires my be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇒ *page 281*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇒ ⚠ in “Winter tires” on *page 284*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇒ *page 278,* “Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)” for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire’s “serial number” It begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2209 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22th week of 2009. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity as listed on the label located either on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with table below ⇒ *page 271*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
4	2	2 in front

Cold tire inflation pressure

Tire pressure affects the overall handling, performance and safety of a vehicle.



Fig. 207 Tire pressure label: located either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap

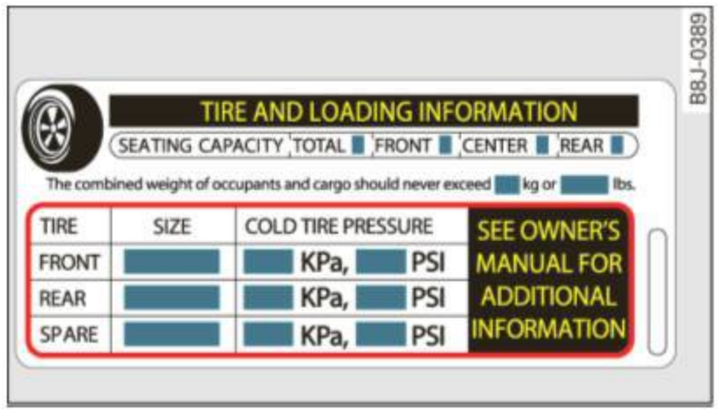


Fig. 208 Tire pressure label

Tire pressure generally refers to the amount of air in a tire that it needs it to do its job and safely carry the combined load of the entire vehicle and its contents. Tire pressure is measured in kilopascals (kPa), the international measuring unit and in pounds per square inch (PSI). Tire pressure is based in part on the vehicle's design and load limit – the greatest amount of weight that the vehicle can carry safely and the tire size. The proper tire pressure is frequently referred to as the "recommended cold tire inflation pressure." Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up because of internal friction when it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has ▶

warmed up than when it is "cold." It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

Maintaining proper tire pressure is one of the most important things you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure. Underinflated tires are a major cause of sudden tire failure. Keeping tires at the right pressure is also important for safe and responsive vehicle handling, traction, braking and load carrying. **Tire pressures are particularly important when the vehicle is being driven at higher speeds, and then especially when heavily loaded even within the permissible load-carrying capacities approved for your vehicle.**

The recommended tire pressures for your Audi depend on the kind of tires on your vehicle and the number of passengers and/or amount of luggage you will be transporting.

On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

If you wish to improve comfort when operating the vehicle at normal load (up to 2 occupants), you can adjust tire pressures to those specified for normal vehicle load. Before operating the vehicle at maximum load, you must increase the tire pressures to those specified for maximum vehicle load ⇒ ⚠.

If your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system*, bear in mind that the system can only monitor the tire pressures you have stored. The system does not recognize the load condition of your vehicle.

The effectiveness of the tire pressure monitoring system will be impaired if you store normal load pressures but then operate the vehicle at its maximum load ⇒ ⚠.

See the illustration ⇒ *page 271,* fig. 207 for the location of the label either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap (color of the actual label and exact location on the vehicle will vary slightly).

Note that the following table is accurate at the time of going to press and is subject to change. In the event of discrepancies, the tire pressure label (either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap) always takes precedence.

The table below lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the Audi model covered by your Owner's Literature at the vehicle's capacity weight and the tire sizes installed on the respective models as original equipment, or as a factory option.

Engine (displacement in liter)	Tire designation	Tire pressure front				Tire pressure rear			
		normal load condition (up to 2 occupants)		full load condition		normal load condition (up to 2 occupants)		full load condition	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
4-cylinder 2.0	215/55 R16 93H All Season	33	230	35	240	30	210	38	260
	235/45 R17 94H All Season	33	230	35	240	30	210	38	260
	235/45 R17 94Y High Performance	30	210	33	230	30	210	33	230
	235/40 R18 95Y XL High Performance	36	250	42	290	36	250	42	290

Engine (displacement in liter)	Tire designation	Tire pressure front				Tire pressure rear			
		normal load condition (up to 2 occupants)		full load condition		normal load condition (up to 2 occupants)		full load condition	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
6-cylinder 3.2	**215/55 R16 93H All Season**	35	240	38	260	30	210	38	260
	235/45 R17 94H All Season	35	240	38	260	30	210	38	260
	235/45 R17 94Y High Performance	30	210	33	230	30	210	33	230
	235/40 R18 95Y XL High Performance	41	280	46	320	41	280	46	320

XL = reinforced or extra load tire. It may also appear as **xl**, **EXTRA LOAD**, or **RF** on the tire sidewall.

The correct tire pressure for the *spare wheel* is located on a label either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

Because technical changes may be made to vehicle equipment during the model year, always compare the tire size designation on the tire pressure label on your vehicle with the tires on your vehicle. Make sure that the tire size information on the vehicle label is the same as the size of the tires on the vehicle. This is especially important if the vehicle belongs to someone else or you bought the vehicle with different rims/tires or you bought the vehicle as a previously owned vehicle.

Remember, your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR"). The Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located either on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label on your Audi lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the tire pressure label ⇒ *page 271,* fig. 207.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of a loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead to a serious or fatal accident.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.** ■

Checking tire pressure

The correct tire pressure for the tires originally installed on your vehicle is listed on the tire pressure label located either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

The recommended tire pressures are on the tire pressure label and in the table ⇒ *page 271,* "Cold tire inflation pressure". This means that the pressure must be checked and adjusted when the tire has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds during the previous three hours. Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up as a result of internal friction as it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold."

It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "Cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations ⇒ *page 271*. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

The tire pressure label on your Audi lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the new, original equipment tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For the location of the label ⇒ *page 271,* fig. 207.

Most tires lose air naturally over time. They can also lose some air if you drive over a pothole or hit a curb while parking. It is usually not possible to see whether the radial tires used today are underinflated just by looking at them.

Therefore, be sure to check tire pressures at least once a month and always before going on a long trip. Make sure to take the number of people and the amount of luggage into account when adjusting tire pressure for a trip – even one that you would not consider to be "long." See ⇒ *page 275,* "Tires and vehicle load limits" for more important information.

Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking and adjusting inflation pressures. Check all of the tires and be sure not to forget the spare tire. If the pressure in any tire is too high when the tire is "cold," let air out of the tire slowly with the edge of the tire gauge and keep checking the pressure until you reach the pressure that is correct for the load (passengers and luggage) and kind of driving you plan to do.

If the pressure in any tire is too low, note the difference between the pressure in the cold tire and the pressure you need and add the air that you need to reach the correct pressure for the vehicle load (passengers and luggage) for the tires on your vehicle as listed on the on your vehicle and in this manual and the kind of driving you plan to do.

Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.

Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle.

It is important to check the tire pressure when the tires are cold.

- Read the required tire pressure from the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.
- Turn the valve stem cap counter-clockwise to remove it from the tire valve.
- Place the air pressure gauge on the valve.

▶

- The tire pressures should only be checked and adjusted when the tires are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tires must not be reduced.
- Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying.
- Reinstall the valve stem cap on the valve.

When should I check the tire pressure?

The correct tire pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and always before starting a journey. Do not forget to check the tire pressure for the spare wheel ⇒ *page 291*.

When should I adjust the tire pressures?

Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying. After changing a wheel **or** replacing wheels you have to adjust the tire pressures on all wheels. In addition, on vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system* you must then store the new tire pressures in the system ⇒ *page 41*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury or even death.

- **When the warning symbol (!) appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.**
- **Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.**
- **The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The applicable pressure values are located on a sticker on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Only when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct pressure, the tire pressure monitoring system* can work correctly.**
- **The use of incorrect tire pressure values can lead to accidents or other damage. Therefore it is essential that the driver observe the specified tire pressure values for the tires and the correct pressures for the function of the tire pressure monitoring system*.**
- **Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.**
- **Driving with underinflated tires bend more, letting them get too hot resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.**
- **If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.**

Note

Driving without valve stem caps can cause damage to the tire valves. To prevent this, always make sure that factory installed valve stem caps on all wheels are securely mounted on the valve.

For the sake of the environment

Underinflated tires will also increase the fuel consumption. ■

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well ▶

and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located either on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap. Your Audi has 4 seating positions, 2 in the front and 2 in the rear for total seating capacity of 4. Each seating position has a safety belt ⇒ *page 159,* "Safety belts".

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The tire pressure label on your Audi also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the label ⇒ *page 271,* fig. 207.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.** ■

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded. ▶

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS"on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇒ *page 271,* fig. 207.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇒ *page 271,* fig. 207.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

– Check the tire sidewall (⇒ *page 279,* fig. 211) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire. ■

Tire service life

The service life of tires depends on a lot of different things including proper installation and balancing, correct tire pressure and driving style.

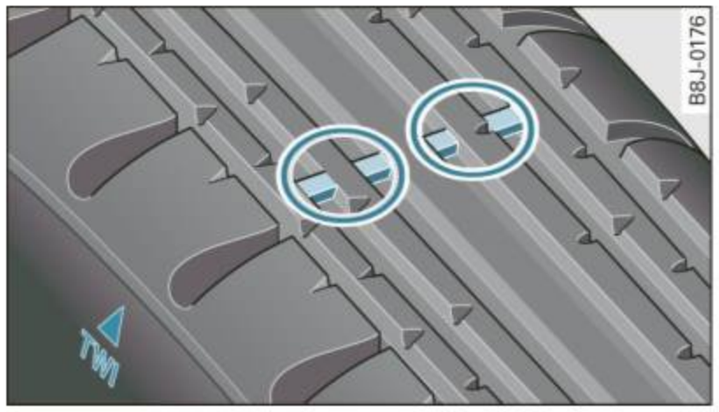


Fig. 209 Tire tread: tread wear indicators (TWI)

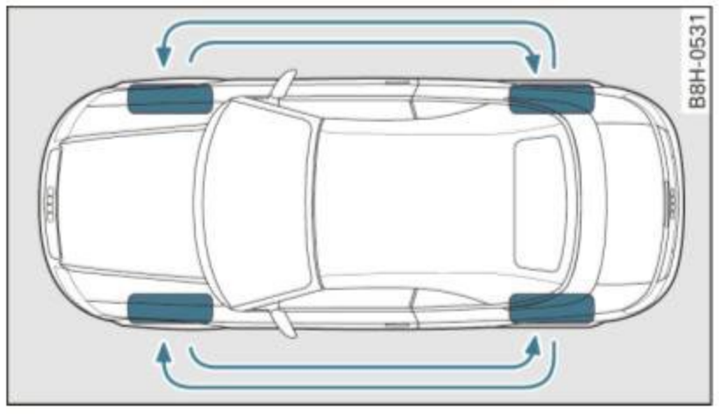


Fig. 210 Rotating tires for more even wear

Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high "wear indicators" ⇒ fig. 209 running across the tread. Depending on the make, there will be six to eight of them evenly placed around the tire. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. Worn tires must be replaced. Different figures may apply in other countries ⇒ ⚠.

Tire pressure

Incorrect tire pressure causes premature wear and can cause sudden tire blow-out. For this reason, tire pressure must be checked at least once a month ⇒ *page 274*.

Driving style

Driving fast around curves, heavy acceleration and hard braking increase tire wear.

Rotating tires for more even wear

For all four tires on your vehicle to have the same service life, we recommend that the front and rear tires are rotated according to the tire manufacturer's suggested tire rotation intervals. Please remember the following:

- Tire rotation intervals may differ from the vehicle service intervals outlined in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet.
- The longer one tire is used in one location on the vehicle, the more it wears at certain points; therefore, we recommend that you follow the tire manufacturer's suggested tire rotation intervals.
- Vehicles with front-wheel drive experience more tread wear on the front wheels compared to all-wheel drive (quattro®).
- Please rotate tires as shown ⇒ *page 278,* fig. 210.
- Extra care must be taken when rotating direction-specific tires ⇒ *page 298*.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various situations during everyday driving can cause them to become unbalanced, resulting in vibrations you can usually feel through the steering wheel.

Unbalanced wheels must be rebalanced to avoid excessive wear on steering, suspension and tires. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tire is installed.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment can cause excessive tire wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tires show excessive wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

All Wheel Drive

Vehicles with quattro® must always have tires of the same size, construction and tread type. For details see ⇒ *page 218*.

⚠ WARNING

Sudden tire failure can lead to loss of control, a crash and serious personal injury!

- **Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to the wear indicators.**
- **Especially in wet and slick driving situations, a preferably large profile depth of the tires is necessary, and an approximately similar profile depth of the front and rear axle tires.**
- **The diminished driving safety, caused by too small of a tire profile, is negatively perceivable especially in handling, in danger of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles and ponds, when driving around curves, and in braking behavior.**
- **Worn tires are a safety hazard, they do not grip well on wet roads and increase your risk of "hydroplaning" and loss of control.**
- **Always keep chemicals that can cause tire damage, such as grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid away from tires.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.** ■

New tires and replacing tires and wheels

New tires and wheels have to be broken in.

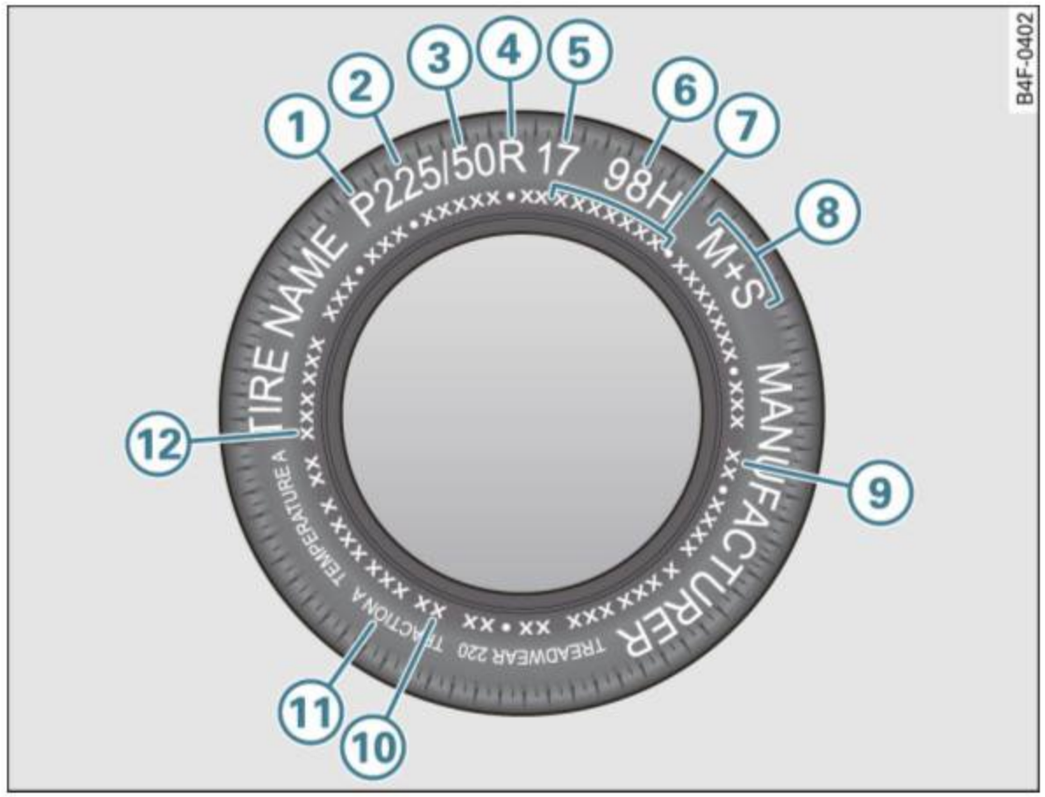


Fig. 211 Tire specification codes on the sidewall of a tire

No.	Description
①	Passenger car tire (where applicable)
②	Nominal width of tire in millimeters
③	Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
④	Radial
⑤	Rim diameter code
⑥	Load index and speed rating

⑦	U.S. DOT tire identification number
⑧	Sever snow conditions
⑨	Tire ply composition and materials used
⑩	Maximum load rating
⑪	Treadwear, traction and temperature grades
⑫	Maximum permissible inflation pressure

The tires and rims are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and rims approved by Audi are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and can make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated ⇒ ⚠.

We recommend that all work on tires and wheels be performed by an authorized Audi dealer. They are familiar with recommended procedures and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tires.

Authorized Audi dealers have the necessary information about technical requirements for installing or changing tires and rims.

Replacing tires and wheels

Tires should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (for example both front tires or both rear tires together).

On vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system*, be sure to read and heed the information ⇒ *page 281*.

Always buy replacement radial tires that have the same specifications as the tires approved for your vehicle by Audi. Replacement tires must always have the same load rating specification as the original equipment or approved optional tires listed in the table ⇒ *page 271*.

Audi-approved specification tires are specially matched to your vehicle and its load limits, and can contribute to the important road-holding, driving characteristics, and safety of the vehicle. The table (⇒ *page 271*) lists specifications of the tires approved for the Audi models covered by your Owner's Literature.

The tire pressure label located either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap (⇒ *page 271*, fig. 208) lists the specifications of the original equipment tires installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires ⇒ *page 279*, fig. 211. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics, the quality grade of the tire and also provides a tire identification number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Tire specifications

Knowledge of tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct tires. Radial tires have the tire specifications marked on the sidewall, for example:

P235 / 45 R 18 95 Y

This contains the following information:

P Indicates the tire is for passenger cars (where applicable)

235 Nominal tire width in mm of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire

45 Height/width ratio in percent (aspect ratio)

R Tire construction: **R**adial

18 Rim diameter code (in inches)

95 Load rating code

Y Speed rating letter code

XL (or "xl", "EXTRA LOAD" or "RF") indicates that the tire is a "Reinforced" or an "Extra Load" tire

M+S (or "M/S") Indicates that the tire has some mud and snow capability

The tires could also have the information of direction of rotation ⇒ *page 267*.

Tire manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tire sidewall (possibly only on the *inner* side of the wheel):

"DOT ... 2209... " means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22th week of 2009.

Speed rating (letter code)

The speed rating letter code on the wheels indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇒ ⚠ in "Winter tires" on *page 284*.

P up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q up to 99 mph (158 km/h)
R up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[3)]
Z over 149 mph (240 km/h)[3)]
W up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[3)]
Y up to 186 mph (298 km/h)[3)]

Your vehicle is normally factory equipped with tires, which possess excellent driving characteristics and give your Audi optimum driving comfort. An electronic speed limiter ⇒ *page 28* will normally prevent your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating ⇒ ⚠.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) and tire manufacture date

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 2209 mean that the tire was produced in the 22th week of 2009. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire ply composition and materials used

The number of plies indicates the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. In general, the greater the number of plies, the more weight a tire can support. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

Maximum Load Rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

Tire quality grading for treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature grades ⇒ *page 283*.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

Replacing tires or rims on vehicles equipped with tire pressure monitoring system*

The wheels on your vehicle are equipped with a sensor which constantly monitors the air pressure inside the tire, and then transmits this information to the tire pressure monitoring system*. If you are going to replace the wheel rims on your vehicle, make sure the new rims also have these sensors. The sensors must be compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system* on your vehicle.

If you install rims, which do not have the sensors, or have sensors which are not compatible, then the tire pressure monitoring system* will not work properly. In this case, the tire pressure moni- ▶

[3)] For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters "ZR."

toring system* would not be able to monitor the tire pressure or warn you if it is necessary.

- The battery inside of the tire pressure sensor has a limited service life.
- Always drive with the valve stem caps securely mounted. We recommend using factory installed valve stem caps. Ask your authorized Audi dealer to replace lost valve stem caps.

The installation of replacement tires with steel cord body plies in the tire sidewall may cause malfunction of the tire pressure monitoring system, and is not recommended (cord material information in molded on the tire sidewall).

Always check your tire pressure monitoring system* indicator after replacing one or more tires on your vehicle. If the tire pressure monitoring system* indicator flashes, or is on, your system is not working properly. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system*, or some component of the tire pressure monitoring system* may be damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **Using incorrect or unmatched tires and / or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.**
- **Always use tires, rims and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.**
- **If the spare tire is not the same as the tires that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tires - only use the spare tire for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as safely possible.**
- **Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.**
- **Overloading tires cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.**
- **Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.**
- **For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles – in some cases not even wheels from the same vehicle model.**
- **If you install wheel trim discs on the vehicle wheels, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not blocked. Reduced airflow to the brakes can them to overheat, increasing stopping distances and causing a collision.**
- **Run flat tires may only be used on vehicles that were equipped with them at the factory. The vehicle must have a chassis designed for run flat tires and a factory-installed tire pressure monitoring system that indicates a loss of tire pressure. Incorrect use of run flat tires can lead to vehicle damage or accidents. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or tire specialist to see if your vehicle can be equipped with run flat tires. If run flat tires are used, they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tire types is not permitted.**

Note

- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheel rims from other vehicles. This can hold true for wheels of the same vehicle type.
- If the spare tire is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wide profile tires), then use the spare tire for a short period of time only and drive with extra care. Replace the flat tire with the tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.
- If you should put different wheels and tires on your vehicle (e.g. winter wheels and tires), you must be certain that the wheels and tires are compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system. Otherwise the system will register a malfunction and a fault message will be displayed. For more information, contact your Audi dealer.

Note

- When installing new tires, be careful not to damage the valves or tire pressure monitoring system* sensors.
- Never drive without the valve stem cap. The valves could get damaged.
- If the sensors must be replaced, then the valve must also be replaced at the same time.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of old tires in accordance with the local requirements. ■

Uniform tire quality grading

- Tread wear
- Traction AA A B C
- Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇒ *page 279,* fig. 211.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇒ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇒ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle ▶

Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ■

Winter tires

Winter tires can improve vehicle handling on snow and ice. At temperatures below 45 °F (7 °C) we recommend changing to winter tires.

In some heavy snow areas, local governments may require true winter or "snow" tires, those with very deeply cut tread. These tires should only be used in pairs and be installed on all four wheels. Make sure you purchase snow tires that are the same size and construction type as the other tires on your vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with all-wheel drive*, this will improve traction during winter driving, even with the standard tires. However, we strongly recommend that you always equip all four wheels on your vehicle with correctly fitted winter tires or all-season tires, when winter road conditions are expected. This also improves the vehicle's braking performance and reduces stopping distances.

Summer tires provide less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tires (snow tires) must always be fitted on all four wheels.

If your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system*, compatible tire pressure monitoring sensors must be installed on all four winter tires for the system to function properly ⇒ *page 281*.

Ask your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop for permitted **winter tire sizes**. Use only radial winter tires.

Winter tires lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm).

Only drive with winter tires under winter conditions. Summer tires handle better when there is no snow or ice on the roads and the temperature is above 45 °F (7 °C).

If you have a flat tire, see notes on spare wheel ⇒ *page 279*.

Please always remember that winter tires may have a lower speed rating than the tires originally installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. Please see ⇒ *page 281*, "Speed rating (letter code)" for a listing of the speed rating letter codes and the maximum speed at which the tires can be driven.

The speed rating letter code (⇒ *page 270*) is on the side wall of the tire ⇒ *page 279*.

WARNING

Winter tires have maximum speed limits that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed. Always know the maximum speed before driving off. Never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific winter tires. This will cause damage to the tires leading to an accident and serious personal injury to you and your passengers.

WARNING

Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle were designed can cause tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation, loss of control, crashes and serious

⚠ WARNING (continued)

personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.

- **Winter tires have maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.**
- **Never drive faster than the speed for which the winter or other tires installed on your vehicle are rated.**

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Never let the good acceleration of the winter tires and all-wheel drive tempt you into taking extra risks. Always remember:

- **When braking, an all-wheel drive vehicle handles in the same way as a front drive vehicle.**
- **Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy and slippery roads, even winter tires cannot help under black ice conditions.**

For the sake of the environment

Use summer tires when weather conditions permit. They are quieter, do not wear as quickly and reduce fuel consumption. ■

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the front wheels, and only to certain tire sizes. Ask your authorized Audi dealer on which tire sizes snow chains can be used.

If you are going to use snow chains, then you must install them on the front wheels at least.

The snow chains must have low-profile links and must not be thicker than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm), including the lock.

Remove wheel center covers and trim discs before putting snow chains on your vehicle ⇒ (!). For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Audi dealers.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong snow chains for your vehicle or installing them incorrectly can increase the risk of loss of control leading to serious personal injury.

- **Snow chains are available in different sizes. Always make sure to follow the instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **When driving with snow chains never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific snow chains.**
- **Always observe local regulations.**

(!) Note

- Remove snow chains before driving on roads not covered with snow to avoid damaging tires and wearing the snow chains down unnecessarily.
- Snow chains, which come into direct contact with the wheel rim, can scratch or damage it. Therefore, make sure that the snow chains are suitably covered. Check the position of the snow chains after driving a few yards and correct if necessary. Follow the instructions from the snow chain manufacturer when doing so.

Tips

Where snow chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with All Wheel Drive. ■

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened to the correct torque.

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the factory installed rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different vehicle – even if it is the same model ⇒ *page 318*.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened or maintained wheel bolts can become loose causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury.

- **Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs clean so the wheel bolts can turn easily and be properly tightened.**
- **Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. They can become loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the specified torque.**
- **Only use wheel bolts that belong to the rim being installed.**
- **Never use different wheels bolts on your vehicle.**
- **Always maintain the correct tightening torque for the wheel bolts to reduce the risk of a wheel loss. If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they can loosen and come out when the vehicle is moving. If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged and the wheel can become loose.**

Note

The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 90 ft lb (120 Nm) with a tolerance of ± 7,4 ft lb (± 10 Nm). Torque wheel bolts diagonally. After changing a wheel, the torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench – preferably by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. ■

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇒ *page 274,* "Checking tire pressure".

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

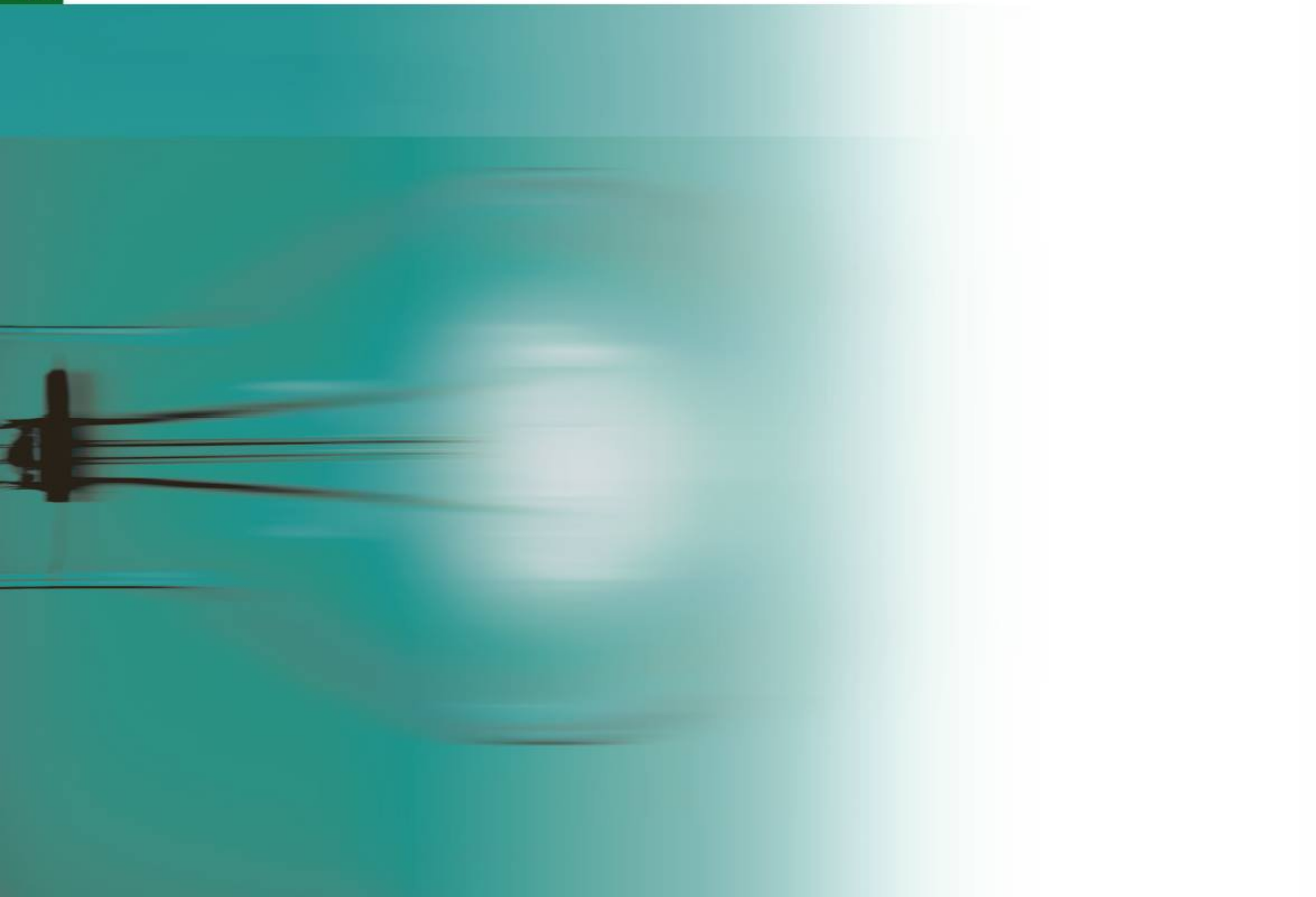
- Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
- Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.

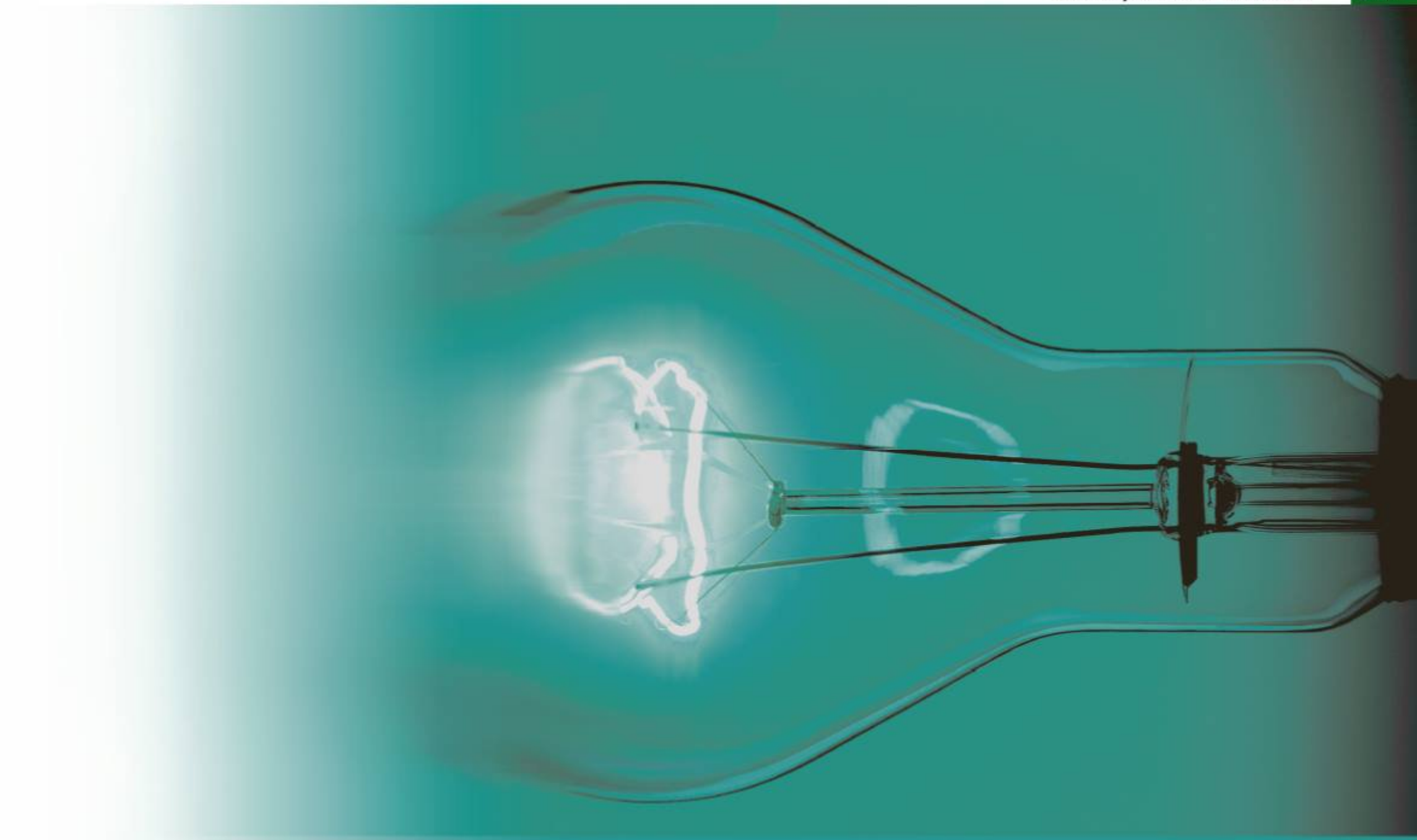
- After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
- Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
- These tires may wear more quickly than others.
- Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇒ *page 284* for more detailed information regarding winter tires. ■





What do I do now?

Trunk escape handle

In case of an emergency, the rear lid can be opened from the inside using the trunk escape handle.

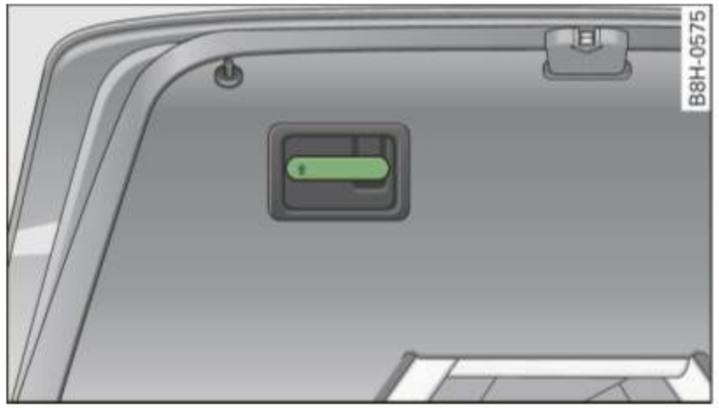


Fig. 212 Rear lid: trunk escape handle

To open rear lid

– Pull the handle ⇒ fig. 212 down towards the bumper.

The trunk escape handle inside the rear lid is made of fluorescent material to glow in the dark.

WARNING

The trunk escape handle is to be used only in an emergency.

Tips

The emergency release lever should *never* be used as a handle for closing the rear lid. ■

Jack, tools and spare wheel

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Jack and tools

The tools and jack are stored underneath the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

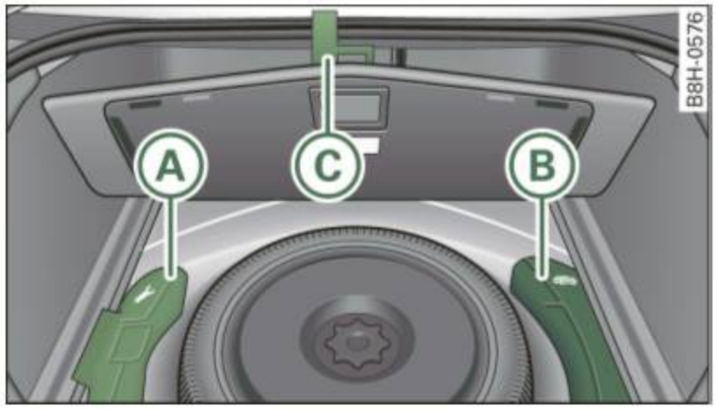


Fig. 213 Tool case and vehicle jack

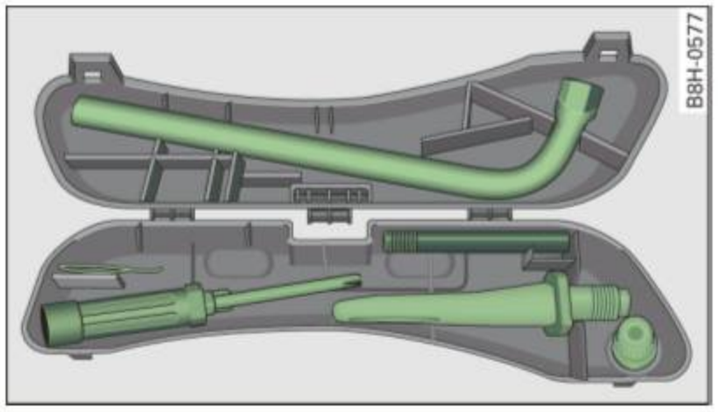


Fig. 214 Open tool case

The tool case (A) and the vehicle jack (B) are stored underneath the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 213.

– For access, raise the floor panel at the plastic handle (C). ▶

– Securely engage the handle in the luggage compartment seal as illustrated to keep the floor panel up.
– Take out tool case and/or jack.
– Disengage and lower the floor panel before you close the luggage compartment lid again.

The onboard tool kit includes:

- Hook for removing wheel covers*
- Plastic hook to remove wheel bolt covers
- Wheel bolt wrench
- Alignment pin for changing wheels
- Screwdriver with reversible blade
- Towing eye

Before storing the jack, make sure it is wound back down as far as it will go.

After use, the jack and tools must be put back in place underneath the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Note: some of the onboard items listed above are provided on certain models only or are optional extras.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

- **Using a bumper jack to raise the vehicle will damage the bumper system. The jack may slip, causing injury.**
- **Never support your vehicle on cinder blocks, bricks or other objects. These may not be able to support the load and could cause injury when they fail.**
- **Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you must work under the vehicle, always use safety stands specifically designed for this purpose.**
- **Never try and use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.**
- **Always make sure the spare tire and even a flat tire are secured in place and not loose, otherwise they could fly forward, causing personal injury to passengers in the vehicle in an accident or sudden maneuver.**
- **Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with a regular spare wheel

Spare wheel

The spare wheel is stored in the wheel well underneath the floor panel in the luggage compartment.



Fig. 215 Luggage compartment: spare wheel

Your vehicle is equipped with a **regular spare wheel**. It is held in place by plastic retaining knurled screw. ▶

Taking out the spare wheel

– Raise the floor panel at the plastic handle.

– Securely engage the handle in the luggage compartment seal as illustrated to keep the floor panel up.

– Unscrew the knurled retainer bolt in the wheel center ⇒ *page 291,* fig. 215. Turn it counter-clockwise.

– Take out the spare wheel.

– Disengage and lower the floor panel before you close the luggage compartment lid again.

Storing the replaced wheel

– Place the replaced wheel inside the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment.

– Tighten the knurled retaining screw clockwise to secure the wheel in place.

– Disengage and lower the floor panel before you close the luggage compartment lid again.

⚠ WARNING

Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident.

- **Never store the spare wheel or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.**
- **Always store all jacking equipment, tools, and the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.**
- **Tighten the knurled retaining screw for the spare wheel securely.**

Tips

Check the inflation pressure of the spare tire periodically to keep the tire ready for use. ■

Applies to vehicles: with a space-saving spare wheel

Space-saving spare wheel

The compact spare wheel is only intended to be used for a short time.

Using the space-saving spare wheel

The space-saving spare wheel is only intended for emergencies until you can reach a repair shop. Replace it as quickly as possible with a normal wheel.

There are some restrictions on the use of the space-saving spare wheel ⇒ ⚠. The space-saving spare wheel has been developed especially for your type of vehicle. It must not be exchanged for the space-saving spare wheel from another type of vehicle.

Normal summer or winter tires must not be fitted on the space-saving spare wheel rim.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the space-saving spare wheel **not permitted**.

If you do have to drive with snow chains and have a tire failure on a *front wheel*, install the space-saving spare wheel in place of a rear wheel. Install the snow chains on the rear wheel and use it to replace the defective front wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- **After installing the space-saving spare wheel, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure must be adapted to the load condition of the vehicle according to the tire** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

pressure table - risk of accident! Use the highest tire pressure in the table.

- **Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) - risk of accident!**
- **Avoid full-throttle acceleration, sharp braking, and fast cornering - risk of accident!**
- **Never drive using more than one space-saving spare wheel - risk of accident!**
- **Normal summer or winter tires must not be fitted on the space-saving spare wheel rim. ■**

Wheel change

Before changing a wheel

Follow these points for your own and your passenger's safety when replacing a wheel.

– After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇒ ⚠.

– All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇒ ⚠.

– Apply the **parking brake** firmly ⇒ ⚠.

– Move **selector lever to position P** on an automatic transmission; put manual transmission in **first gear** ⇒ ⚠.

– If you are towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.

– Take the **tool case** and the **spare tire** ⇒ *page 290* out of the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

- **If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.**
- **Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the roadway and traffic.**
- **To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in "P" (Park), or engaging a gear in a manual transmission will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.**
- **Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.**
- **After installing the spare wheel, make sure that you remount the flat tire/wheel in its storage area properly and tighten the knurled retaining screw securely. ■**

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and exactly in that order.

1. Remove the **decorative wheel cover***. For more details see also ⇒ *page 294,* "Decorative wheel covers" or ⇒ *page 295,* "Wheels with cap-covered wheel bolts".
2. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇒ *page 295*.
3. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇒ *page 296*.
4. **Lift** the car with the jack ⇒ *page 296*. ▶

5. Take the **flat wheel off** and then put **the spare on** ⇒ *page 297*.
6. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
7. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
8. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇒ *page 295*.
9. Put the decorative **wheel cover*** back on.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and head all WARNINGS and information ⇒ ⚠ in "Raising the vehicle" on *page 296* and ⇒ *page 298*. ■

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the following actions.

– **Store and secure** the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well.

– Put the tool case and the jack back in place in the luggage compartment.

– Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.

– As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lb (120 Nm).

– Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

- If you notice while changing a tire that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, then they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
- Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked. ■

Applies to vehicles: with decorative wheel covers

Decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.



Fig. 216 Wheel change: removing the wheel cover

Removing

– Insert the **hook** provided with the onboard tool kit into the hole on the center hub piece.

– Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇒ fig. 216. ■

Applies to vehicles: with cap-covered wheel bolts

Wheels with cap-covered wheel bolts

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.

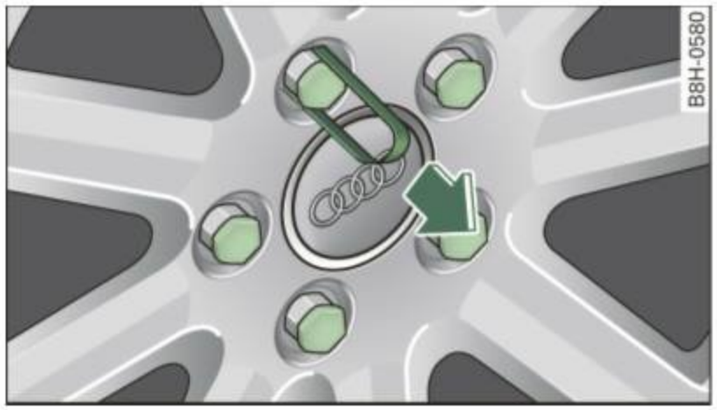


Fig. 217 Wheel change: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

– Push the **plastic clip** provided with the onboard tool kit down over the wheel bolt cap until it engages.

– Pull on the properly engaged **plastic clip** to extract the cap ⇒ fig. 217.

Refitting

– Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back in.

The caps are there to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean. ■

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.

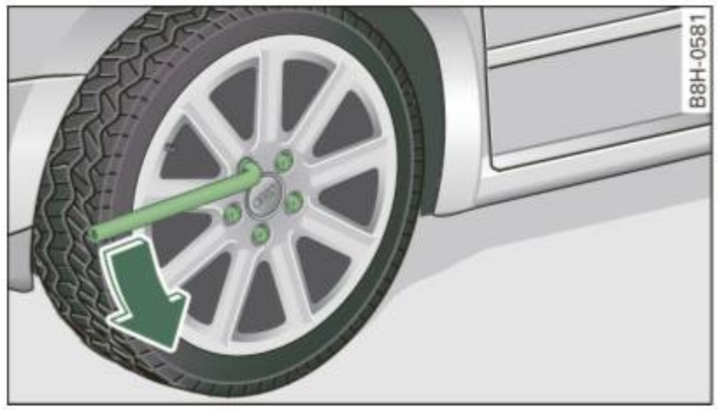


Fig. 218 Wheel change: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

– Fit the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.

– Close your grip around the *end* of the wrench handle for maximum torque and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 218.

Tightening

– Fit the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.

– Close your grip around the *end* of the wrench handle for maximum torque and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it sits tight. ▶

⚠ WARNING

- **Using force without control to speed the wheel change up can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.**
- ***Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - Risk of injury!**

ⓘ Tips

- Never try and use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
- If a wheel bolt sits very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do, hold on to the car to keep yourself stable and take care not to slip. ■

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

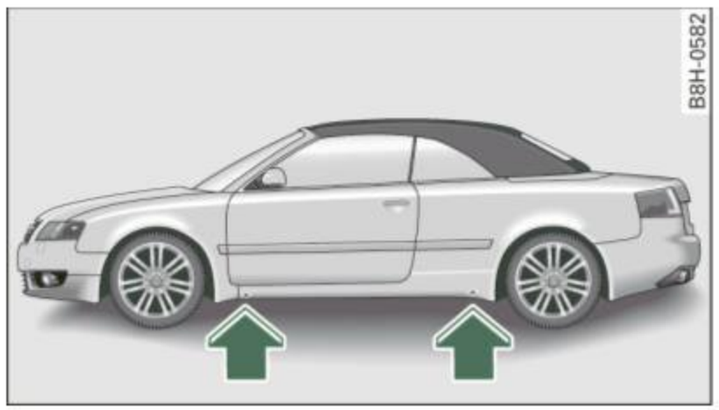


Fig. 219 Wheel change: mounting points for the lifting jack

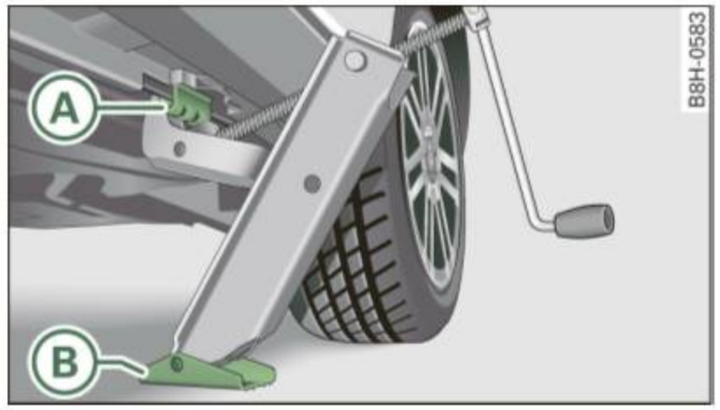


Fig. 220 Close-up: proper positioning of lifting jack

– Position the jack below the door sill under the **mounting point** that is closest to the wheel to be changed ⇒ fig. 219.

– Turn the **jack handle** clockwise until the jack arm just fits underneath the rib running along the underbody ⇒ ⚠.

– Align the jack so that the jack arm claw ⇒ fig. 220 Ⓐ fits snugly around the underbody rib and the movable base plate Ⓑ sits flat on the ground.

– Wind the jack up further until the flat wheel comes off the ground ⇒ ⚠.

Recesses at the front and rear of the underbody rib mark the proper mounting locations for the jack ⇒ fig. 219. There is *only one* designated jack mounting point for each wheel. *Do not* apply the jack anywhere else ⇒ ⚠.

The jack should be positioned approximately 6 in. (15 cm) behind the front wheel or 10 in. (25 cm) in front of the rear wheel.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow safety precautions:**
  - **Mounting the jack under the vehicle at any other place than indicated above may damage the vehicle or may result in personal injuries.**
  - **A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.**
  - **On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.**
- **To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:**
  - **Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.**
  - **Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.**
  - **Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the roadway and traffic.**
  - **Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.** ■

Taking the wheel off/putting the spare on

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel



Fig. 221 Wheel change: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts



Fig. 222 Wheel change: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and jacked the vehicle off the ground, perform the following steps to remove and replace the wheel:

Removing the wheel

– Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely turn out the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇒ fig. 221. ▶

– Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the now vacant bolt hole ⇒ *page 297,* fig. 222.

– Then completely unscrew the other wheel bolts as described above.

– Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole.

Putting on the spare

– Lift the spare wheel up and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place.

– Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.

– Unscrew the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.

– Turn the handle on the jack counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.

– Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇒ *page 295*. Tighten *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

Tips

Never try and use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

- Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.
- When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇒ *page 298*.
- The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel. ■

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

- The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
- If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction in the event of a flat tire, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
- We recommend that particular attention be paid to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
- Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a properly pointed direction-dependent tire. ■

Notes on wheel change

Please read the information ⇒ *page 279,* “New tires and replacing tires and wheels”, if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire: ▶

- **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after mounting.**
- **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
- **On steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened with a torque of 90 ft lb (120 Nm).**
- **If you notice while changing a tire that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
- **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

- **If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇒ *page 279,* "New tires and replacing tires and wheels".**
- **Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.**
- **In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.**
- **Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.**

Note

Do not use commercially available tire sealants. Otherwise, the electrical components of the tire pressure monitoring system* will no longer work properly and the sensor for the tire pressure monitoring system will have to be replaced by a qualified workshop. ■

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing a fuse

A problem in the electrical system may be caused by a blown fuse.

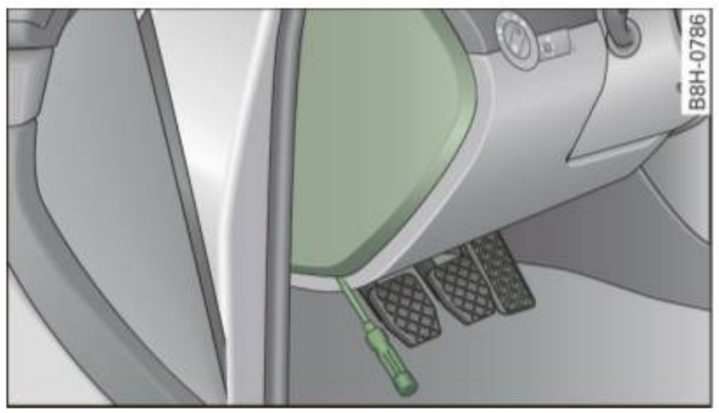


Fig. 223 End face of instrument panel: removing cover plate to access fuses

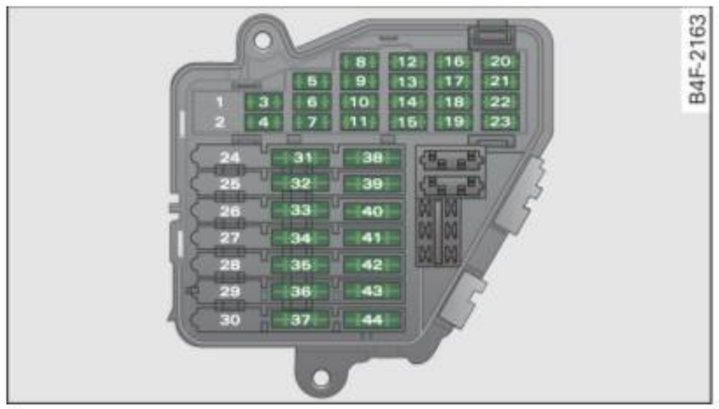


Fig. 224 Schematic image of exposed fuse box as located on the left end face of dash panel

– Switch off the ignition and the electrical component affected.

– Carefully pry the face cover off the instrument panel using the ignition key or a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 223.

– Check the fuse listing on the next pages to find out which fuse belongs to the component which has failed ⇒ *page 301*, "Fuse list".

– Remove the blown fuse with the plastic clip provided. The clip is located on the holder in the fuse box.

– Replace a blown fuse (recognizable by the melted metal strip inside) with a fuse of the *same* amperage.

– Firmly snap the cover back onto the instrument panel face.

The various electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are clustered in a centralized unit. The unit is located behind the face panel at the end of the instrument panel.

Two spare fuses and a sticker identifying the fuses are located on the inside of the fuse box cover.

WARNING

Never replace a fuse with one that has a higher amperage rating.

- **A fuse with a too high amperage could damage the electrical part and cause a fire.**

Note

- On no account should fuses be repaired (e.g. patched up with tin foil or wire) as this may cause serious damage elsewhere in the electrical circuit or cause fire.
- If a fuse blows repeatedly, do not keep replacing it. Instead, have the cause for the repeated short circuit or overload tracked and fixed.

Tips

You are well advised to keep a supply of spare fuses in your vehicle. Fuses with the proper ampere ratings are available at your Audi dealer. ■

Fuse list

Fuses which can be replaced.

No.	Equipment	Amps
1	Air conditioner	10
2	Footwell illumination	5
3	Heated washer jets	5
4	Radiator fan	5
5	Telephone, oil level sensor, multifunction switch, rear heated seat, shift gate	10
6	Air conditioner (air quality sensor), air pressure sensor	5
7	Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP), brake light switch, clutch pedal switch, steering angle sensor	10
8	Telephone	5
9	Brake booster (vacuum pump)	15
10	Automatic headlight beam adjustment, automatic headlight range control, right	5
11	Airbag control unit, front passenger seat recognition USA (bladder mat)	10
12	Diagnosis socket	10
13	Steering column module	10
14	Brake lights	10
15	Instrument cluster, Navigation system	10
16	Garage door opener	5
17	Level, tire pressure control, park assist, light/rain sensor	10
18	Automatic headlight range control, left	5
19	Fog lights	15
20	Vacant	
21	Vacant	
22	Doors	15
23	Vacant	
24	Central convenience electrical system	20
25	Heater blower	30
26	Rear window defogger	30
27	Socket for trailer towing (controller)	30
28	Fuel pump	20
29	Vacant	
30	Power top control unit	30
31	Automatic transmission, mirror dimming, diagnosis socket	15
32	Towing assembly	15
33	Cigarette lighter	20
34	Electrical socket	20
35	Luggage compartment socket	20
36	Windshield wiper system	30
37	Pump for windshield and headlight washer* system	30

No.	Equipment	Amps
38	Central electric, anti-theft alarm system, rear lid/trunk release	15
39	Radio	20
40	Horn	25
41	Vacant	
42	Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)	25
43	Engine timing	15
44	Seat heating	35

Automatic circuit breakers:

The electric power windows and the electric seat adjusters are protected with circuit breakers which reset automatically after the circuit overload has been corrected.

Tips

- Whenever replacing a fuse, always consult the sticker on the inside of the fuse panel cover. It contains the most up-to-date information regarding the fuse arrangement. If in doubt, ask your authorized Audi Service advisor.
- Some of the equipment items listed are optional or only available on certain model configurations. ■

Bulbs

Replacing light bulbs

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace burned out bulbs for you.

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, and parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

Gas discharge lamps (xenon lights)*:

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with xenon light can be identified by the high voltage sticker.

WARNING

Contact with high-voltage components of the electrical system and improper replacement of gas discharge (Xenon) headlight bulbs can cause serious personal injury and death.

- **Xenon bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed.**
- **Changing Xenon lamps requires the special training, instructions and equipment.**
- **Only an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps.**

WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**

Tips

- If you must replace the light bulbs yourself, always remember that the engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area to work in. Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 242,* "Engine compartment" ⇒ ⚠.
- It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you need to change a bulb. ■

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations. ■

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing. ■

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large**cross section** to safely carry the starter current. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *isolated* terminal clamps and properly marked for distinction:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black** .

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- **Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.**
- **A discharged battery can already freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, the frozen battery must be thawed completely, otherwise it could explode.**
- **Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.**
- **Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.**
- **Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.**
- **Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.**
- **The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.**
- **Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.**
- **Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 242*, "Engine compartment".**

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected.

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. ■

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!

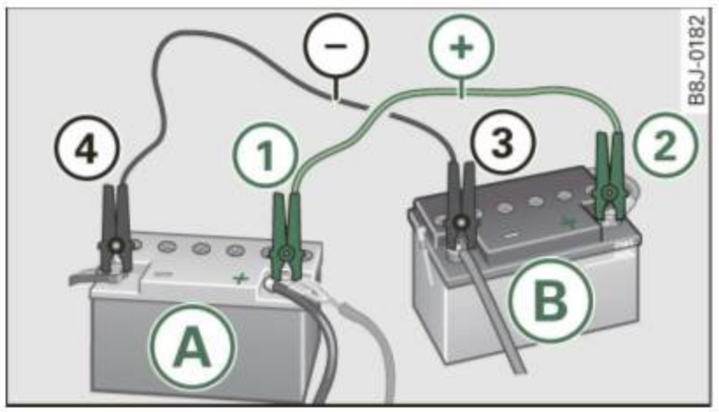


Fig. 225 Jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle: A – discharged vehicle battery, B – booster battery

Vehicle with discharged battery:

– Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to **N** (Neutral) or **P** (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

1. Connect clamp of plus cable to positive (+) terminal (1) ⇒ fig. 225 of discharged vehicle battery (A).
2. Connect clamp on opposite end of cable to positive (+) terminal (2) of booster battery (B).

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect clamp of minus cable (black) to negative (–) terminal (3) of booster battery (B).
4. Connect clamp on opposite end of negative cable to the negative (–) terminal (4) of the discharged vehicle battery (A).

– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.

Starting the engine

– Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery. Run the engine at a moderate speed.

– Start engine with discharged vehicle battery in the usual manner.

– If the engine fails to start: do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again. ▶

– With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in exact *reverse* order.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior.

Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their *metal parts in full contact* with the battery terminals.

WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

- **Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.**
- **When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 242,* "Engine compartment".**

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

- Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) terminal.
- Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
- Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the minus (–) cable to the minus (–) terminal on the discharged battery (4) ⇒ *page 305,* fig. 225. Instead, securely connect the minus (–) cable to either a massive metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode! ■

Emergency towing with commercial tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

- **Never tow your Audi, towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
- **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
- **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a car carrier (flat bed truck).**
- **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage ⇒ *page 307* and ⇒ *page 307*.**

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason. ■

Front towing loop

Do not install the front towing loop until it is needed.



Fig. 226 Front bumper: removing the cover cap

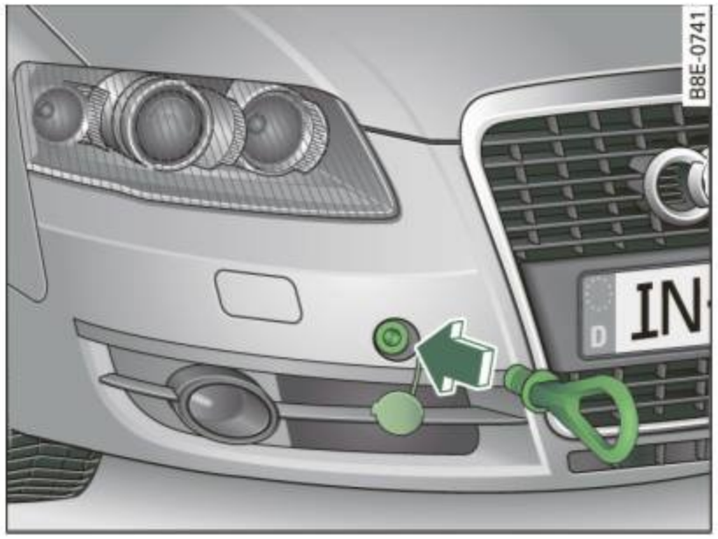


Fig. 227 Front bumper: screwing in the towing loop

The towing loop fits into the threaded hole located on the right side of the front bumper and covered by a small cap when not in use.

– Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tools ⇒ *page 290*.
– Press on the *bottom* edge of the cover cap to disengage it from the bumper. The cap remains connected to the bumper ⇒ fig. 226.
– Screw the towing loop into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇒ fig. 227, then tighten it with the wheel bolt wrench.

When it is no longer needed, unscrew the towing loop and put it back into the onboard toolkit. Make sure to have the towing loop stored in the vehicle at all times.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident. ■

Rear towing loop

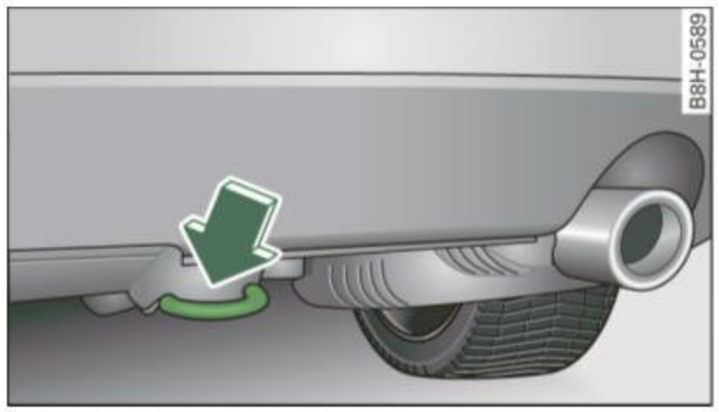


Fig. 228 Rear bumper, right side: location of rear towing loop

The rear towing eye is welded to the chassis under the rear bumper on the right side. ■

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck

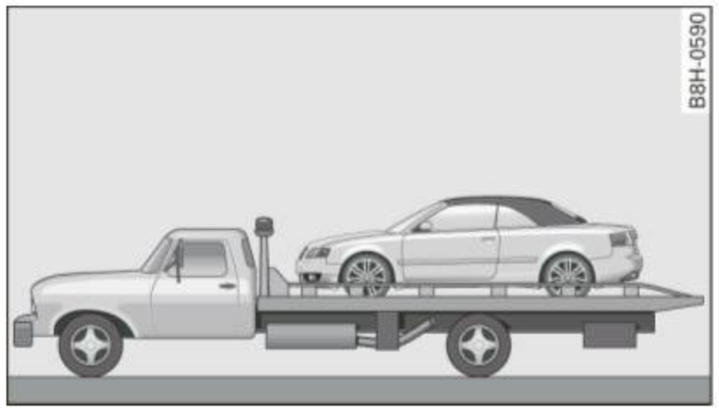


Fig. 229 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

– Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.

– Attach the winch hook to the front towing loop previously installed.

Rear hook up

– Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.

– Attach the winch hook to the rear towing loop previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp. ■

Lifting vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

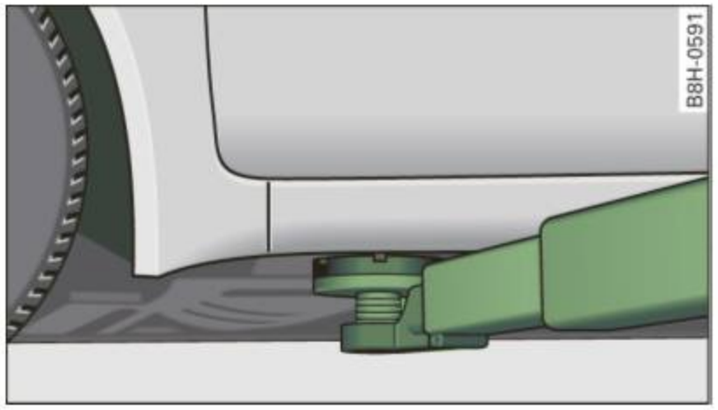


Fig. 230 Front lifting point

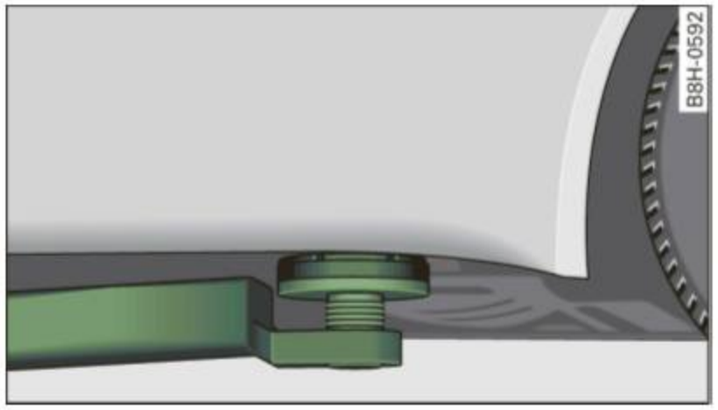


Fig. 231 Rear lifting point

– Read and heed WARNING ⇒ ⚠.

– Locate lifting points ⇒ fig. 230 ⇒ fig. 231.

– Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points. ▶

– Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/workshop hoist and the lifting points.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇒ *page 308,* fig. 230. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the onboard jack ⇒ *page 308,* fig. 231.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇒ *page 296.*

WARNING

- **To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.**
  - **Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇒ *page 308,* fig. 230 and ⇒ *page 308,* fig. 231.**
  - **Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.**
- **When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.**

Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.** ■





General information

Explanation of technical data

Some of the technical data listed in this manual requires further explanation.

The technical data for your vehicle is listed in the charts starting on ⇒ *page 314*. This section provides general information, notes and restrictions which apply to this data. ■

Vehicle identification

The key data is given on the vehicle identification number (VIN) plate and the vehicle data sticker.

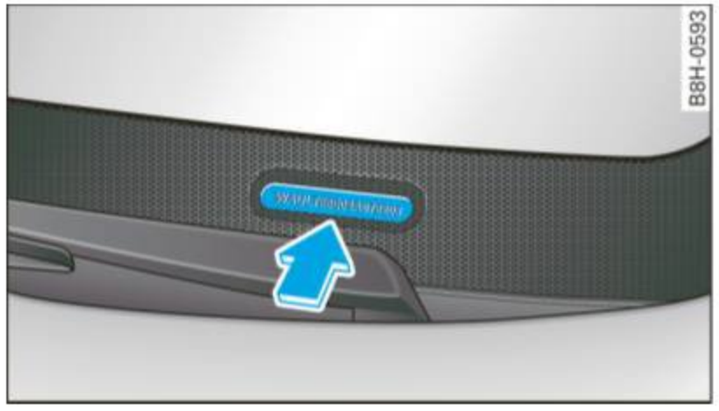


Fig. 232 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate: location on driver's side dash panel

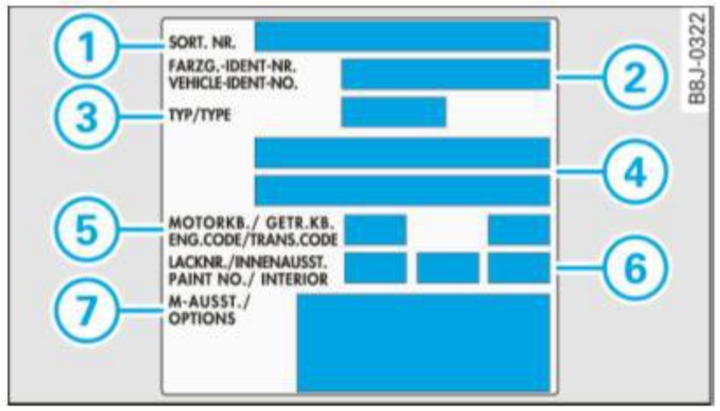


Fig. 233 The vehicle identification label – inside the luggage compartment

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

is located on the driver's side so that it is visible from the outside through the windshield ⇒ fig. 232.

The vehicle identification label

is located in the luggage compartment in the spare wheel well.

The label ⇒ fig. 233 shows the following vehicle data:

1. Production control No.
2. Vehicle identification No.
3. Type code number
4. Type designation/engine output in Kilowatts
5. Engine and transmission code letter
6. Paint No./Interior
7. Optional equipment No.'s

Vehicle data 2 to 7 are also found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The safety compliance sticker

is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the left door jamb. It shows the month and year of production and the ▶

vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

The high voltage warning label

is located on the lock carrier.

The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002. ■

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the left door jamb.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight.

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

- **The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.**

Note

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
- Always observe local regulations. ■

Dimensions

The specifications refer to the basic model. Differences may occur depending on the model type and options ordered, for example, tire sizes.

Note

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them. ■

Data

Applies to vehicles: with 2.0 liter 4-cyl. engine

200 hp, 2.0 liter 4-cyl. turbo engine

Engine data

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	200 @ 5100-6000
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	207 @ 1800-5000
No. of cylinders		4
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121 (1984)
Stroke	in (mm)	3.65 (92.8)
Bore	in (mm)	3.25 (82.5)
Compression ratio		10.5 : 1
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** Recommended for maximum engine performance. Further details ⇒ *page 244,* "Gasoline"	

Dimensions (approx.)

Length (with licence plate bracket)	in (mm)	180 (4573)
Width (across mirrors)	in (mm)	76.2 (1937)
Height (unladen)	in (mm)	54.8 (1391)
Turning circle diameter (curb to curb)	ft. (m)	36.4 (11.1)

Capacities (approx.)

Fuel tank		*front-wheel drive*	*quattro*
- Total capacity	gal/litres	18.5 / 70.0	16.6 / 63.0
- Reserve (of total capacity)	gal/litres	2.1 / 8.0	
Windshield and headlight washer fluid container	quarts/litres	4.8 / 4.5	
Engine oil with filter change	quarts/litres	4.8 / 4.5	

Applies to vehicles: with 3.2 liter 6-cyl. engine

255 hp, 3.2 liter 6-cyl. engine

Engine data

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	255 @ 6500
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	243 @ 3250
No. of cylinders		6
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	190 (3123)
Stroke	in (mm)	3.65 (92.8)
Bore	in (mm)	3.33 (84.5)
Compression ratio		10.1 : 1
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** Recommended for maximum engine performance. Further details ⇒ *page 244,* "Gasoline"	

Dimensions (approx.)

Length (with licence plate bracket)	in (mm)	180 (4573)
Width (across mirrors)	in (mm)	76.2 (1937)
Height (unloaded)	in (mm)	54.8 (1391)
Turning circle diameter (curb to curb)	ft. (m)	36.4 (11.1)

Capacities (approx.)

Fuel tank		
- Total capacity	gal/litres	16.6 / 63.0
- Reserve (of total capacity)	gal/litres	2.1 / 8.0
Windshield and headlight washer fluid container	quarts/litres	5.1 / 4.8
Engine oil with filter change	quarts/litres	6.9 / 6.5

Consumer Information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

- *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
- *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
- *Emissions Control System Warranty*
- *Emissions Performance Warranty*
- *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
- *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. ■

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that

- unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
- fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
- service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
- replacement parts may not be readily available.
- Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside of North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability. ■

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals are available from:

Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center

Call toll-free:

Tel.: 1 (800) 544–8021

(from 8:00 AM to 8:00 PM, EST, Monday through Friday)

or access their website **www.audi.ddsltd.com** on the Internet to order repair manuals and other Audi literature. ■

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and ▶

reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

- oil changes, and
- cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment. ■

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ and ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 250*.

⚠ WARNING

- **Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.**
- **Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.**
- **Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.**
- **Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off and the ignition key has been removed. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.**
- **Always remove the ignition key before anyone gets under the vehicle.**
- **Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.**
- **If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.**
- **Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in "P" (Park position) or Neutral (manual transmission) and the park brake is firmly applied.**

For the sake of the environment

- Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
- Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
- Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you. ■

Additional accessories, modifications and parts replacement

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause serious personal injury.

- **Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts.**
- **These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.**
- **Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deploy-** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

ment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!

- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 242*.**

Note

- If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
- If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealership as soon as possible.
- The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations. ■

Installing/replacing a sound system

If you wish to install a radio or replace the factory installed radio, please note the following:

The factory installed radio connectors are designed for genuine Audi radios. When installing a different radio, difficulties could arise such as:

– the radio may not fit into the space provided

– the electrical connections may not be compatible

– different connector terminals may be needed.

Therefore, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer install or replace the radio.

They are the most familiar with the technical features of your vehicle. They also offer Genuine Audi Radios with the necessary installation components and instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installing a radio could cause a short circuit and an electrical fire. ■

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇒ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇒ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

⚠ WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealership as soon as possible. ■

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

- Cell phone package
- Electronic immobilizer
- HomeLink® universal remote control
- Remote control key
- Tire pressure monitoring system

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device. ■





A

Accessories 318
Acoustic park assist 122
Adaptive Light
  defective 34
adaptive light 79
Adding
  Engine coolant 259
  Engine oil 255
  Windshield washer fluid 266
Additional accessories 318
Additives
  Engine oil 255
Adjusting
  Instrument cluster illumination 15
  Steering wheel column 118
Adjusting the seats
  Manual seats 94
Advanced Airbag System 172
  Children 191
  Components 175
  Front airbags 173
  How the components work together 176
  Monitoring 179
  Weight-sensing mat 191
Air conditioning
  See Climate controls 110
Air distribution
  Climate controls 114
Air outlets
  Climate controls 115
  How should I adjust the air outlets to defrost my windows as quickly as possible? 115
Air quality sensor 114
Air recirculation 113
  Climate controls 114
  When should I use the air recirculation? . 114
Air ventilation in the glove compartment . . . 108
Airbag system 168, 188
  Care 182
  Child restraints 192
  Components (front airbags) 175
  Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat 170
Disposal 182
Front airbags 172
How do the front airbags work? 177
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 175
Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system 186
Important things to know 168
Indicator light 179
Knee airbags 184
Monitoring 179
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 180
Repairs 182
Side airbags 187
  Warning/indicator lights 20
  When must the system be inspected? . . . 179
All Wheel Drive 218
Alloy wheels 237
All-wheel drive
  Winter tires 284
Alternator
  See Generator 22
Anti-freeze
  See Engine coolant system 257
Anti-glare inside day-night mirror 88
Anti-lock brake system
  How the ABS system works 216
  Warning/indicator lights 20
Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR)
  How the system works 214
Anti-Theft Alarm System
  Tilt sensors 58
Anti-theft alarm system 57
Anti-theft systems
  Electronic immobilizer 49
Armrest
  Adjusting 100
  Storage bin 100
Ashtray
  Front 104
  Rear 105
Asterisk
  What does it mean when something is marked with an asterisk? 6
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature . 316

AUTO
Climate controls 112
Switching on 112
When should I use AUTO? 112
Auto Safety Hotline 155
Auto-Check Control 28
Automatic air recirculation 114
Automatic belt retractor 163
Automatic car wash
See Washing 231
Automatic headlight control 77
Automatic rollover protection system . . 156
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 128, 135
Automatic transmission
6-speed automatic transmission 126
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 128, 135
Driving 126
Dynamic shift program 129
Fail-safe mode 131
Ignition key safety lock 119
Kick-down 129
Manual shift program 130
multitronic® 131
Selector lever 127, 133
Shift buttons 131, 137
Steering wheel with tiptronic® . 131, 137
Average speed 37
Avoid damaging the vehicle 221

B

Battery 261, 264
Charging 265
Checking battery acid level 264
Important warnings when working on the battery 263
Low voltage symbol 34
Replacing the battery 262
Winter operation 261
Working on the battery 263
Before driving 146
Blended gasoline 244
Body cavity sealing 237
Booster seats 198
How do I properly install a booster seat in my vehicle? 198
Safety instructions 198
Brake fluid
Changing the brake fluid 261
Checking the brake fluid level 260
Reservoir 260
What is the correct brake fluid level? 260
What should I do if the brake fluid warning light comes on? 260
Brake system 260
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 20
Brake assistant 217
Brake booster 216
Brake fluid 260
Brake fluid specifications for refill and replacement 261
Brake pads 220
General information 215
How does the moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 215
Malfunction 30
Warning/indicator lights 23
Worn brake pads symbol 33
Break-in period 219
Brake pads 220
Tires 219
Bulbs 302

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 251
Battery specific 264
Capacities
Engine oil 314
Fuel tank 314
Windshield washer fluid 314
Car care 230
Interior 238
Plastic and vinyl 234
Weatherstrips 236
Care of exterior 230
Cargo area
See Loading the luggage compartment . 153
Catalytic converter 220
Centigrade
Switching between Centigrade and Fahrenheit 113
Certification 320
Changing a flat tire 293
Changing a wheel 293

Changing engine oil 256
Chassis
Undercoating 237
CHECK button 16
Checking
Battery acid level 264
Engine coolant level 258
Checking tire pressure 274
Child restraint
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 170
Child restraints
What types of child restraint anchors are available? 203
Where can I get additional information about child restraints? 204
Child safety 190, 195
Booster seats 198
Convertible child safety seats 196
Convertible locking retractor 200
Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages . 206
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 193
Important things to know when driving with children 190
Infant seats 195
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 208
Lower anchorages 205
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 209
Older children and safety belts 199
Safety belts and older children 199
Which restraint system should my older child wear? 199
child safety seat
LATCH system 208
Child safety seats 195
Convertible locking retractor 200
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 193
Installing 200
Safety instructions 193
Cigarette lighter 105
Cleaning
Alcantara (synthetic suede) 241
Engine compartment 242
Fabrics and fabric coverings 238
Instrument panel 239
Interior 238
Leather 240
Plastic and vinyl 234
Plastic parts 239
Safety belts 242
Trim strips 234
trim strips 235
Cleaning and protection 230
Climate controls 110
Air distribution 114
Air outlets 115
Air recirculation 113
AUTO (standard setting) 112
Automatic air recirculation 114
Controls 111
Defrosting / Defogging 116
Description 110
ECON 113
Fan 114
Key coded setting 110
Recommended settings 110
Setting the temperature 112
Switching between Fahrenheit and Centigrade 113
Switching the air conditioning on or off . 113
Using the climate control economically . . 116
Warm and cold 110
Clock 14
Closing
Power top 62
Cold tire inflation pressure 271
Coming-home-function 80
Compartments in the door trims 109
Compass mirror 90
Compliance 320
Consumer Information 155, 316
Contacting NHTSA 155
Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)
See multitronic® 131
Convenience close/open feature
Power top 63
Windows 53
Convertible child seats
How do I properly install a convertible child seat in my vehicle? 196
Safety instructions 196

Convertible locking retractor
Activating 202
Deactivating 203
Using to secure a child safety seat . 200, 202
Convertible top 61
Coolant system 257
Cooling System
Expansion tank 258
cornering light 79
Cruise control 123
Changing a stored speed 124
Setting and storing a vehicle speed . 124
Switching off 125
Switching off temporarily 124
Switching on 124
Warning/indicator lights 20
Cruising range 37
Cupholder 104

D

Data 314
Data recorder 212
Date display 14
Daytime running lights 78
Declaration of compliance
Cell phone package 320
Electronic immobilizer 320
HomeLink® universal remote control 320
Remote control key 320
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 320
def
What does this mean when it appears in the trip odometer display? 15
Defogging the windows 116
Defrosting the windows 116
Determining correct load limit 276
Digital clock 14
Setting the time 14
Digital compass 90
Dimensions 313
Dipstick
Reading the dipstick properly 254
Distance 38
Doors, power locks 53
Driver
See Seating position 148
Driver information display
Miles (kilometers) to empty 26
Parking brake warning 30
Driver information system 24
Driver information messages 29
Fuel filler cap 27
Menu button 40
Menu display 39
Open door or rear lid warning 26
Outside temperature display 25
Sound system display 25
Driver's seat memory 101
Recalling a seat position 102
Storing a seat position 102
Driving messages 29
Driving safely 146
Driving time 37
Dublicate key 47
Dynamic shift program 136

E

ECON
When should I use ECON? 113
EDL
See Electronic differential lock (EDL) . 213
Electric roof 61
Electrically heated front seats 116
Electronic differential lock
Warning/indicator lights 20
Electronic differential lock (EDL)
How the system works 213
Electronic immobilizer 15, 49
Electronic power control
EPC warning/indicator light 22
Electronic speed limiter 28
Electronic stabilization program (ESP)
How the system works 212
Electronic stabilization program (ESP)
Warning/indicator lights 22
Emergency flasher 82
Warning/indicator lights 21
Emergency locking 55
Emergency starting 304
Emergency towing 306
Engine
4-cylinder (200 hp) 251
6-cylinder (255 hp) 252
Compartment 251
Coolant 257

Hood 249
Starting 119, 120
Starting with jumper cables 304
Stopping 120
Engine compartment
Safety instructions 250
Working in the engine compartment 250
Engine coolant 258
Checking the engine coolant level .. 258
Malfunction warning symbol 31
Engine coolant level
Checking 258
Engine coolant system 257
Adding coolant 259
Radiator fan 260
Engine coolant temperature
Temperature gauge 13
Engine data 314
Engine hood
Closing 250
How to release the hood 249
Opening 249
Engine oil 252
Adding 255
Additives 255
Changing 256
Checking the engine oil level 254
Indications and conditions requiring extra checking 254
Indicator light 33
Oil capacity 314
Oil consumption 254
Oil grades 252
Recommended oil check intervals .. 254
Sensor defective 33
Specification and viscosity 252
Engine oil pressure
Malfunction 32
Environment
Break-in period 219
Catalytic converter 220
Disposing of your vehicle battery ... 262
Driving at high speeds 221
Driving to minimize pollution and noise . 221
Fuel 246
Fuel economy 221
Leaks under your vehicle 250
Letting the vehicle stand and warm up .. 222
Proper disposal of drained brake fluid ... 261
Proper disposal of drained engine coolant 259
Proper disposal of drained engine oil ... 255, 256
Recycling used engine oil 255
Unleaded fuel 244
What should I do with an old battery? ... 262
EPC
See Electronic power control 22
ESP
Electronic stabilization program 212
See also Electronic stabilization program (ESP) 212
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 212
Expansion tank 258

F

Fahrenheit
Switching between Fahrenheit and Centigrade 113
Fan
Climate controls 114
Radiator 260
Setting the fan speed 114
Flat tire
Changing 293
Floor mats 153
Fog lights
Front 79
Folding master key with remote control . 47
Foot pedals 152
For the sake of the environment
Gasoline fumes and the environment 246
Letting your engine warm up 120
Reducing engine noise by early upshifting 13
Refueling 246
Saving fuel by early upshifting 13
Using the rear window defogger 116
Front airbags
Description 172
How they work 177
Front ashtray 104
Front seat adjustment
Safety guidelines 92

Front seats
Adjusting 149
Adjusting the manual seats 94
Child restraints in the front seat 170
Heated seat 116
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . 160
Fuel
Additives 244
Blended gasoline 244
Capacity 314
Consumption 37
Filler neck 245
Fuel gauge 16
Gasoline 244
Gasoline additives 245
Low fuel level 16, 33
Octane rating 244
Recommendation 244
Refuelling 246
Reserve 16
Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand 248
Fuel filler cap 27
Fuse arrangement 301

G

Garage door opener 139
Garage door opener (HomeLink®) 139
Gas discharge lamps 302
Gauges
Engine coolant temperature 13
Fuel gauge 16
Speedometer 15
Tachometer 13
Trip odometer 15
General illustration
Instruments and controls 11
Generator
Warning/indicator lights 22
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 268
Glove compartment 107
Air ventilation 108
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) . . . 313

H

Head restraints 151
Adjusting 95, 151
Rear seats 101
Headlight range control
Defective 34
Headlights 76
adaptive light 79
Defective 35
Front fog lights 79
Switching off 76
Switching on 76
Washer system 86
Headrest
See Head restraints 95
Heated
rear seats 117
Heated outside mirrors 89
Heated seats
rear 117
Heated washer jets
Wiper and washer system 85
Heavy clothing and safety belts 162
High beam 76, 83
Warning/indicator lights 22
High voltage warning label 312
HomeLink® 139
HomeLink® universal remote control . . . 139
Hood
Release lever 249
Horn 11
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 175
How often should I check my tire pressures? 275
How safety belt pretensioners work 166
Hydroplaning 279

I

Ignition key 119
Ignition lock
Positions 119
Immobilizer 15
Important things to do before driving . . 146
Improperly worn safety belts 166
Indicator light
Airbag system 179, 180
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 180
Indicator lights 18

Infant seats 195
How do I properly install an infant seat in my vehicle? 195
Safety instructions 195
Inside rear view mirror 88
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 200
Instruments and controls 12
General illustration 11
Illumination 15, 81
Interior lights 84
Luggage compartment 84

J

Jack and tools 290
Jumper cables 305
Jump-starting 304

K

Key 47
Battery replacement 49
Coded settings 110
Convenience opening and closing of power top 63
Convenience opening and closing of windows 53
Emergency key 47
Key replacement 47
Master key 47
Valet key 47
Key coded settings
Climate controls 110
Keyless entry remote control 48, 51
Kick-down
multitronic® 135
tiptronic® 129
Knee airbags 184
Description 184
How they work 185
Important safety instructions 186

L

LATCH 205
Description 205
Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages . 206
Installing a child restraint 208
Location 205
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 209
Leather 239
Cleaning 240
Leaving-home-function 80
Lifting jack 296
Lifting vehicle 308
Light sensor defective 33
Light sensor package
Automatic headlight control 77
Lights
Coming-home/leaving-home-function 80
Emergency flasher 82
Front fog lights 79
Headlights 76
High beam 76, 83
High beam warning/indicator light ... 22
Instrument panel illumination 81
Side marker lights 76
Turn signals 83
Xenon headlights 82
Loading the luggage compartment 153
Locking
Power locking switch 54
Rear lid 55
Remote control 51
Using the key 53
Lower anchorage locator button 205
Lower universal anchorage (Canada) ... 205
Lower universal anchorage bars (Canada) ... 205
Luggage
Stowing 153
Luggage compartment
Light 84
Ski sack 103
See also Loading the luggage compartment 153
Lumbar support 98

M

Maintenance 316
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 19, 27
Manual operation
Power top 68
Manual seats
Adjusting the head restraints 95
Folding the seatback forward 95

Master key 48
Battery replacement 49
Menu button 40
Menu display 39
Mileage
Average 37
Instantaneous 37
Miles to empty 26
Mirrors
Activating the digital compass 90
Adjusting the anti-glare 88
Automatic dimming for the outside mirrors 90
Automatically dimming inside mirror . 88
Inside rearview mirror 88
Interior mirror 88
Manual glare dimming 88
Outside mirrors 89
Recalling position of outside mirrors 102
Storing position of outside mirrors . . 102
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 179
multitronic® 131
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 135
Driving the multitronic® 132
Dynamic shift program 136
Fail-safe mode 137
Kick-down 135
Manual shift program 136
Selector lever 133
Steering wheel with tiptronic® 137
tiptronic 136

N

Natural leather 239
New tires and wheels 279
NHTSA
Contacting 155
Number of seats 159

O

Occupant seating positions 148
Octane rating 244
Odometer 15
Oil
See Engine oil 252
Older children and safety belts 199
On-Board Diagnostic System 28
Electronic speed limiter 28
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 27
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 28
Data Link Connector (DLC) 28
Open door or rear lid warning 26
Opening
Power top 62
Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution 221
Optional equipment
Marked with an asterisk 6
Outlets 106
Outside air pollution
How to prevent from entering the vehicle 113
Outside mirrors 89
Outside temperature display 25
Owner's manual
How the Owner's Manual is organized . 6

P

Paint
Touch-up 235
Paint No. 312
Park assist 122
Parking 121
Automatic transmission 126
multitronic® 132
Parking brake 121
Brake warning 30
Setting and releasing 121
Parking light
Defective 35
Parking on a decline (downhill) 121
Parking on an incline (uphill) 121
Parktronic
See Acoustic park assist 122
Parts replacement 318
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 180
Passive safety system 146
Pedals 152
Physical principles of a frontal collision . 160
Polishing 234
Power locking system 50
Convenience close/open feature 53
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside 54
Locking switch 54

Opening and closing the windows ... 53
Operating locks with the fold-out key 53
Rear lid ... 55
Remote control ... 48, 51
Unlocking and locking vehicle ... 51
Power outlets ... 106
Power seats
Adjusting the seatback ... 97
Adjustment ... 96
Folding the seatback forward ... 99
Power steering ... 217
Power top ... 61
Care and cleaning ... 233
Closing ... 62
Convenience close/open feature ... 63
Convenience opening/closing ... 63
Correcting a malfunction ... 65
Display messages ... 64
General information ... 61
Malfunction ... 64
Manual operation ... 68
Opening ... 62
Variable storage bay ... 64
Warning/indictor lights ... 21
Wind deflector ... 66
Power window switches ... 59
In the driver's door ... 59
In the front passenger's door ... 60
Reactivating the system ... 60
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt ... 165
Programming the HomeLink® universal remote control ... 139
Proper occupant seating positions ... 148
Proper safety belt position ... 164
Proper seating position
Front passenger ... 149
Occupants ... 148
Rear passengers ... 150

Q

Quartz clock ... 14
quattro®
See All Wheel Drive ... 218
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? .. 161
Why safety belts? ... 159

R

Radiator fan ... 260
Radio
Replacing ... 319
Rain sensor defective ... 33
Reading lights ... 84
Rear ashtray ... 105
Rear lid
Locking/unlocking ... 55
Rear light
Defective ... 35
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror ... 88
Rear window defogger ... 116
Rearview mirror
See Mirrors ... 88
Red symbols ... 30
Refuelling ... 246
Release lever for engine hood ... 249
Remote control ... 48, 51
Resetting remote control ... 52
Unlocking and locking ... 51
Remote control garage door opener (HomeLink®) ... 139
Remote master key
Battery replacement ... 48
Check light ... 48
Remote rear lid release ... 56
Repair manuals ... 316
Repairs
Airbag system ... 182
Replacing
Wheel rims ... 281
Replacing a fuse ... 300
Replacing a sound system ... 319
Replacing light bulbs ... 302
Replacing tires and wheels ... 280
Reporting Safety Defects ... 155
Reset button ... 15, 18
Resetting remote control ... 52
Retractor ... 163
Rims
Cast alloy ... 237
Replacing ... 281
Steel rims ... 236

Rollover bars
Lowering 157
See also Automatic rollover protection system 156
Roof, electric 61

S

SAFE 15
Safe driving habits 146
Safety belt position 164
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . 165
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 167
Safety belt warning light 21, 159
Safety belts 163
cleaning 242
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 161
Fastening 163
Improperly worn 166
Not worn 161
pretensioners 166
Safety belt position 164
Safety instructions 162
Securing child safety seats 200
Special considerations for pregnant women 165
Unfastening 165
Warning/indicator light 159
Why YOU MUST wear them 159
Worn properly 162
Safety compliance sticker 312
Safety equipment 146
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 146
Safety instructions
Engine compartment 250
for booster seats 198
for using child safety seats 193
for using convertible child seats 196
for using infant seats 195
for using safety belts 162
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 181
Safety lock
Ignition key, Automatic transmission 119
Seat adjustment
Driver seat 92
Driver's seat memory 101
Front passenger seat 93
Head restraints 98, 151
Lumbar support 98
Power seats 96
Safety guidelines 92
Seat cushion extension 100
Seat belts
Why YOU MUST wear them 159
Seat memory 101
Seat position
Incorrect seat position 151
Seating capacity 159
Seating position
Driver 148
Front passenger 149
How to adjust the front seats 149
Occupants 148
Rear passengers 150
Seats
Manual adjustment controls 93
Number of seats 159
Selector lever 127
Selector lever multitronic® 133
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 167
Service interval display 17
Servotronic
Power steering 217
Setting
Date display 14
Digital clock 14
Shift buttons 131, 137
Side airbags
Description 187
How they work 188
Ski sack 103
Snow chains 285
Sockets 105, 106
Soft top 61
Care and cleaning 233
Manual operation 68
Sound system
Replacing 319
Sound system display
Driver information display 25
Space-saving spare wheel 292
Spare wheel 291
Speed rating letter code 281

Speed warning 1 34
Speed warning 2 34
Speed warning system 35
Speedometer 15
Starting the engine 119, 120
  What should I do if the engine does not start? 120
Steel wheels 236
Steering 118
Steering wheel
  Locking the steering 119
Steering wheel column
  Adjusting 118
Steps for determining correct load limit 276
Stopping the engine 120
Storage 107
  Compartment in the front seats 109
  Compartments in the door trims ... 109
  Cupholder in the center console 104
  Glove compartment 107
  Ski sack 103
  Small objects 108
Sun visors 84
Switches
  Emergency flasher 82
  Rear window defogger 116
Symbols
  Red 30
  Yellow 32

T

Tachometer 13
Tank flap
  Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand 248
Technical modifications 319
Temperature
  Climate controls 112
  Setting for the driver's and front passenger side 112
The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards 219
Tilt sensors 58
Tips for the environment
  Using the air conditioner only when necessary 116
tiptronic® 126
  Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 128
  Driving 126
  Dynamic shift program 129
  Fail-safe mode 131
  Kick-down 129
  Manual shift program 130
  Selector lever 127
Tire pressure 274
Tire pressure monitoring system 41
  Initialize wheels 45
  Learning process 43
  Loss of air pressure 20, 43
  Malfunctions 46
  Sensors 281
  Storing tire pressures 43
  Tires and wheels 281
  Valves 281
Tire service life 278
Tires 267
  Replacing 281
  Service life 278
  speed rating letter code 281
  Tire manufacturing date 281
  Tire specifications 280
  Tread depth 278
  Uniform tire quality grading 283
  Winter tires 284
Tires and vehicle load limits 275
Tires and wheels
  Checking tire pressure 274
  Cold tire inflation pressure 271
  Dimensions 279
  General notes 267
  Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 268
  New tires and wheels 279
  Replacing 280
  Snow chains 285
  Tire pressure monitoring system ... 281
  Tires and vehicle load limits 275
  Wheel bolts 286
  Winter tires 284
Tires/Wheels
  Low aspect ratio tires 286
  Tire pressure monitoring system 20
Torn or frayed safety belts 162
Touch-up paint 235
Towing
  Front eyelet 307
  Rear eyelet 307
  Tow truck procedures 306

Trailer towing 224
Operating instructions 225
Technical requirements 224, 225
Trailer towing tips 226
Transmission
tiptronic® 126
Transport Canada 155
Tread Wear Indicator (TWI) 278
Trip computer
Fuel consumption 37
Mileage 37
Trip odometer 15
What does it mean when dEF appears in the trip odometer display? 15
Trunk
Escape handle 290
Trunk lid
See Rear lid 55
Turn signals 83
Warning/indicator lights 21

U

Undercoating 237
Unfastening safety belts 165
Unidirectional tires 267
Uniform tire quality grading 283
Universal Remote Control (HomeLink®) . 139
Unlocking
Power locking switch 54
Rear lid 55
Remote control 51
Using the key 53

V

Vanity mirror 84
Vehicle electrical system 22
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 312
Vehicle jack 290, 296
Vehicle literature 5
Vehicle-care products 230

W

Warning lights 18
Warning/indicator lights 12
Airbag system 20
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 20
Brake system 23
Cruise control 20
Electronic power control 22
Electronic stabilization program (ESP) 22
Generator 22
High beam 22
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 19
Parking brake 23
Power top 21
Safety belt 21
Tire pressure monitoring system 20
Turn signals 21
Warranty coverages 316
Washing 230
Automatic car wash 231
by hand 231
Power top cleaning 233
with a power washer 232
Washing the vehicle 230
Waxing 233
Wear indicator 278
Weatherstrips 236
Weights 313
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 164
What happens to unbelted occupants? . 161
What impairs driving safety? 147
What should I do after changing a wheel? .. 275
What should I do after replacing wheels? .. 275
Wheel bolts
Torque 286
Wheel change 293
Wheels 267
Cast alloy 237
Checking tire pressure 274
Cold tire inflation pressure 271
General notes 267
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 268
New tires and wheels 279
Rim 267
Steel wheels 236
Tires and vehicle load limits 275
When must a safety belt be replaced? .. 162
When must the airbag system be inspected? 179
When should I adjust the tire pressures? ... 275
When should I check the tire pressures? 275

Where can I find the tire pressures for my car? 274
Why safety belts? 159, 160
Wind deflector 66
Cleaning 233
Installing 67
Removing 67
Unfolding 66
Windows
Cleaning 235
Convenience close/open feature 53
Defogging 116
Defogging as quickly as possible ... 115
Defrosting 116
Defrosting as quickly as possible ... 115
Windshield wipers
Installing new wiper blades 87
Intermittent wiping 85
Low fluid level 34
One-tap wiping 85
Washer reservoir 266
Winter operation
Battery 261
Coolant system 257
Tires 218
Windows 235
Winter tires 284
All-wheel drive 284
Wiper and washer system 85

X

Xenon headlights 82, 302

Y

Yellow symbols 32

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products, without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of AUDI AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

"Audi", "quattro" and the four rings emblem are registered trademarks of AUDI AG. "A4 Cabriolet" is trademark of AUDI AG.

Editorial deadline: 03/27/2008

For the sake of the environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Printed in Germany

© 2008 AUDI AG

www.audi.com

2009 Audi A4 Cabriolet
Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 5.08
291.561.8H0.21